

- مراجعة على القواعد اللغوية وتدريبات على كل جزء.
- مراجعات شهرية من أسئلة مجمعة من المحافظات وأسئلة مؤلفة.

CONNECT

2025

6th

PRIM.

FIRST TERM



Table of contents

Theme 2 Myself and others نفسى والآخرون

Unit 4 Celebrate good times احتفل بالأوقات السعيدة

Unit 5 Amazing journeys رحلات رائعة

Unit 6 Taking care الاعتناء

Final Revision & Exams





Part 1: Previous Year Revision



Revision on Grammar

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة قواعد اللغة التى درسها فى الأعوام السابقة.

1. The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

We use the present simple tense to talk about habits, routines, and things we do every day.
نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للحديث عن العادات والروتين والأشياء التى نقوم بها كل يوم.

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

He/ She/ It + (الفعل فى المصدر + s, es, ies) + ...

e.g. Hoda gets up at 6 am every day.

I/ We/ You/ They + الفعل فى المصدر + ...

e.g. I have milk for breakfast.

لاحظ

s → معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (s):
e.g. Mona reads a book before bedtime.

es → الأفعال المنتهية بـ (ss , sh, ch, o, x)، يضاف لها (es):
e.g. Ali watches TV in the evening.

ies → الأفعال المنتهية بحرف (y) يسبقه حرف ساكن، يتم حذف الـ (y) ويضاف للفعل (ies):
e.g. Manal studies her lessons in the evening.

Note إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف الـ (y) يسبقه حرف متحرك (a, e, i, o, u)، أضف حرف الـ (s) فقط:
e.g. Maged plays video games every weekend.

Negative Form: صيغة النفى:

He/ She/ It + doesn't + (مصدر الفعل) + ...

e.g. Fatma doesn't speak English.

I/ We/ You/ They + don't + (مصدر الفعل) + ...

e.g. The children don't go to the park after school.

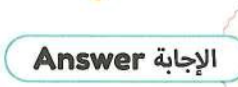
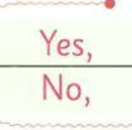
ملحوظة

- (inf.) هى اختصار لكلمة (infinitive) وهى تعنى الفعل فى المصدر (فى صورته الأساسية دون أية إضافات).

Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ(هل):



Question السؤال	Do	I/ you/ we/ they	(inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + ... ?
	Does	he/ she/ it	

Answer الإجابة	Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	do / does.
	No,		don't / doesn't.

e.g. A: Do you eat shawerma?
B: Yes, I do.


e.g. A: Does Amira help mom in the kitchen?
B: No, she doesn't.

Wh- Question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Wh- word كلمة الاستفهام	do	I/ you/ we/ they	(inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + ... ?
	does	he/ she/ it	

e.g. A: When do you visit your grandpa?
B: I visit my grandpa on Friday.


e.g. A: Where does she play?
B: She plays at the park.

Keywords: الكلمات الدالة:

always	دائمًا	My brother always goes to the club on sunny Saturdays.
usually	عادةً	I usually have a sandwich for lunch.
often	غالبًا	He often plays football with his friends.
sometimes	أحيانًا	We sometimes wake up before 7 am.
never	أبدًا	Ola never eats meat.
every (day, week, month, year)	كل (يوم، أسبوع، شهر، سنة)	I walk to school every day.

لاحظ

تأتى الكلمات الدالة فى الجملة كالآتى:
- قبل الفعل مباشرة:
- بعد (verb to be):


e.g. Maha usually gets up at 7 am.
e.g. She is always active.

Verb to (be) in the present simple tense
الفعل (يكون) فى زمن المضارع البسيط

Affirmative Form
صيغة الإثبات

I	am	I'm	happy.
He	is	He's	hungry.
She	is	She's	a nurse.
It	is	It's	big.



We	are	We're	early.
You	are	You're	students.
They	are	They're	quiet.

Negative Form
صيغة النفى

I	am not	sad.
He	is not = isn't	thirsty.
She	is not = isn't	a pilot.
It	is not = isn't	small.

We	are not = aren't	late.
You	are not = aren't	teachers.
They	are not = aren't	noisy.

Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ(هل):

\+ **Affirmative:** الإثبات: They are happy. — She is sad.

? **Question:** السؤال: Are they happy ? — Is she sad ?

Short Answer: إجابة مختصرة: Yes, they are/ No, they aren't. — Yes, she is/ No, she isn't.

Wh- Question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Wh- word كلمة الاستفهام	am/ is/ are	subject (الفاعل)	...?

e.g. A: How are you?
B: I am fine.

e.g. A: When is the science lesson?
B: It is at 8 am.

Practice on the present simple tense

1 Choose the correct answer:

1 Our lessons (start – starts – starting – to start) at 8 o'clock in the morning.
2 He (speak – speaks – speaking – to speak) English very well.
3 Mr. Ali always (washed – wash – washes – washing) his truck on Saturday mornings.
4 We (don't – doesn't – isn't – aren't) listen to the radio in the morning.
5 It (don't – doesn't – isn't – aren't) usually snow here in winter.
6 My family and I don't (like – likes – liked – to like) big breakfast.
7 Huda doesn't (swim – swims – swam – swimming) in the morning.
8 (Do – Does – Is – Have) your sister drive to work?
9 (Do – Does – Is – Are) the children work hard at university?
10 When does the train (arrive – arrives – arrived – arriving)?
11 I (always – often – usually – never) play tennis. I can't play it.
12 They (always – sometimes – every – never) drive to school. They never take the bus.
13 The books (am – is – are – be) on my desk.
14 The class (am – is – are – be) very big.
15 I (am not – isn't – aren't – don't) from Spain.

2 Read and correct:

1 You .... (eats) too much unhealthy food.
2 Noha never .... (have) coffee at night.
3 The village shop .... (open) at 8 in the morning.
4 Dina .... (goes always) to her school on her bike.
5 A lot of birds .... (flying) south in the winter.
6 I learn English, but I .... (doesn't) speak it very well.
7 She is .... (always) tired after work. She's active.
8 Amr .... (don't) go on holiday every year.
9 .... (Do) it often rain?
10 How .... (does) you usually go to work?
11 .... (be) they at home?
12 Do you often .... (giving) your sister a present?

2. The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

We use the present continuous tense to express an action happening right now.
نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن فعل يحدث الآن.

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

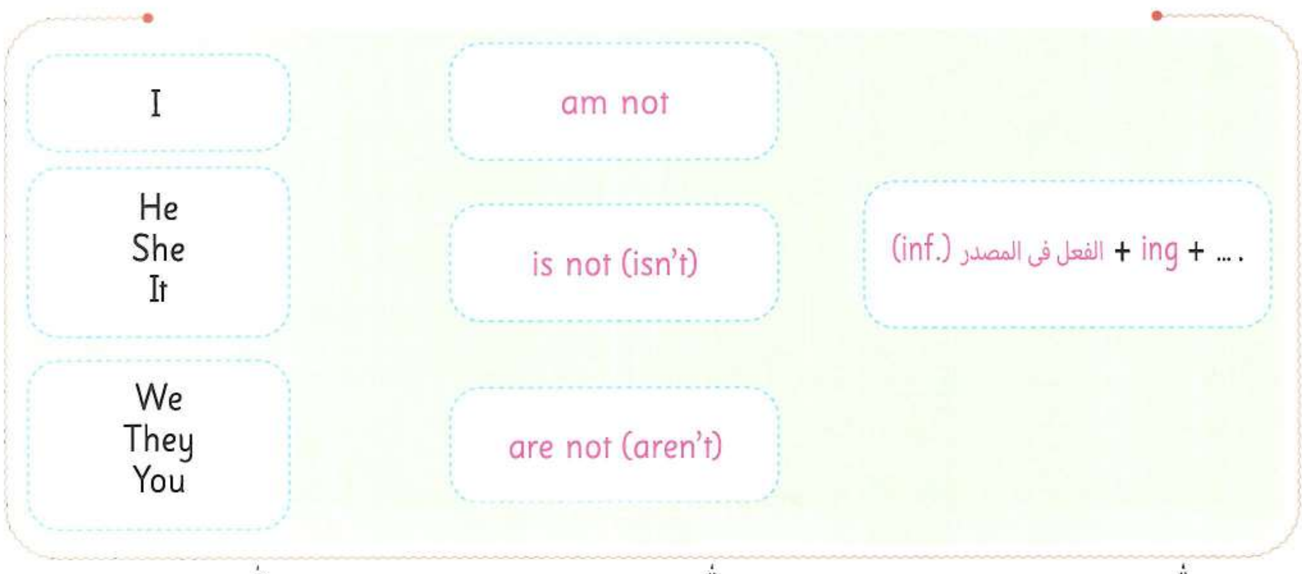
Subject		Verb to be		Short form	Verb
I	+	am	=	I'm	(inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + ing + ...
He / She / It	+	is	=	He's/ She's/ It's	(inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + ing + ...
We / They / You	+	are	=	We're/ They're/ You're	(inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + ing + ...

e.g. I am working at home.

e.g. The baby is learning to walk.

e.g. Adel and I are staying at a hotel.

Negative Form: صيغة النفي:



Subject	Verb to be + not	Verb
I	am not	(inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + ing + ...
He / She / It	is not (isn't)	(inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + ing + ...
We / They / You	are not (aren't)	(inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + ing + ...

e.g. I am not going to school now.

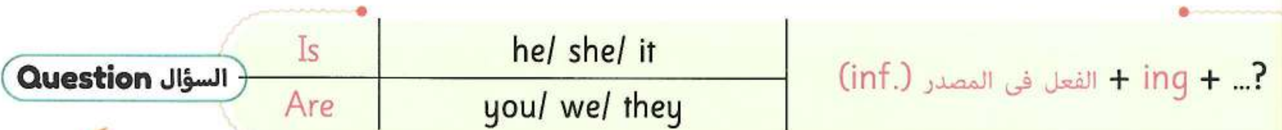
e.g. Noha isn't washing the dishes.

e.g. They aren't selling the house.





Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ(هل):



Question السؤال			
Is	he/ she/ it	(inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + ing + ...?
Are	you/ we/ they	



Answer الإجابة		
Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	am/ is/ are.
No,		am not/ isn't/ aren't.

e.g. A: Is it raining outside?
B: Yes, it is.

ملحوظة: تتحول (Are you) فى السؤال إلى (I am/ We are) فى الإجابة.



e.g. A: Are you doing your homework now?
B: No, I am not.



e.g. A: Are you coming to the party this week?
B: Yes, we are.

Wh- Question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Wh- word كلمة الاستفهام	is/ are	subject (الفاعل)	(inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + ing + ...?

e.g. A: What book is Alaa reading?
B: She is reading a science book.

e.g. A: Why are you running?
B: Because we are exercising.

Keywords: الكلمات الدالة:

Keyword		Example
Look!	انظر	Look! They are drinking juice.
Listen!	استمع	Listen! Mom is calling.
now	الآن	Hadya is going home now.
at the moment	فى هذه اللحظة	I'm working at the moment.
this (time)	هذا (وقت)	Mom and Dad are staying in the village this summer.

Practice on the present continuous tense

1 Choose the correct answer:

1 I am (wait – waits – waiting – waited) for a letter from my parents today.
2 A: Where is Nada? B: She (have – has – having – is having) a shower.
3 My sister is in the kitchen. She (cook – cooks – is cooking – are cooking) lunch today.
4 Look! Soha (reads – is reading – read – to read) on the sofa.
5 We're (visited – visit – visiting – visits) our grandparents this week.
6 Look! They (run – runs – is running – are running) on the track.
7 Ahmed and Ali (don't – aren't – isn't – doesn't) studying their lessons.
8 Mazen (don't – doesn't – isn't – aren't) washing his car.
9 Is your friend (studies – study – studied – studying) now?
10 (Do – Are – Does – Is) you waiting for a bus?
11 Why are you (shouts – shout – shouting – shouted)?
12 A: Are you reading the story now? B: Yes, (we do – you are – I am – am I).
13 What (you are – are you – you do – do you) watching now?
14 How many sandwiches (are they – they are – they do – do they) eating at the moment?
15 What are the children (lean – learns – learned – learning)?

2 Read and correct:

1 She .... (read) in her bedroom at the moment.
2 Look! The sun is .... (shine) brightly.
3 Listen! The kids .... (be play) in the playground.
4 He .... (not) looking for his keys.
5 The kids .... (not) having a good time.
6 No, she .... (doesn't) listening to music now.
7 .... (Is) you doing your homework?
8 .... (Does) your mother working now?
9 She's reading a book .... (yesterday).
10 Why are you .... (learn) English this year?
11 Are you .... (clean) the room?
12 Is .... (they) studying?



3. The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

We use the past simple tense to express actions that started and ended in the past at a certain time.

يستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن الأحداث التى بدأت وانتهت فى الماضى فى وقت معين.

- نستخدم التصريف الثانى للفعل (regular verbs / irregular verbs) فى زمن الماضى البسيط.
- الأفعال المنتظمة (regular verbs) تتكون بإضافة الـ (ed /d /ied) للفعل:

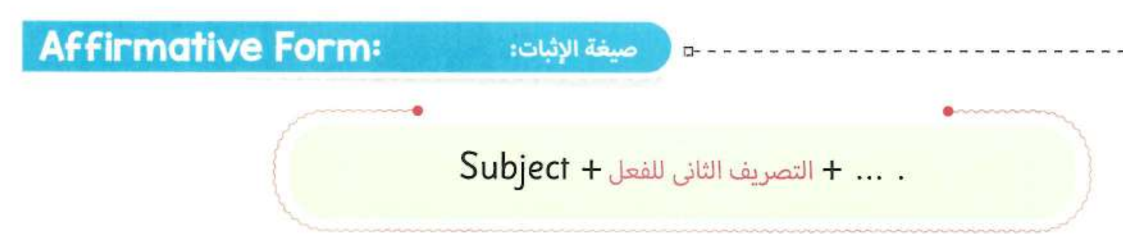


- الأفعال غير المنتظمة (irregular verbs) لا تتبع قاعدة عند تحويلها للماضى البسيط وتحفظ كما هى، على سبيل المثال:

2. Irregular Verbs
أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past	Present	Past	Present	Past
buy	bought	make	made	wear	wore	come	came
go	went	get	got	write	wrote	grow	grew
take	took	sleep	slept	leave	left	have	had
drink	drank	do	did	sing	sang	eat	ate

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

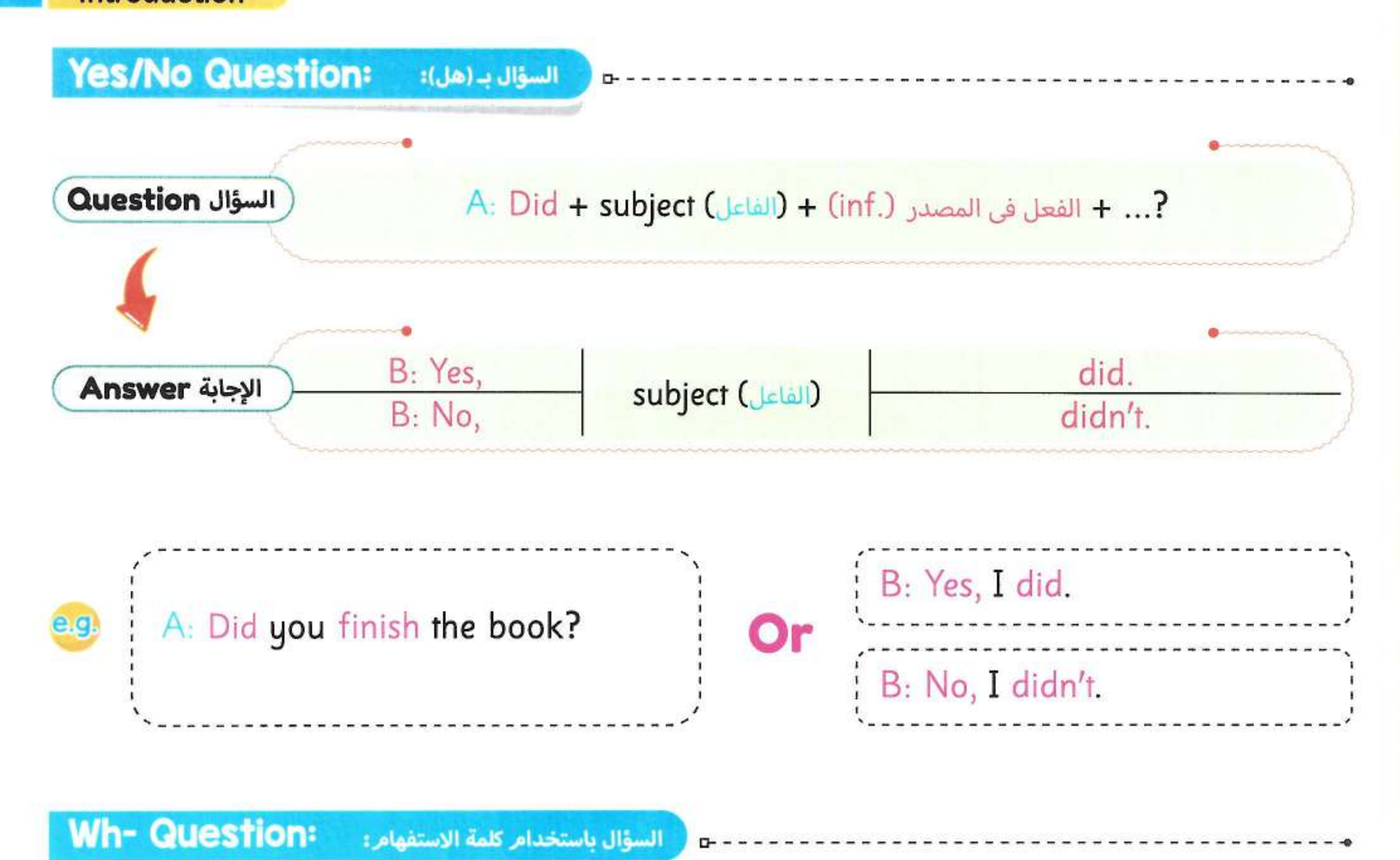


e.g. It rained heavily yesterday. Hala went to the cinema last week.

Negative Form: صيغة النفى:



e.g. Manal didn't do the housework yesterday.



Wh- Question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

A: Wh-word (كلمة الاستفهام) | did | subject (الفاعل) | (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + ...?

B: Subject + التصريف الثانى للفعل + ...

e.g.

A: What did they do last night?

B: They went out for dinner.

Keywords: الكلمات الدالة:

yesterday	أمس	Magdy found his wallet yesterday.
last	الماضى	I called Mohamed last night.
ago	منذ	The film started five minutes ago.
in the past	فى الماضى	My parent lived in China in the past.

Verb to (be) in the past simple tense
الفعل (يكون) فى زمن الماضى البسيط

Affirmative Form
صيغة الإثبات

I	was	happy.
He	was	hungry.
She	was	a nurse.
It	was	big.

We	were	early.
You	were	at school.
They	were	quiet.

Negative Form
صيغة النفى

I	was not = wasn't	sad.
He	was not = wasn't	thirsty.
She	was not = wasn't	a teacher.
It	was not = wasn't	small.

We	were not = weren't	late.
You	were not = weren't	at home.
They	were not = weren't	noisy.

Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ (هل):

+ **Affirmative:** الإثبات: They were happy. / She was sad.

? **Question:** السؤال: Were they happy ? / was she sad ?

Short Answer: إجابة مختصرة: Yes, they were/ No, they weren't. / Yes, she was/ No, she wasn't.

Wh- Question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Question word كلمة الاستفهام	was	I/ he/ she/ it	...?
	were	we/ they/ you	

لاحظ

تتحول (Were you) فى السؤال إلى (I was) أو (We were) فى الإجابة:


A: Where were you yesterday?
B: We were at school.


A: Where were you yesterday?
B: I was at my friend's house.

Practice on the past simple tense

1 Choose the correct answer:

1 They (go – went – goes – going) to the mountain last winter.
2 The programme (starts – start – started – starting) at 7:30 yesterday.
3 We (live – lives – living – lived) in a village in the past.
4 Mai (meets – met – meeting – meet) Noha from school 2 hours ago.
5 They (don't – doesn't – didn't – aren't) leave home last night.
6 Adel (don't – doesn't – isn't – didn't) want to go out yesterday.
7 He didn't (has – have – had – having) eggs for breakfast.
8 The bird didn't (eat – eats – eating – ate) the seeds.
9 (Do – Does – Did – Are) they ride their bikes to school last week?
10 A: Did Eman feel tired? B: Yes, she (do – does – did – doing).
11 A: Did you stay in a good hotel? B: No, (I did – you did – I didn't – you didn't).
12 Where (do – does – did – are) they travel last holiday?
13 When did you (stops – stop – stopped – stopping) smoking?
14 They (was – were – is – are) in the garden yesterday.
15 He (wasn't – weren't – didn't – don't) at home last Saturday.

2 Read and correct:

1 They .... (eat) cheese for dinner yesterday.
2 Did Maria .... (drove) to work this morning?
3 I .... (not) finish my homework last night.
4 .... (Be) you busy last Monday?
5 ....(Do) she buy a new car yesterday?
6 I ....(go) to Spain two years ago.
7 .... (Be) Sara late for the meeting?
8 Who did you .... (talked) to?
9 I .... (not read) that book last year.
10 Nehal .... (flies) to Japan last week.
11 He .... (not be) at home last night.
12 Did they .... (has) a good time at the party?

4. The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضى المستمر

We use the past continuous tense to express something that happened and continued over a period of time in the past.

نستخدم زمن الماضى المستمر للتعبير عن شىء حدث واستمر لفترة من الوقت فى الماضى.

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

I/ He/ She/ It	was	(inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + ing ... .
You/ We/ They	were	

e.g. I was having a bath at 7 am.
My friends and I were eating lunch at 3 o'clock yesterday.

Negative Form: صيغة النفى:

I/ He/ She/ It	was not (wasn't)	(inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + ing ... .
You/ We/ They	were not (weren't)	

e.g. Hala wasn't reading the newspaper at yesterday morning.
Ali and Wael weren't playing football at 9 pm.

Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ(هل):

Question السؤال

Was	he/ she/ it	(inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + ing ... ?
Were	you/ we/ they	



Answer الإجابة

Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	was/ were.
No,		wasn't/ weren't.

Wh- Question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Wh- word **كلمة الاستفهام**	was	he/ she/ it	(inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + ing ... ?
	were	you/ we/ they	

e.g. A: What was Nader doing at 6 am yesterday?
B: He was having breakfast.

e.g. A: What were the girls doing at 7 in the evening?
B: They were watching TV.

Keywords: الكلمات الدالة:

all (day/ morning/ evening/ night/ yesterday)
at (6, 7, 8, ... o'clock/ am/ pm/ yesterday)

e.g. The children were playing all day yesterday.
Dad was working at 9 yesterday morning.

Practice on the past continuous tense

Read and choose the correct answer:

1 They (are – were – is – was) studying English yesterday at 10 am.
2 He (played – was playing – are playing – is playing) at 3 pm yesterday.
3 What were the children (do – does – doing – did) at 8 am yesterday?
4 Was (he – they – you – we) having a great time?
5 I (were – is – was – are) traveling by boat to the island.
6 I (slept – was sleeping – sleep – sleeps) at 6 am yesterday.
7 A: (Does – Was – Has – Is) she making her bed? B: Yes, she was.
8 Were they (swimming – swim – swims – swam) in the sea?
9 A: Were you studying English? B: No, we (were – are – do – weren't).
10 (Was – Were – Do – Have) you listening to music?

Check

Read and correct:

1 The tiger was .... (drink) water.
2 .... (be) he swimming in the lake yesterday morning?
3 She .... (walk) to school at 8 am yesterday.
4 A: .... (Be you) making fatta? B: Yes, I was.
5 A: Was she watching TV? B: Yes, she ....(wasn't).
6 He .... (were) having a good time yesterday evening.
7 Was the cat .... (ran)?



Part 2: Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أساسيات تكوين الجملة:

1. Writing Skills



A Parts of speech أجزاء الكلام

Nouns الأسماء	Pronouns الضمائر	Verbs الأفعال	Adjectives الصفات	Prepositions حروف الجر

Nouns

* هي اسم شخص، حيوان ، مكان، أو شيء.

e.g. Ali, lion, market, bike ...

* قد يأتي الاسم فاعلًا (بداية الجملة) أو مفعولًا به (بعد الفعل).

e.g. Ali has a big house.
Lions are the strongest animals.

Check

Underline the nouns:

1 Nada is short.
2 My car is new.
3 I have a car.

Pronouns

* تحل محل الأسماء.

e.g. I, we, it ...

e.g. We are very happy.
They have two children.
It is a bag.

Check

Circle the pronoun:

1 (Nour – She) is clever.
2 (They – The students) are very active.
3 What is (Sarah – she) doing?

Verbs

* يعبر عن حدث.

e.g. eat, play, do, ...

* يأتي الفعل بعد الفاعل.

e.g. We eat our lunch at 3 pm.
She walks to work every day.

Check

Read the story and circle the verbs:

I visit my grandparent every week. I go to the club every Friday. I play tennis and meet my friends. We have lunch together and go to the cinema.

Adjectives

* تصف الأسماء والضمائر.

e.g. new, big, thirsty, ...

* قد تأتي الصفة قبل الاسم أو بعد الفعل (be).

e.g. This is the tall giraffe.
The elephant is big.

Check

Circle the adjective:

1 long – dress – house – pen
2 write – eat – scary – jump
3 car – school – park – thin

Prepositions

* للدلالة عن الوقت أو المكان.

e.g. on, next to, in front of, ...

* تأتى حروف الجر قبل اسم أو ضمير آخر.

e.g. The book is under the bed.

The teacher is in front of the board.

Check

Read and reorder:

1. the table – The bag – on – is.

....

2. on – The hat – my head – is.

....

3. office - is – in – his – Dad.

....



Prepositions of Time:

لاحظ استخدامات حروف الجر الآتية:

at	with times: مع الأوقات	3 o'clock/ 3:30/ night
in	with months, seasons, and years: مع الشهور، الفصول، والسنوات	summer/ May/ the morning/ 2018
on	with days and dates: مع الأيام والتواريخ	Friday/ 5th May/ May 5th

Check

Read and choose:

1. I go to bed (at – in – on) 10 o'clock.
2. We have English class (in – on – by) Sunday.
3. They go to school (at – on – by) bus.
4. I was born (in – on – at) 2010.
5. See you (in – on – at) Friday.
6. I brush my teeth (in – on – at) the morning.
7. The match is (in – on – at) 4 o'clock.
8. He usually goes on holiday (in – on – at) July.

 Sentence Formation تكوين الجملة

فى اللغة الإنجليزية لا يوجد جمل اسمية وجمل فعلية ولكن تتكون الجملة من الآتى:

Subject الفاعل	+	Verb الفعل	+	Complement تكملة الجملة

e.g. We like English. — e.g. Waleed has a car. — e.g. Nora is clever.

1- الفاعل (subject): هو من قام بالفعل ودائمًا ما يأتى فى بداية الجملة ويمكن أن يكون اسم (شخص/ بلد/ مكان/ حيوان/ شىء) أو ضميرًا.

e.g.
Alexandria is a beautiful city.
Elephants eat grass.
She is a good teacher.

e.g.
Kareem eats fish.
Our house is big.
The flower is red.

Check

Read and choose the correct subject:

1 (A monkey – A table – Ali) studies English well.
2 (Trees – Lions – Leaves) eat meat.
3 (Egypt – A cake – A flower) is a nice place.

2- الفعل (verb): هو ما قام به الفاعل، ودائمًا ما يأتى بعده مباشرة.

e.g. The boy is playing football.
They eat fish for lunch.
Hana takes the bus to work.

Check

Read and underline the verb:

1 We eat sandwiches for breakfast.
2 Lara makes the cake for the parties.
3 My friends play in the playground.

3- تكملة الجملة (complement): هو ما يأتى بعد الفعل مباشرة وقد تكون (اسمًا/ ضميرًا/ صفة/ ظرفًا/ حرف جر/ ...).



Grandma walks slowly.

I love my parents.
I have two hundred pounds.

I play video games.
Hana is thin.

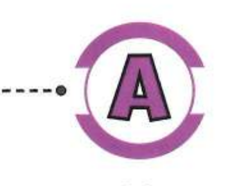
Check

Read and reorder:

1 many – I – read – books. ....
2 are – animals – Elephants – big. ....
3 go – We – Friday – swimming – on. ....



Punctuation marks علامات الترقيم



Capital letters
الحروف الكبيرة

فى بداية الجملة (الخبرية/ الأمرية)/ السؤال / أيام الأسبوع / الشهور / الضمير (I) فى أى مكان بالجملة / اللغات / الجنسيات / أسماء الأشخاص / البلدان / الأماكن الشهيرة.

e.g.
1. Hadeer lives in Luxor.
2. Jack speaks English and French.
3. Today is Tuesday.
4. I visited the Eiffel Tower in Paris.

Check

Punctuate the following:

1. i play basketball every week. ....
2. He went to japan last year. ....
3. My brother mahmoud is a doctor. ....



Period (Full stop)
النقطة

فى نهاية الجملة.

e.g. This is my friend Asmaa.
Do your homework, please.



Question mark
علامة الاستفهام

فى نهاية السؤال.

* **Wh- question:**

e.g. When do you sleep?

* **Yes/ No Question:**

e.g. Do you have a computer?



Exclamation mark
علامة التعجب

نضع علامة التعجب (!) فى نهاية العبارات أو الجمل التى تعبر عن الترحيب أو التعجب أو الشعور القوى.

e.g. Hello! / Wow! / What a nice day!

Check

Punctuate the following using (. - ? - !):

1. The flower is red ....
2. When is the English class ....
3. I like spaghetti ....
4. You're great ....
5. Do children like ice cream ....
6. Wow ....



تستخدم الفاصلة السفلى عندما نكتب قائمة بالأشياء أو العبارات.

e.g. I like football, tennis, and basketball.

Yes, of course. تستخدم بعد Yes / No في الإجابات.

تستخدم قبل but.

I like playing sports, but I don't like reading books.

Can I have some tea, please? تستخدم قبل please إذا جاءت في نهاية الجملة.

Check

Put the (,) in the right place:

1 He eats chicken but he doesn't eat eggs.
2 Hana's hobbies are reading, drawing and swimming.
3 Yes she has a bike.





My sister's car is big. توضع قبل «s» الملكية.

I'm a boy. توضع في الاختصارات.

Omar isn't at school.

Check

Put the (') in the right place:

1 This is Hana s room.
2 They re my friends.
3 What s your address?

Practice on punctuation marks

Find and write TWO (2) missing punctuation marks:

1 i love cooking baking, and playing football. ....
2 huda goes to the club on thursday. ....
3 What s your favorite subject ....
4 do they like apples ....
5 the baby is sleeping ....
6 i like to eat cheese ....
7 don t speak in the library. ....

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة إنشائية بطريقة صحيحة.



Tips for Writing a Paragraph نصائح لكتابة فقرة

How to write a paragraph

- استخدم علامات الترقيم الصحيحة punctuation.
- اترك مسافة صغيرة قبل أول جملة.
- ابدأ الجملة بحرف كبير capital letter.
- ضع نقطة آخر الجملة (.) period.
- استخدم جملًا بسيطة مرتبة.
- استخدم الزمن المناسب.
- تأكد من عدم وجود أخطاء إملائية.

مسافة قبل أول جملة

أول كل جملة حرف capital

My school

School is a place where we learn new things every day. In grade 6, we study interesting subjects like math, science, languages, and arts. We also have fun activities like art and recess. School is a place where we make friends and create memories that last a lifetime.

تأكد من استخدام علامات الترقيم comma

نهاية كل جملة period



2. Reading Skills

A Wh- Questions

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة كلمات الأستفهام والاجابة عن المطلوب بطريقة صحيحة.

What ...? ما / ماذا (للسؤال عن ماهية الشيء)

A: What are these?
B: These are pencils.

Where ...? أين (للسؤال عن المكان)

A: Where is Mai?
B: She is at school.

When ...? متى (للسؤال عن الوقت)

A: When do you go to work?
B: I go to work at eight in the morning.

Who ...? من (للسؤال عن العاقل)

A: Who is he?
B: He is my brother Youssef.

Whose ...? لمن (للسؤال عن الملكية)

A: Whose doll is this?
B: This is my doll. / This doll is mine.

Which ...? أى (للسؤال عن الاختيار)

A: Which cake do you want?
B: I want the chocolate cake.

Check

Read and choose:

1 (What – Who) is she?
2 A: Who is he? B: He is my (car – grandpa).
3 A: (Where – Who) won the match? B: Ola.
4 A: What is this? B: This is (a horse – a girl).
5 (Who – What) is her name?
6 (What – Whose) bag is this? B: It's Mona's bag.
7 A: (When – Where) are they? B: They are at the park.
8 A: (Who – Which) jacket do you want? B: The brown jacket.
9 A: (What – Where) do you study? B: I study in my room.
10 A: (Who – When) is the race? B: At 7 am.

How ...? كيف (للسؤال عن الحال ووسيلة المواصلات)

A: How do you go to work?
B: I go to work by bus.

How many ...? كم العدد (للسؤال عن العدد)

A: How many flowers are there?
B: There are ten flowers.

How old ...? كم العمر (للسؤال عن العمر)

A: How old are you?
B: I'm eleven years old.

How long ...? كم المدة/كم الطول (للسؤال عن المدة الزمنية/الأطوال الأفقية)

1. A: How long do you study science?
   B: I study science for an hour every day.
2. A: How long is this street?
   B: It is 10 meters long.

How much ...? كم الثمن / الكمية (للسؤال عن الثمن / الكمية)

1. A: How much are the tomatoes?
   B: They are five pounds.
2. A: How much milk do you drink?
   B: I drink one cup of milk a day.

Why ...? لماذا (للسؤال عن السبب)

A: Why didn't you come to the club?
B: I didn't come because I was ill.

Check

Read and choose:

1. (Who – How) many mangoes are there in the box?
2. How (much – many) dresses did you buy?
3. A: How many boys are there? B: (At school – Fifteen).
4. (Who – How) old is he?
5. How (many – old) is your sister?
6. A: How old are they? B: They're (a teacher – 10).
7. A: How (long – old) is the door? B: It's 90 cm.
8. A: (When – How) do you go to the park? B: I drive to the park.
9. A: (What – Why) didn't you come to the party?
   B: I didn't come because I was studying for an exam.
10. A: (When – How) much is the scooter? B: It's one thousand pounds.

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من إجابة أسئلة قطعة الفهم.



How to Answer Reading Comprehension Questions
كيفية الإجابة على أسئلة قطعة الفهم

للإجابة على قطعة القراءة المكونة من (90 – 100) كلمة فى الورقة الامتحانية، اتبع الإرشادات الآتية:

Sports are activities that make our bodies strong and healthy. There are many types of sports, like football, basketball, and swimming. When we play sports, we move our bodies and exercise to stay fit. Playing sports with friends is fun and helps us learn important skills like teamwork. Sports are a great way to have fun and stay active!

A) Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

Identify the general idea of the text.
لتحدد الفكرة العامة من النص، عليك قراءة الفقرة كلها مرتين ثم قراءة الاختيارات جيدًا واختيار الإجابة التى تتمحور حولها القطعة.

The general idea of the text is about ....

a) playing video games b) sports
c) reading books d) playing sports

Demonstrate understanding of specific details in the text.
عليك أن تركز مع تفاصيل القطعة وربط الأحداث ببعضها وكذلك الترابط والعلاقات ما بين الأشخاص والأشياء فى القطعة.

There are many types of sports, like football, basketball, and ....

a) reading b) drawing c) swimming d) singing

Determine the meaning of words and phrases in the text.
لتحديد واستنتاج معانى الكلمات وما تشير إليه، عليك قراءة الجملة التى وردت فيها الكلمة لتستنتج معنى الكلمة بناء على المعنى العام للجملة.

The underlined word "healthy" means ....

a) bad b) harmful c) good d) weak

B) Answer the following questions:

Describe the relationship between two people, events, ideas, or pieces of information in a text.
عليك الانتباه إلى الروابط والعلاقة ما بين الأشياء والأشخاص ببعضها، وعليك كذلك التركيز على ترتيب المعلومات وعلاقتها ببعضها.

What are sports?

Sports are activities that make our bodies strong and healthy.

Make logical inferences from the text.
عليك التركيز على عناصر وأجزاء المعلومات لتستخرج من النص المعلومات المطلوبة.

Infer the importance أهمية of sports.

When we play sports, we move our bodies and exercise to stay fit.
Playing sports with friends is fun and helps us learn important skills like teamwork.

Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in the text.
لتتمكن من تلخيص الفقرة، عليك قراءة القطعة جيدًا، واستخرج النقاط الهامة والرئيسية وضعها في جمل مفيدة.

Summarize the passage in one sentence.

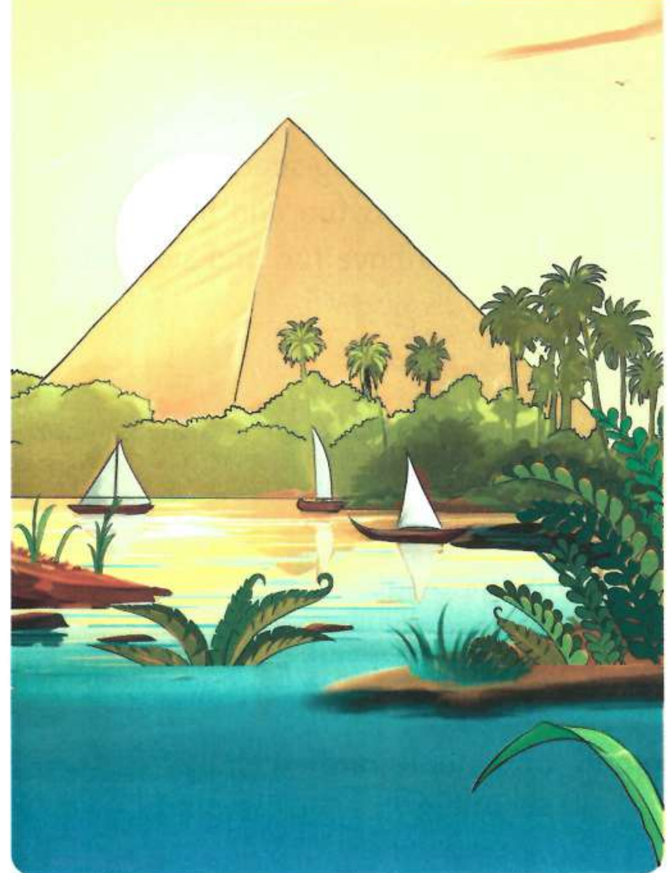
Sports are a great way to have fun and stay active.



I discover myself

أنا أكتشف نفسي









Unit 1 Green cities

مدن خضراء

Unit Objectives

• By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:	• بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:
- listen, read, write, and research about green spaces in towns.	- يستمع، ويقرأ ويكتب ويبحث عن المساحات الخضراء فى المدن.
- talk about how often he/she does things.	- يتحدث عن عدد المرات التى يقوم/تقوم فيها بالأشياء.
- listen and read about a project to make a city greener.	- يستمع ويقرأ عن مشروع لجعل المدينة أكثر خضرة.
- say the sounds "th" and "s".	- يقول الأصوات "th" و "s".
- write an informal email about things he/she misses about Egypt.	- يكتب بريدًا إلكترونيًا غير رسمى عن الأشياء التى يفتقدها/تفتقدها فى مصر.
- research and make an infographic about his/her area.	- يبحث ويقوم بتصميم مخطط حول منطقته/منطقتها.

Did you know?

- * Urban greening is an important part of town planning in many countries. It means creating areas of plants and trees in cities. These can be small parks between buildings or gardens on people's *roofs.

Find out!

- Al-Azhar Park is a *public park located in Cairo, Egypt. This park is *listed as one of the world's sixty great public spaces by the Project for Public Spaces.

* Urban greening	تخضير المناطق الحضارية	* roofs	أسطح	* public	عام	* listed as	مدرجة ضمن



Lesson 1

We work in the community garden

نحن نعمل فى الحديقة المجتمعية





1. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:



Main vocabulary



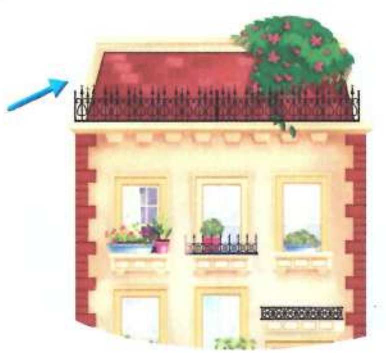
natural fertilizer

سماد طبيعى



apartment block

عمارة سكنية



roof

سطح

plant

يزرع



chemicals

مواد كيميائية



harvest

يحصد

Extra vocabulary

community garden	حديقة مجتمعية	space	مساحة	volunteer	متطوع
neighborhood	حى (مكان)	vegetables	خضراوات	market	سوق
peppers	فلفل	onions	بصل	lettuce	خس
lemons	ليمون	dates	بلح	own (adj.)	خاص
fresh (adj.)	طازج	organic (adj.)	عضوى	square meter	متر مربع
roof garden	حديقة السطح	a year	سنويًّا	health	صحة
summary	ملخص	local area	منطقة محلية	balcony	بلكونة



Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (ch) فى كلمتى (chemicals) و (school) ينطقان (k) (ك).
- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (gh) فى كلمة (neighborhood) حروف صامتة (silent) لا تنطق.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
plant	يزرع	planted	harvest	يحصد	harvested
produce	ينتج	produced	mention	يذكر	mentioned

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
grow	يزرع	grew	mean	يعنى/ يقصد	meant
sell	يبيع	sold	think	يعتقد	thought

Expressions and Phrases

on Fridays	فى أيام الجمعة	on Friday afternoons	فى أوقات الظهيرة يوم الجمعة
on the roof	على السطح	that's interesting	هذا رائع
all the time	طوال الوقت	in the middle of ...	فى منتصف ...
Wow!	رائع!	which means	مما يعنى
that's not all	هذا ليس كل شىء	good for	جيد لـ
make friends	يُكوِّن صداقات	It sounds great!	هذا يبدوا رائعًا!

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Mariam always helps her aunt on Friday afternoons at the community garden.
تساعد مريم خالتها دائمًا بعد ظهر يوم الجمعة فى الحديقة المجتمعية.
* The community garden is a big green space on the roof of the apartment block.
الحديقة المجتمعية عبارة عن مساحة خضراء كبيرة على سطح العمارة السكنية.
* People who work there are all volunteers. الأشخاص الذين يعملون هناك جميعهم متطوعون.
* People grow vegetables to eat and sometimes sell them in the market.
يقوم الناس بزراعة الخضراوات ليأكلوها وفى بعض الأحيان يبيعونها فى السوق.
* They only use natural fertilizer, so their food is fresh and organic.
يستخدمون الأسمدة الطبيعية فقط، لذا فإن طعامهم طازج وعضوى.

Check

Choose the correct answer: **اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:**

1 When plants grow well and become green, we (clean – produce – harvest – plant) them.
2 (Potatoes – Lettuce – Date – Lemon) is a green plant with a lot of leaves.
3 We live in a/an (roof – garden – apartment block – street) of eleven floors.
4 We never use (chemicals – fertilizers – plants – water) to grow our food. Our food is organic.
5 A community (market – garden – park – apartment) is a big green space on a roof.
6 You will find a lot of shops in the (roof – block – neighborhood – garden).



2. Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:





Nour

No school tomorrow! Do you want to come to my house?

لا يوجد مدرسة غدًا! هل تريدين أن تأتي إلى منزلي؟



Mariam

Thanks Nour, but I always help my aunt on Friday afternoons at the community garden.

شكرًا يا نور، لكنني دائمًا أساعد عمتي بعد ظهر يوم الجمعة في الحديقة المجتمعية.



Nour

The community garden? What's that?

الحديقة المجتمعية؟ ما هذه؟





Mariam

It's a big green space on the roof of my Aunt Salma's apartment block. The people who work there are all volunteers from the neighborhood. We grow vegetables to eat, and sometimes we sell them in the market, too!

إنها مساحة خضراء كبيرة على سطح عمارة عمتي سلمى. الأشخاص الذين يعملون هناك جميعهم متطوعون من الحي. نحن نزرع الخضراوات لنأكلها، وأحيانًا نبيعها في السوق أيضًا!



Nour

That's interesting. What things do you grow?

هذا ممتع. ما الأشياء التي تزرعونها؟







Mariam

Well, we usually plant tomatoes, peppers, onions, lettuce – things people eat all the time. Sometimes we also plant fruit trees. This year we have lemons and dates.

حسنًا، عادة نزرع الطماطم والفلفل والبصل والخس - الأشياء التي يأكلها الناس طوال الوقت. في بعض الأحيان نزرع أيضًا أشجار الفاكهة. هذا العام لدينا الليمون والتمر.



Nour

And you grow all this food in the middle of the city. Wow!

وأنتم تزرعون كل هذا الطعام فى وسط المدينة. رائع!





Mariam



Yes, it means people can grow their own fresh food and it's organic, too, which means we only use natural fertilizer – we never use chemicals.

نعم، هذا يعنى أن بإمكان الناس زراعة طعامهم الطازج وهو عضوى أيضًا، مما يعنى أننا نستخدم الأسمدة الطبيعية فقط - لا نستخدم المواد الكيميائية أبدًا.



Nour

Does your garden produce a lot of vegetables?

هل تنتج حديقتك الكثير من الخضار؟



Mariam



Yes, it does. From just one square meter of roof garden, we can harvest twenty kilos of vegetables a year. And that's not all. Roof gardens also help clean the air in the city, which is good for people's health. They are also a great place to meet people and make friends.

نعم إنها كذلك. يمكننا حصاد عشرين كيلو جرامًا من الخضار سنويًّا من مساحة متر مربع واحد فقط من حديقة السطح. وهذا ليس كل شىء. تساعد حدائق الأسطح أيضًا فى تنقية الهواء فى المدينة، وهذا مفيد لصحة الناس. وهى مكان رائع للقاء الناس وتكوين صداقات.



Nour

It sounds great, Mariam. We need more community roof gardens like that in our city!

هذا يبدو رائعًا يا مريم. نحن بحاجة إلى المزيد من حدائق الأسطح المجتمعية مثل تلك فى مدينتنا!

Take care!

- لاحظ استخدام حرف الجر (on) قبل أيام الأسبوع.

e.g. I help my mom on Friday/Friday afternoons.

- بعض الكلمات من الممكن أن تستخدم كـ verb (فعل) أو noun (اسم):

noun اسم	verb فعل
plant نبات e.g. The plants are green.	plant يزرع e.g. We usually plant tomatoes and onions.
harvest محصول e.g. We had a good harvest this year.	harvest يحصد e.g. We can harvest 20 kilos of vegetables a year.



Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة: (للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Ola helps her father with the ....
a) homework b) housework c) roof garden d) school work

2 They grow vegetables like onions, tomatoes, and ....
a) carrots b) lettuce c) potatoes d) peppers

3 They grow fruits like lemons and ....
a) apples b) dates c) mangoes d) bananas

4 They use natural fertilizer, so the food is ....
a) delicious b) organic c) green d) tasty

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 My friends and I are .... at the community garden. We work for no money.
a) workers b) students c) volunteers d) farmers

2 To get organic food, we use natural .... القاهرة - إدارة الوايلي التعليمية 2024
a) tools b) gardens c) chemicals d) fertilizers

3 I help my aunt at the community garden on the ....
a) house b) market c) area d) roof

4 Do you like eating ....?
a) games b) vegetables c) air d) villages

5 .... food is good for your health. بورسعيد - مديرية التربية والتعليم 2024
a) Organic b) Chemical c) Local d) Unhealthy

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

harvest – organic – water – air – volunteer

I'm Hana. I am in grade six. I am a ....(1)............ at the school project to help with the garden on the school roof. We grow ....(2)............ vegetables and fruits. We ....(3)............ twenty kilos of vegetables and fruit a year. Also, roof gardens help clean the ....(4)............ in our city. Which is good for our health.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Nour asks Mariam to go to her house tomorrow, but Mariam goes to help her aunt on Fridays. They work in a community garden on the roof of her aunt's apartment block. They grow vegetables and fruits for people in the local area, and sometimes they sell them, too. Mariam thinks the community garden is a good idea because the plants also help to clean the air in the city, and it is a good place to make new friends. She thinks that we need more community roof gardens in our city.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) Nour b) Mariam c) an apartment block d) a community garden

2 The underlined word "grow" means ....

a) harvest b) plant c) water d) clean

3 We need .... community roof gardens in our city.

a) less b) little c) more d) few

B Answer the following questions:

4 Where is the community garden?

....

5 Why is the community garden a good idea?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملًا:

1 the – all – We – vegetables – plant – time.

....

2 neighborhood – our – in – a community – We – garden – have.

....

3 do – What – you – grow – things?

....

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1 my favorite food is lettuce

....

2 do you like to eat organic food

....



Lesson 2





A We always work hard نحن دائمًا نعمل بجد



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

logo	شعار (علامة مميزة للدعاية)	aid	مساعدة	mini (adj.)	مصغر
forest	غابة	organization	منظمة	nature	الطبيعة
wildlife	الحياة البرية	data	بيانات	effects	تأثيرات

Extra vocabulary

news	أخبار	urban (adj.)	حضري	location	موقع
foreign (adj.)	أجنبي	project	مشروع	naturally	طبيعيًا
climate	مناخ	enough (adj.)	كافٍ	link	رابط
research	بحث	date palm	نخلة	city center	وسط المدينة
movie theater	صالة السينما	the countryside	الريف	square	ميدان
gymnastics	ألعاب الجمباز	competition	مسابقة	region	منطقة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
join	ينضم	joined	contact	يتواصل	contacted
collect	يجمع	collected	text	يراسل	texted
miss	يفوت	missed	enter	يدخل (يشارك)	entered

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
become	يصبح	became	understand	يفهم	understood
spend	يقضي	spent	meet	يقابل	met

Expressions and Phrases

work hard	يعمل بجد	look after	يعتني بـ
over time	مع مرور الوقت	go cycling	يذهب لركوب الدراجات
Is something wrong?	هل هناك مشكلة؟	on time	في الوقت المحدد
on weekends	في إجازات نهاية الأسبوع	spend time with	يقضي وقتًا مع
What about you?	ماذا عنك؟	a long way from	تبعد كثيرًا عن
meet up for the holiday	نلتقي في العطلة	Not really.	ليس تمامًا.
look nice	يبدو لطيفًا	enter a competition	يشارك في مسابقة

2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. These special green areas help people enjoy nature and help our wildlife - like plants, animals and other living things.

Mini Forest «الغابة الصغيرة» هي منظمة تزرع مساحات صغيرة من الأشجار في وسط مدننا. تساعد هذه المناطق الخضراء المميزة الناس على الاستمتاع بالطبيعة، وتساعد حياتنا البرية مثل النباتات والحيوانات وكائنات حية أخرى.

At Mini Forest, we always work hard to find the best urban locations for our forests, where people and wildlife need nature most.

في Mini Forest ، دائمًا نعمل بجد للعثور على أفضل المواقع الحضرية لغاباتنا، حيث يحتاج الناس والحياة البرية إلى الطبيعة أكثر من غيرهم.

We never grow foreign plants in our projects, we always plant trees that grow naturally in an area and we carefully look after them until they become a small forest.

نحن لا نزرع نباتات أجنبية أبدًا في مشاريعنا، نحن دائمًا نزرع الأشجار التي تنمو بشكل طبيعي في منطقة ما ونعتني بها بحرص حتى تصبح غابة صغيرة.

We also usually work with local communities to plant and look after the forests over time.

نعمل أيضًا عادةً مع المجتمعات المحلية لزراعة الغابات والاعتناء بها بمرور الوقت.

We collect data from every forest we plant a few times a month. This helps us understand the effects of the new green space on the people, wildlife, and climate of the area.

نجمع البيانات من كل غابة نزرعها عدة مرات في الشهر. يساعدنا هذا في فهم تأثيرات المساحة الخضراء الجديدة على الناس والحياة البرية ومناخ المنطقة.

We rarely have enough volunteers to help us with our projects, so we are always happy when people offer to help us. Click on the link to find out more.

نادرًا ما يكون لدينا عدد كافٍ من المتطوعين لمساعدتنا في مشاريعنا، لذلك نسعد دائمًا عندما يعرض الناس مساعدتنا. انقر على الرابط لمعرفة المزيد.

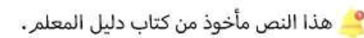


3. Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Listening script page 8 SB



هذا النص مأخوذ من كتاب دليل المعلم.



Where do the friends decide to go on Saturdays?

أين يقرر الأصدقاء الذهاب يوم السبت؟



Nadine: What do you usually do on weekends, Gameela?

ماذا تفعلين عادةً في عطلات نهاية الأسبوع يا جميلة؟



Gameela: I usually spend time with my sisters. We often go shopping in the city center, or we sometimes go to the movie theater. What about you?

عادة ما أقضى الوقت مع أخواتى. غالبًا ما نذهب للتسوق فى وسط المدينة، أو نذهب أحيانًا إلى السينما. ماذا عنك؟



Nadine: I don't very often go into the city. I usually stay at home and help my mom, but I sometimes visit my grandparents with my sister, Injy, and her kids.

أنا لا أذهب إلى المدينة فى كثير من الأحيان. عادةً ما أبقى فى المنزل وأساعد أمى، لكن أحيانًا أقوم بزيارة أجدادى مع أختى إنجى وأطفالها.





Gameela: Where do your grandparents live, Nadine?

أين يعيش أجدادك يا نادين؟

Nadine: They live in the countryside on a farm. It's near a city called Assuit. Do you know it? It's on the river Nile.

إنهم يعيشون فى الريف فى مزرعة. إنها بالقرب من مدينة تسمى أسيوط. هل تعرفينها؟ إنها على نهر النيل.





Gameela: Assuit? That's a long way from here. How often do you see them?

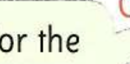
أسيوط؟ تبعد كثيرًا عن هنا. كم مرة ترينهما؟



Nadine: About once a month. My sister can drive so she usually takes me in her car. And we always try to meet up for the holiday at Eid Al-Adha too. We usually stay for a week at their house then.

حوالي مرة واحدة فى الشهر. تستطيع أختى القيادة لذا فهى عادة ما تأخذنى فى سيارتها. ونحاول دائمًا أن نلتقى فى العطلة فى عيد الأضحى أيضًا. عادة ما نبقى لمدة أسبوع فى منزلهم بعد ذلك.






Gameela

I love Eid Al-Adha! We always meet up with my mom's family for the holiday. They are all great cooks and we always eat a lot!

أحب عيد الأضحى! نلتقى دائمًا مع عائلة أمى فى الإجازة. إنهم جميعًا طباخون رائعون ونحن دائمًا نأكل كثيرًا!



Nadine

That sounds great!

هذا يبدو رائعًا!



Gameela

What about this weekend, Nadine? Are you busy?

ماذا عن نهاية هذا الأسبوع يا نادين؟ هل أنت مشغولة؟

Nadine

Not really. Do you want to do something together?

ليس تمامًا. هل تريدين أن نفعل شيئًا معًا؟



Gameela

Yes, let's go to that new café in our neighborhood. It's near the square.

نعم، دعينا نذهب إلى ذلك المقهى الجديد فى منطقتنا. إنه بالقرب من الميدان.



Nadine

Yes, OK. It looks nice and they've got delicious date and honey cakes! Saturday afternoon?

نعم. حسنًا. يبدو المكان جميلًا ولديهم كعك التمر والعسل اللذيذ! بعد ظهر يوم السبت؟



Gameela

Yes, that sounds great. I'll text you.

نعم، هذا يبدو عظيمًا. سوف أراسلك.

My sister, Dalia, plays basketball twice a week, on Tuesdays and Thursdays. She has a gymnastics lesson once a week, on Saturdays. She also practices her gymnastics every day after school - she never misses a day! Three times a year, in January, June, and December, there's a big gymnastics competition in our region. Dalia always enters!
Go Dalia!



تلعب أختي داليا كرة السلة مرتين فى الأسبوع، يومى الثلاثاء والخميس. لديها درس الجمباز مرة واحدة فى الأسبوع، فى أيام السبت. كما أنها تمارس رياضة الجمباز كل يوم بعد المدرسة - فهى لا تفوت أى يوم أبدًا! ثلاث مرات فى السنة، فى يناير ويونيو وديسمبر، تقام مسابقة جمباز كبيرة فى منطقتنا. داليا تشارك دائمًا!
هيا يا داليا!



The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

We use the present simple tense to talk about habits and routines.
نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط لتحدث عن العادات والأنشطة اليومية المتكررة.

Affirmative Form: صيغة الأثبات:

He/ She/ It + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + s/ es/ ies ... .

 - He plays tennis. - Sara wants water.

- معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (s):
  visit – visits
  e.g. Mona visits her grandparents on the weekends.
- الأفعال المنتهية بـ ss/ sh/ ch/ o/ x/ z يضاف لها (es):
  pass – passes
  e.g. Hamza never passes the street alone.
- الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن + (y) يحذف (y) ويضاف لها (ies):
  study – studies
  e.g. Samar studies English every day.

I/ We/ They/ You + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ... .

e.g. - We visit our cousins every week. - The children get up early.

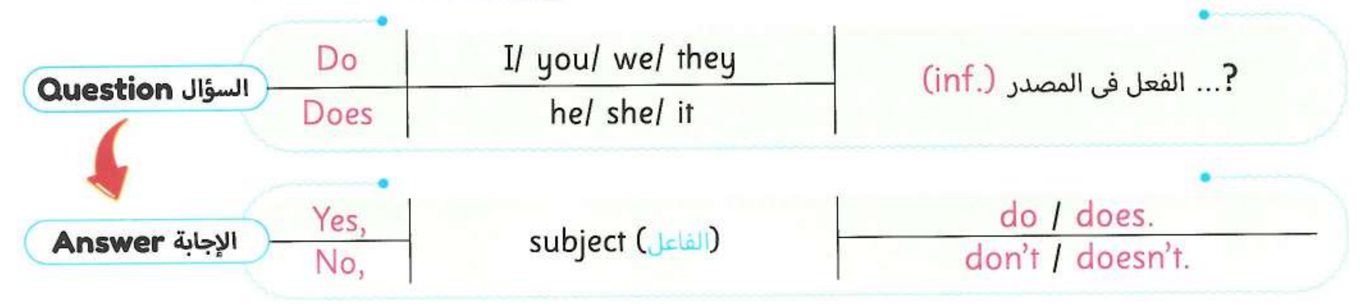
Negative Form: صيغة النفى:

He/ She/ It + doesn't + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ... .

We/ They/ You + don't + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ... .

e.g. - Moaz doesn't play football. - They don't play video games.

Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ(هل)



Question السؤال	Do	I/ you/ we/ they	(inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ...?
	Does	he/ she/ it	

Answer الإجابة	Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	do / does.
	No,		don't / doesn't.

e.g. A: Do you like sports?
B: Yes, I do.

e.g. A: Does he go to work by taxi?
B: No, he doesn't.



Wh- Question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Wh- word كلمة الاستفهام	do	I/ you/ we/ they	(inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + ...?
	does	he/ she/ it	

e.g. A: Where do you go in the weekend?
B: I often go to the park with my family.

e.g. A: When does the sun come up?
B: The sun comes up in the morning.

Check

Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 My dad (played – plays – playing – play) football on weekends.
2 It (raining – rains – rain – to rain) a lot in this city.
3 Doctors (works – working – work – to work) at the hospital.
4 Birds (sing – sings – sang – singing) beautiful songs.
5 Nancy (wasn't – don't – isn't – doesn't) like spicy food.
6 Trees (don't – isn't – didn't – doesn't) grow without water.
7 (Do – Is – Was – Does) your brother like playing sports?
8 (Does – Is – Do – Are) your friends live in the city?
9 When (do – does – did – are) the store open every day?
10 How many classes (do – are – does – is) you have today?

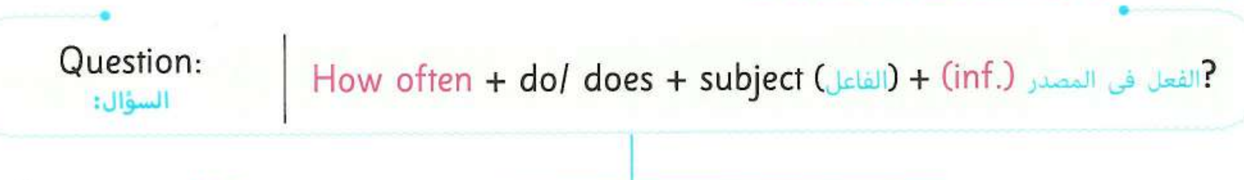
Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

We use adverbs of frequency before a verb (but after the verb to be) to talk about how often an action happens.
نستخدم ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل (وبعد الفعل be) للتحدث عن عدد مرات حدوث الفعل.

100%	90%	70%	50%	5%	0%
always	usually	often	sometimes	rarely	never

Asking about the frequency of an action using "How often":

للسؤال عن عدد مرات تكرار الحدث نستخدم (How often):



Answer: الإجابة:

Subject الفاعل + adverb of frequency + main verb.

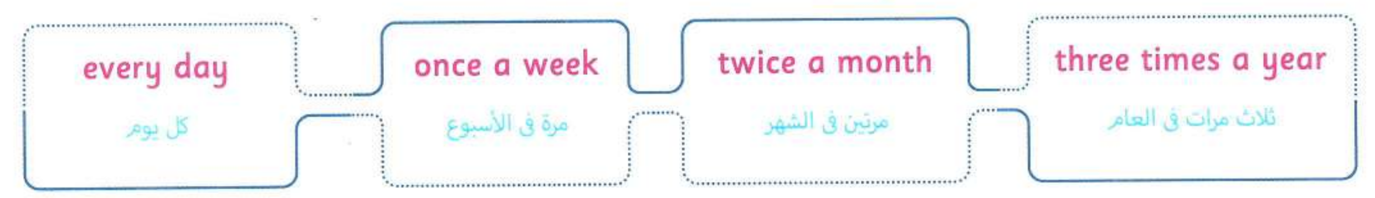
Subject الفاعل + (am/ is/ are) + adverb of frequency.

e.g. A: How often do you watch TV?
B: I always watch TV at night.

e.g. A: How often does he come late for school?
B: He is rarely late for school.

We can use time expressions to talk about how often we repeat the action.

يمكننا استخدام التعبيرات الزمنية للحديث عن عدد مرات تكرار الحدث.



e.g. - I visit my grandma every week.

- Omar travels aboard once a year.

Check

Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. How (often – old – many – much) do you go to the library?
2. (What – How – Who – When) often does Nadia play video games?
3. I (never – always – rarely – sometimes) have my breakfast before school. I never miss it.
4. My mom (always – rarely – often – usually) drinks coffee. She only drinks it once a week.
5. It (always – often – never – usually) snows in the summer.
6. The train (never – rarely – sometimes – usually) arrives on time. It's rarely late.
7. My sister (usually – always – never – often) watches TV at night. She always sleeps early.
8. Habiba goes to the gym (one – two – once – every) a week.
9. A: How often do you read newspapers?
   B: I (often – every – twice – doesn't) read them every morning.
10. My friends (always are – are always – always is – is always) at the park on Fridays.



Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 The team's .... is on the players' T-shirts.
a) logo b) location c) project d) center

2 The green areas help people enjoy nature and help the ....
a) wildlife b) fish c) water d) grass

3 Aswan is very far. That's a long .... from here.
a) river b) way c) community d) forest

4 Mini Forest Organization looks after the .... over time.
a) people b) animals c) forests d) birds

5 They collect .... about the forests for research.
a) food b) data c) trees d) links

6 Tourists from .... countries like to visit Egypt every year.
a) mini b) special c) foreign d) middle

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

effects – foreign – volunteer – middle – local

I am Hassan. I'm a ....(1).............. at the Mini Forest organization. It's an organization that plants areas of trees in the ....(2)........... of cities. We never grow ....(3)........... plants; we always plant trees that grow naturally in the area. We also collect data from every forest we plant. This helps us understand the ....(4)........... of forests on people, wildlife, and the climate of the area.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملًا:

1 do – How – often – to – go – you – the zoo?
....

2 never – Donia and Wael – late – are – for school. SB
....

3 look – the – over – We – mini forests – after – time.
....

4 grow – our projects – We – never – foreign – in – plants.
....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

1 She always ....(buy) meat for food. القاهرة - إدارة الساحل التعليمية 2024
2 My parents usually .... (listening) to the radio in the morning.
3 I don't .... (likes) watching TV.
4 Noha .... (not eat) too much. She's really thin.
5 .... (Do) your sister have a job?
6 How often .... (do) your teacher give you homework?
المنوفية - إدارة الباجور التعليمية 2024
7 I .... (doesn't) often play video games.
8 .... (Do) it often rain?
9 I .... (always) play basketball. I don't play it.
10 A: How .... (many) do you make lunch? B: Twice a week.
11 Yara .... (never) travels to Cairo. She travels once a month.
12 It's .... (rarely) sunny and hot in the summer.
13 Huda .... (usually is) late for school. الجيزة - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية 2024
14 She .... (often) eats nuts as a snack. She doesn't like nuts.
15 I .... (eat often) dates as a snack. I love them.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1 how often do you work in the community garden

....

2 i don t see my school friends on weekends.

....

6 Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من (50) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

مجاب عنه صفحة 308

"Mini Forest"

What is Mini Forest? – Why is Mini Forest important? – What do they plant?

....

....

....

....



Lesson 3





Reading



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

neighborhood	حى	railway line	خط السكة الحديد	local residents	السكان المحليون
species	فصائل/ أنواع	art works	أعمال فنية	theater performance	أداء مسرحى

Extra vocabulary

New York	مدينة نيويورك	email	رسالة بريد إلكترونى	well	بصحة جيدة
apartment	شقة	floor	دور/طابق	view	منظر
project	مشروع	famous (adj.)	مشهور	noisy (adj.)	مزعج

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمــة

Present		Past	Present		Past
create	يخلق	created	pass	يمر	passed
miss	يفتقد	missed	relax	يستريح	relaxed

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
can	يستطيع	could	hang out	يتسكع (يتجول)	hung out
write	يكتب	wrote	tell	يخبر	told

Expressions and Phrases

in parts of the city	في بعض أنحاء المدينة	no one uses now	لا أحد يستخدمها الآن
know about ...	يعرف عن ...	in the 1980s	في الثمانينات
make ... into	يحول	Here is	هنا
How are things ...?	كيف هى الأمور ...؟	doesn't taste like ...	لا يبدو طعمُه مثل ...

Definitions

hang out	يتسكع (يتجول)	spend time with, relax together	نقضى الوقت ونسترخى معًا
local residents	السكان المحليون	people who live in a neighborhood	الناس الذين يعيشون في الحى
pass through	يمر عبر	go from one place to another	ينتقل من مكان لآخر
miss	يفتقد	feel sad that you can't have or see something	تشعر بالحزن لأنه لا يمكنك الحصول على شيء أو رؤيته
railway line	خط السكة الحديد	a road for trains	طريق للقطارات

Take care!

- إضافة (s) الجمع إلى التاريخ (1980s) تعبر عن الفترة من (1980) إلى (1989).

e.g. They stopped using the railway in the 1980s.

- كلمة (home) قد تعنى منزلًا أو وطنًا.

e.g. I always watch TV at home.

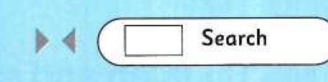
e.g. Egypt is our home country.

2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



To: samer@email.com
From: waeltawfik@email.com
Subject: Life in New York



Hi Samer,
How are you? I'm well and New York is great! Our apartment is on the sixteenth floor, so we have a great view of the city.

مرحبًا سامر
كيف حالك؟ أنا بصحة جيدة ونيويورك رائعة! تقع شقتنا في الطابق السادس عشر، لذلك لدينا إطلالة رائعة على المدينة.

New York has a lot of green spaces. There are also projects to create new parks and green spaces in parts of the city that no one uses now, like the famous High Line – do you know about it?

نيويورك بها الكثير من المساحات الخضراء. هناك أيضًا مشاريع لإنشاء حدائق ومساحات خضراء جديدة في أجزاء من المدينة لا يستخدمها أحد الآن، مثل High Line الشهير - هل تعرفه؟

Years ago, the High Line was a railway line, but in the 1980s trains stopped using it. Some local residents then decided to make the old railway into a big, long park that everyone could use. Now it's a green space with more than 500 species of plants and trees in it! It is 2.5 kms long and when you walk through it, you can see art works, watch a theater performance, eat delicious food, go running, or just hang out with your friends. I think it's my favorite place in New York. It passes through our neighborhood, so I often go there with my parents. Here is one of my photos of it.

منذ سنوات، كان High Line عبارة عن خط سكة حديد، لكن في الثمانينيات توقفت القطارات عن استخدامه. ثم قرر بعض السكان المحليين تحويل السكك الحديدية القديمة إلى حديقة كبيرة وطويلة يمكن للجميع استخدامها. الآن هي مساحة خضراء بها أكثر من ٥٠٠ نوع من النباتات والأشجار! يبلغ طوله ٢٫٥ كيلومتر، وعندما تمشي خلاله، يمكنك مشاهدة الأعمال الفنية، مشاهدة عرض مسرحي، تناول طعام لذيذ، ممارسة الجري، أو مجرد التسكع مع أصدقائك. أعتقد أنه مكاني المفضل في نيويورك. إنه يمر عبر حيّنا، لذلك غالبًا ما أذهب إلى هناك مع والدي. هذه واحدة من صوري له.

How are things in Alexandria? I miss home. New York is very noisy all the time. Alexandria is much quieter at night.
There are lots of different restaurants here in New York, and the food doesn't taste like the food at home. I think the food tastes more delicious in Egypt. I miss our food so much!

كيف هي الأمور في الإسكندرية؟ اشتقت للوطن. نيويورك صاخبة جدًا طوال الوقت. الإسكندرية أكثر هدوءًا في الليل.
يوجد الكثير من المطاعم المختلفة هنا في نيويورك، والطعام لا يشبه مذاق الطعام في الوطن. أعتقد أن الطعام طعمه ألذ في مصر. أفتقد طعامنا كثيرًا!

Write soon and tell me all your news,
Wael

اكتب قريبًا وأخبرني بكل أخبارك،
وائل

Check

1 What's Wael's favorite place in New York? .... SB

2 What is the High Line? ....



Tip! For True/False exercises, first read the sentences carefully. Underline the keywords and look for similar words in the text. Compare the information in the sentences and in the text, then choose your answer.

بالنسبة لتمارين الصواب / الخطأ، اقرأ الجمل بعناية أولًا. ضع خطًا تحت الكلمات الرئيسية وابحث عن الكلمات المتشابهة في النص. قارن المعلومات الواردة في الجمل والنص ثم اختر إجابتك.

e.g.

Read the email again. Write T (True) or F (False). Correct the false sentences in your notebook.

اقرأ البريد الإلكترونى مرة أخرى وأجب T (صواب) أو F (خطأ) .صحح الجمل الخاطئة فى دفتر ملاحظاتك.

1. Wael's family lives in a tall building. (T)
2. There aren't many parks in New York. (F)

   Correction: There are many parks in New York.
3. Wael lives far from the High Line. (F)

   Correction: Wael lives near the High Line.
4. In the past, the High Line was a road. (F)

   Correction: In the past, the High Line was a railway line.
5. The High Line is two and a half kilometers long. (T)
6. Wael loves the local food. (F)

   Correction: Wael says it's OK.

Check

Choose the correct answer: **اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:**

1. To (play – pass – bath – path) through is to go from one place to another.
2. To (miss – mess – like – do) is to feel sad you can't have or see something.
3. Local (residents – animals – plants – houses) are the people who live in a neighborhood.
4. A/An (railway line – apartment – art work – local residents) is a road for trains.
5. To (pass through – hang out – miss – create) is to spend time and relax together.





3. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

selfish (adj.)	أناني	giant (adj.)	عملاق	local children	أطفال القرية (السكان المحليون)
spring	فصل الربيع	hole	حفرة	tiny (adj.)	صغير الحجم

Extra vocabulary

season	فصل/ موسم	village	قرية	wonderful (adj.)	رائع
soft (adj.)	ناعم	colorful (adj.)	ملون	bees	نحل
lovely (adj.)	جميل	wall	حائط	empty (adj.)	فارغ
silent (adj.)	صامت	leaves	أوراق الشجر	snow	الثلج
sound	صوت (غير بشرى)	sweet (adj.)	حلو	corner	زاوية
little (adj.)	صغير السن	suddenly	فجأة	branches	فروع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
share	يشارك	shared	cover	يغطي	covered
arrive	يصل	arrived	laugh	يضحك	laughed
climb up	يتسلق	climbed up	start	يبدأ	started
happen	يحدث	happened	appear	يظهر	appeared

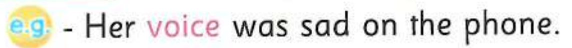
Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
build	يبني	built	fall	يسقط	fell
understand	يفهم	understood	feel	يشعر	felt
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up	hear	يسمع	heard
sit	يجلس	sat	stand	يقف	stood

Expressions and Phrases

on their way home	في طريقهم إلى المنزل	make ... happy	تجعل (شخصًا ما) سعيدًا
turn brown	يتحول للون البنى	fall from	يسقط من
fly away	يطير بعيدًا	What is wrong?	ما الأمر؟
look out of the window	ينظر للخارج من النافذة	come back through	يعود عبر
too small to (inf.) ...	صغير جدًّا أن يقوم بـ ...	fly up into	يطير للأعلى إلى





- (voice) تستخدم للصوت البشرى.

- The bird had a beautiful sound.

- (sound) للصوت غير البشرى.



The Selfish Giant العملاق الأنانى



4. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The beginning



In a village, there lives a giant who has a wonderful garden. In his garden there are tall trees, beautiful flowers, and soft, green grass. There are colorful birds singing in the trees and bees on the plants. Every afternoon, on their way home from school, the local children come to play in the giant's garden. The lovely garden always makes the children happy.

فى قرية، يعيش عملاق لديه حديقة رائعة. فى حديقته أشجار طويلة وأزهار جميلة وعشب أخضر ناعم. هناك طيور ملونة تغرد على الأشجار ونحل على النباتات. بعد ظهر كل يوم، فى طريق عودتهم إلى المنزل من المدرسة، يأتى أطفال القرية للعب فى حديقة العملاق. الحديقة الجميلة دائمًا تجعل الأطفال سعداء.

The middle



But the selfish giant doesn't want to share his garden, so one day he builds a big wall around it. Now the children never come there to play. The days pass and the garden is always empty and silent. Slowly, the green grass turns brown. The leaves fall from the trees. Then snow covers the garden and all the birds and bees fly away. Spring arrives in the village, but in the giant's garden it is still winter. Everything is under the snow. The giant doesn't understand. Usually his garden is beautiful in spring! What is wrong?

لكن العملاق الأنانى لا يريد مشاركة حديقته، لذلك فى أحد الأيام قام ببناء جدار كبير حولها. الآن الأطفال لا يأتون إلى هناك للعب. تمر الأيام والحديقة دائمًا فارغة وصامتة. ببطء، يتحول العشب الأخضر إلى اللون البنى. الأوراق تسقط من الأشجار. ثم يغطى الثلج الحديقة وتطير جميع الطيور والنحل بعيدًا. يصل الربيع إلى القرية، لكن لا يزال الشتاء موجودًا فى حديقة العملاق. يغطى الثلج كل شىء العملاق لا يفهم. فعادة ما تكون حديقته جميلة فى الربيع. ما الأمر؟

Then one morning he wakes up and hears a lovely sound. A little blue bird is singing in a tree outside. Then the giant hears another sweet sound - children laughing.

ثم فى صباح أحد الأيام يستيقظ ويسمع صوتًا جميلًا. طائر أزرق صغير يغنى على شجرة بالخارج. ثم يسمع العملاق صوتًا لطيفًا آخر - أطفال يضحكون.

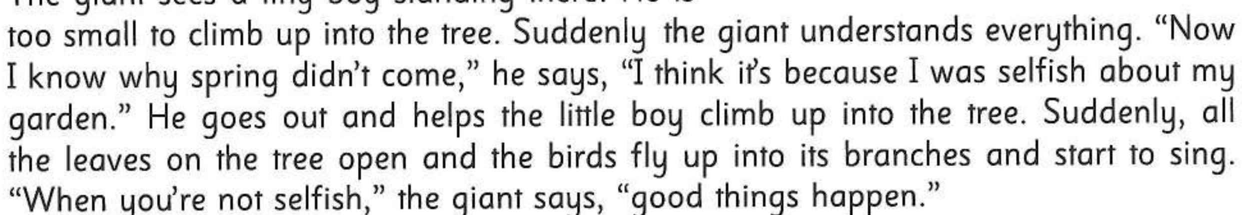


The end

He looks out of the window and sees that the children have come back through a hole in the garden wall. Now they are sitting under the trees. The leaves on the trees are green again and flowers are opening around them. The giant feels so happy to see his garden grow again.

ينظر من النافذة ويرى أن الأطفال قد عادوا من خلال ثقب فى جدار الحديقة. الآن هم جالسون تحت الأشجار. عادت الأوراق على الأشجار خضراء مرة أخرى وتفتحت الأزهار من حولها. يشعر العملاق بسعادة غامرة لرؤية حديقته تنمو مرة أخرى.





But in one corner of the garden, it is still winter. The giant sees a tiny boy standing there. He is too small to climb up into the tree. Suddenly the giant understands everything. "Now I know why spring didn't come," he says, "I think it's because I was selfish about my garden." He goes out and helps the little boy climb up into the tree. Suddenly, all the leaves on the tree open and the birds fly up into its branches and start to sing. "When you're not selfish," the giant says, "good things happen."

لكن فى أحد أركان الحديقة، لا يزال الشتاء. يرى العملاق صبيًا صغيرًا يقف هناك. إنه أصغر من أن يصعد إلى الشجرة. فجأة يدرك العملاق كل شىء. يقول: «أنا أعرف لماذا لم يأت الربيع، لأننى كنت أنانيًا فيما يخص حديقتى». يخرج ويساعد الطفل الصغير على الصعود إلى الشجرة. فجأة، تزهر كل الأوراق على الشجرة وتطير الطيور إلى أغصانها وتبدأ فى الغناء.

يقول العملاق: «عندما لا تكون أنانيًا، تحدث أشياء جيدة».

The moral of the story

When you're not selfish, good things happen.

عندما لا تكون أنانيًا تحدث أشياء جيدة.

Check

Choose the correct answer: **اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:**

1. There's a giant that lives in a (city – desert – village – town).
2. The Giant was (friendly – selfish – nice – bad) about his garden.



C Pronunciation



5. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



/s/

sand	رمال
grass	حشائش
sick	مريض
so	لذلك
pass (v.)	يمر / ينجح
mouse	فأر
sing (v.)	يغني
seed	بذرة
stalk	ساق النبات
bus	أتوبيس
soft	ناعم
selfish	أناني
six	ستة
sunset	وقت الغروب
sky	سماء
sunny	مشمس

/θ/

thumb	إبهام
think	يفكر
thick	كثيف
throw	يلقى/ يرمى
path	طريق
mouth	فم
thing	شيء
thanks	شكرًا
thirsty	عطشان
bath	حمام
through	عبر/ خلال
thin	نحيف
thunder	رعد
threaten	يهدد



Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة: (للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 The giant didn't want to share his ....
a) money b) house c) garden d) clothes

2 The giant built a .... around his garden.
a) wall b) ship c) room d) roof

3 When the children came back, the leaves on the trees are .... again.
a) yellow b) red c) blue d) green

4 When you're not ...., good things happen.
a) good b) nice c) selfish d) sweet

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 We live in an apartment on the tenth ....
a) flower b) flour c) floor d) flood

2 The selfish giant doesn't want anyone to .... his garden.
a) love b) share c) pick d) grow

3 The park is a good place to hang .... with your friends.
a) in b) out c) up d) to

4 The roof is the .... of a building.
a) side b) left c) top d) bottom

5 New York is very noisy, but Alexandria is much ....
a) bigger b) smaller c) quieter d) faster

6 There's a .... near my house, but there aren't any trains using it now.
a) minaret b) souk c) palace d) railway line

المنوفية - إدارة الباجور الإنجليزية 2024

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

noisy – restaurants – miss – night – project

I live in New York, but I used to live in Alexandria. New York is very ....(1)............ . Alexandria is much quieter at ....(2)............ . The food also doesn't taste like the food at home. There are lots of different ....(3)............ here in New York. But the restaurants in Alexandria are much better. I think the food tastes more delicious in Egypt. I ....(4)............ our food so much!

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

New York has a lot of green spaces, like the famous High Line. The High Line was a railway line, but in the 1980s, trains stopped using it. Some local residents decided to make the old railway into a big, long park that everyone could use. Now it's a green space with more than 500 species of plants and trees in it! It is 2.5 kms long, and when you walk through it, you can see art works, watch a theater performance, eat delicious food, go running, or just hang out with your friends.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 People stopped using the old railway from .... to ....
a) 1960 – 1969 b) 1970 – 1979 c) 1980 – 1989 d) 1990 – 1999

2 The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the ....
a) restaurant b) theater c) class d) High Line

3 The park is .... long.
a) 2.2 kms b) 2.3 kms c) 2.5 kms d) 2.6 kms

B Answer the following questions:

4 How many species of plants are there in the High Line?

....

5 Summarize the passage in two sentences.

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملًا:

1 Our – on – sixteenth – apartment – is – the – floor.

....

2 passes – High Line – through – The – neighborhood – my.

....

3 all – New York – noisy – very – the time – is.

....

4 a wonderful – has – The – garden – giant.

....

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1 How are things in alexandria

....

2 new york has a lot of green spaces.

....



Lessons 4 & 5
Writing & Project





1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary


The Meadows
«حدائق» المروج

Edinburgh Castle
قلعة أدنبرة


porridge
عصيدة (أكلة شعبية فى أسكتلندا)

Extra vocabulary

Scotland	أسكتلندا	friendly (adj.)	ودود	called (adj.)	يُدعى/ يُسمى
famous (adj.)	مشهور	warm (adj.)	دافئ	especially	خصوصًا
Scottish (adj.)	أسكتلندى	better (adj.)	أفضل	news	أخبار
bowl	سلطانية/ وعاء	oats	الشوفان	informal (adj.)	غير رسمى
infographic	مخطط معلومات بيانى	arrow	سهم	caption	وصف/ تعليق

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
meet	يقابل	met	stick	يلزق	stuck

Expressions and Phrases

really interesting	مثيرة للاهتمام حقًّا	just next to	قريب جدًّا من	really cool	رائع حقًّا
on the third floor	فى الطابق الثالث	on the other side	على الجانب الاخر	over the trees	فوق الأشجار
in the distance	على مسافة بعيدة	OK (okay)	تمام/ على ما يرام	miss about	يفتقد/ يشتاق إلى
write back soon	اكتب لى قريبًا	the news from home	الأخبار من الوطن	friendly in tone	بطريقة ودية

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Donia is in Scotland with Mom, Dad, and Hany. دنيا فى أسكتلندا مع ماما وبابا وهانى.
* They are in an apartment next to a park called The Meadows. هم فى شقة بجوار حديقة تسمى "المروج".
* In the distance, they can see the famous Edinburgh Castle. على مسافة بعيدة، يمكنهم رؤية قلعة إدنبره الشهيرة.
* Donia likes Scotland, but she misses the weather and food in Egypt.
دنيا تحب أسكتلندا لكنها تفتقد الطقس والطعام فى مصر.
* The people in Scotland are nice and she has a lot of new friends at school.
الناس فى أسكتلندا لطيفون ولدى دنيا الكثير من الأصدقاء الجدد فى المدرسة.



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

From:	Donia@qwikmail.com
To:	Laila@egyptmail.com
Subject:	My new life in Scotland

Hi Laila, مرحبًا ليلى

How are things with you? كيف هى الأمور معك؟

I'm finally in Scotland with Mom, Dad, and Hani. It's really interesting!

Our apartment is in the city center, just next to a really cool park called The Meadows. It's on the third floor and the park is on the other side of the street, so we have a great view over the trees. People use the park a lot for sports and meeting friends, so there's always something to see there. In the distance, we can see the famous Edinburgh Castle, too!

أنا أخيرًا فى أسكتلندا مع أمى وأبى وهانى. إنها مثيرة للاهتمام حقًا!

تقع شقتنا فى وسط المدينة، بجوار حديقة رائعة بالفعل تسمى «The Meadows». إنها فى الطابق الثالث وتقع الحديقة على الجانب الآخر من الشارع، لذلك لدينا إطلالة رائعة على الأشجار. يستخدم الناس المتنزه كثيرًا لممارسة الرياضة ومقابلة الأصدقاء، لذلك هناك دائمًا ما يمكن رؤيته يمكننا أن نرى من مسافة بعيدة قلعة أدنبرة الشهيرة أيضًا!

I like Scotland, but there are lots of things I miss about Egypt – the warm, sunny weather (it's never hot here) and especially the food! Scottish food is OK but Egyptian food is better! For example, for breakfast a lot of Scottish people eat porridge. They usually make it with milk, and they sometimes put honey on it, but I don't really like it! I really miss my favorite Egyptian breakfast, ful medames!

أحب أسكتلندا، لكن هناك الكثير من الأشياء التى أفتقدها فى مصر - الطقس الدافئ المشمس (لا يكون الجو حارًا هنا أبدًا) وخاصة الطعام! الطعام الأسكتلندى جيد لكن الطعام المصرى أفضل! على سبيل المثال، لتناول الإفطار، يأكل الكثير من الأسكتلنديين العصيدة. عادة ما يصنعونها بالحليب، ويضعون عليها أحيانًا العسل، لكن أنا فعلًا لا أحبها. أفتقد حقًّا إفطارى المصرى المفضل، الفول المدمس!

The people here are nice and I have a lot of new friends at school. I often go to my friend Rhona's house after school. We study together and sometimes we watch TV – in English!

Please write back soon and tell me all the news from home.

Lots of love,

Donia

الناس هنا لطيفون ولدى الكثير من الأصدقاء الجدد فى المدرسة. غالبًا ما أذهب إلى منزل صديقتى رونا بعد المدرسة ونذاكر معًا وأحيانًا نشاهد التلفزيون - باللغة الإنجليزية!

اكتبى لى أيضًا من فضلك وحدثينى عن كل الأخبار فى الوطن.

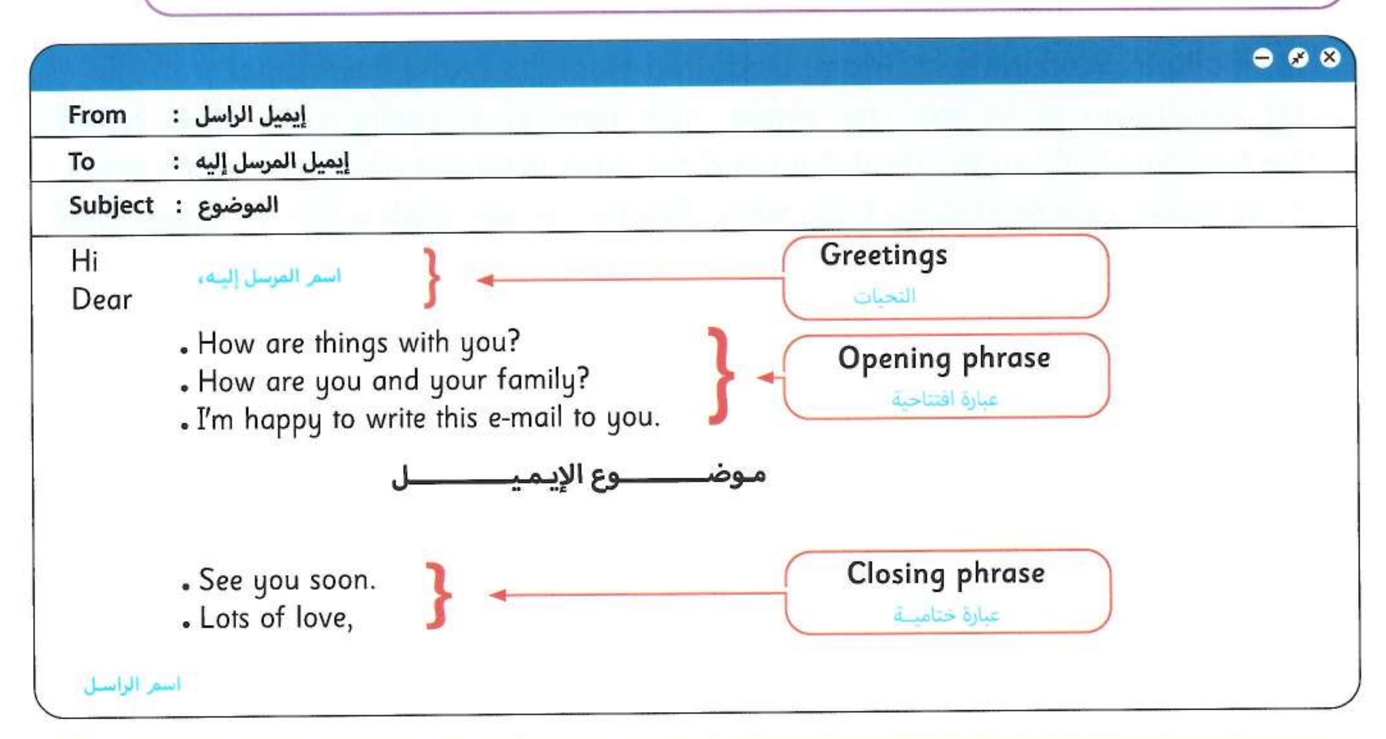
الكثير من الحب،

دنيا

How to write an informal email كيف تكتب بريدًا إلكترونيًا غير رسمى

* An informal email is a message you write to friends or family.
البريد الإلكترونى غير الرسمى هو رسالة تكتبها إلى الأصدقاء أو العائلة.
* An informal email should be friendly in tone, use informal language, and include opening and closing phrases.
يجب أن يكون البريد الإلكترونى غير الرسمى ودودًا فى أسلوبه، ويستخدم لغة غير رسمية، ويتضمن عبارات افتتاحية وختامية.

Tip! Make sure you type your friend's email address correctly or they won't receive the email!
تأكد من كتابة عناوين بريد أصدقائك بشكل صحيح، وإلا فلن يتلقوا البريد الإلكترونى!



e.g. **Write an informal email of about FIFTY (50) words to your friend Mai in Egypt telling her about your new life in China. Your name is Amira and your email address is amira@school.com. Your friend's email address is mai@school.com.**

From : amira@school.com
To : mai@school.com
Subject : My new life in China

Hi Mai,
How are things with you? I'm finally in China with Mom, Dad, and Hana. Our apartment is in the city center. It's on the third floor. The Chinese food is OK, but the Egyptian food is better. I miss my favorite Egyptian breakfast, ful medames! I also miss the warm and sunny weather in Egypt. The people here are nice, and I have a lot of new friends at school. Please write back soon and tell me all the news from home.
Lots of love,
Amira



Lessons 4 & 5



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 .... people eat porridge for breakfast.
a) Egyptian b) Scottish c) Chinese d) American

2 We can see the famous Edinburgh .... from the window of my apartment.
a) Park b) Hospital c) Castle d) School

3 Sarah is always kind and .... Everyone likes her.
a) noisy b) friendly c) informal d) angry

4 The porridge is made with .... and milk.
a) flour b) wheat c) oats d) mango

5 Laila misses the warm, ... weather in Egypt.
a) snowy b) cold c) frozen d) sunny

6 Laila's apartment is in front of a .... called "The Meadows".
a) park b) hospital c) castle d) school

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

miss – apartment – nice – weather – warm

I am Adam. I'm in Scotland with my family. We are staying in an ....(1).............. on the sixth floor. I like Scotland, but there are lots of things I ....(2)........... about Egypt – the warm, sunny ....(3)........... . I really miss my favorite Egyptian breakfast, ful medames! The people here are ....(4)........... and I have a lot of new friends at school.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Hana. I'm finally in Scotland. Our apartment is on the third floor and the park is on the other side of the street, so we have a great view over the trees. People use the park a lot for sports and making friends, so there's always something to see there. Scottish food is OK, but Egyptian food is better! For example, for breakfast, a lot of Scottish people eat porridge. They usually make it with milk, and they sometimes put honey on it, but I don't really like it!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The apartment is on the .... floor.
a) 1st b) 2nd c) 3rd d) 4th

2 Egyptian food is .... than Scottish food.
a) worse b) smaller c) better d) farther

3 A lot of Scottish people eat ....
a) ful medames b) porridge c) milk d) honey

B Answer the following questions:

4 Where is Hana? ....

5 Summarize the passage in two sentences. ....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملاً:

1 Egyptian – ful medames – favorite – My – breakfast – is.

....

2 eat – breakfast – Scottish – for – porridge – people.

....

3 have – friends – school – a lot of – I – at.

....

4 is – Our – the – center – in – apartment – city.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

-I'm finally in scotland ....

6 Write an informal email of FIFTY (50) words to your friend Sally to tell her about your new life in Scotland. Your name is Sarah and your email address is sarah@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is sally@gmail.com:

مجاب عنه صفحة 308

اكتب بريدًا إلكترونيًّا من 50 كلمة إلى صديقتك سالى لتخبرها عن حياتك الجديدة فى أسكتلندا:

Scottish people – cool park – eat porridge

From : ....

To : ....

Subject : ....

.... ,

....

....

....

....

....

Unit 1 REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التى وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

apartment block	عمارة سكنية	roof	سطح
natural fertilizer	سماد طبيعى	chemicals	مواد كيميائية
harvest	يحصد	plant	يزرع
community garden	الحديقة المجتمعية	volunteer	متطوع
neighborhood	حى	organic	عضوى
dates	بلح	lettuce	خس
local area	منطقة محلية	balcony	بلكونة

Lesson (2)

logo	شعار (علامة مسجلة للدعاية)	mini	مصغر
forest	غابة	organization	منظمة
nature	الطبيعة	effect	تأثير
aid	مساعدة	urban	حضرى
location	موقع	foreign	أجنبى
data	بيانات	research	بحث
project	مشروع	wildlife	الحياة البرية

Lesson (3)

railway line	خط السكة الحديد	local residents	السكان المحليون
species	فصائل	art works	أعمال فنية
theater performance	أداء مسرحى	floor	طابق / دور
selfish	أنانى	giant	عملاق
hole	حفرة	village	قرية
thumb	الإبهام	path	ممر
thick	كثيف	branches	فروع الشجرة

Lessons (4 & 5)

Scotland	أسكتلندا	friendly	ودود
Scottish	أسكتلندى	news	أخبار
bowl	سلطانية/ وعاء	oats	الشوفان
informal	غير رسمى	castle	قلعة
porridge	عصيدة	famous	مشهور

Language Focus

Adverbs of frequency:

We use adverbs of frequency before a verb (but after the verb to be) to talk about how often an action happens.

e.g.

100%	90%	70%	50%	5%	0%
always	usually	often	sometimes	rarely	never

Asking about the frequency of an action using "How often" :

How often + do/ does + subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر?

Subject الفاعل + adverb of frequency + main verb.

Subject الفاعل + (am/ is/ are) + adverb of frequency.

e.g. A: How often do you watch TV?
B: I always watch TV at night.

e.g. A: How often does he come late for school?
B: He is rarely late for school.



Unit 1 CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

يزرع	....	مبنى سكنى	....
سطح	....	سماد طبيعى	....
مواد كيميائية	....	يحصد	....
حديقة مجتمعية	....	فلفل	....
بصل	....	خس	....
ليمون	....	بلح (تمر)	....

Lesson 2

شعار	....	مصغر	....
غابة	....	منظمة	....
الطبيعة	....	تأثيرات	....
موقع	....	بيانات	....
حضرى	....	أجنبى	....
متطوعون	....	بحث	....
الريف	....	مناخ	....

Lesson 3

الحى	....	الطابق / الدور	....
منظر	....	فصائل / أنواع	....
السكان المحليون	....	أداء مسرحى	....
أنانى	....	عملاق	....
إبهام	....	كثيف	....
يرمى	....	يمر	....
أعمال فنية	....	شقة	....
مزعج	....	فروع	....

Lessons 4 & 5

أسكتلندا	....	ودود	....
مشهور	....	دافىء	....
خصوصًا	....	أخبار	....
غير رسمى	....	الشوفان	....
سلطانية/ وعاء	....	أفضل	....

WRITING TIME



لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about "Mini Forest":

- Mini Forest is (تعريف المنظمة).
- Mini Forest helps (فوائد المنظمة).
- We plant (نوع النباتات التى يتم زراعتها).
- We need (احتياجات المنظمة).

"Mini forest"

Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. Mini Forest helps people enjoy nature and help our wildlife. We always plant trees that grow naturally in an area and we carefully look after them until they become a small forest. We need more volunteers to join the Mini Forest Organization.

How to write about a project to create green spaces:

- (اسم المشروع) is in (اسم البلد) ... .
- Years ago, (اسم المشروع) was (تاريخ المشروع) ... .
- Now it's (تحويل المكان) ... .
- It is (طول المشروع) long ... .
- When you walk through it, you can (أنشطة داخل المشروع) ... .

"Create green spaces"

The High Line is in New York. Years ago, the High Line was a railway line, but in the1980s trains stopped using it. Now it's a green space with more than 500 species of plants and trees in it! It is 2.5 kms long. When you walk through it, you can see art works, watch a theater performance, or just hang out with your friends.

How to write an informal email:

- Start with an opening phrase.
- Ask about the reader's health/news.
- Use informal expressions.
- End with a friendly closing phrase.

From	: nadia@gmail.com
To	: nahla@gmail.com
Subject	: My visit to Paris

Hello Nahla,
How are things in Alexandria?
I'm spending a great time in Paris. I got a family ticket to Disneyland. I'm really excited. I went to the Louvre Museum, but guess what! It was pretty boring. People here are nice and the food is yummy, too.
Write to me soon to tell me your news.
Lots of love.
Nadia.



STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

 يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التى وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Complete the sentences with the words and phrases from the box:

chemicals – harvest – local residents – natural fertilizer – plant – railway line

1 Early spring is the best season to .... seeds in the ground.
2 You can use old coffee as a .... for plants in your garden.
3 There's a .... near my house, but there aren't any trains using it now.
4 I prefer to eat fruit that is natural and organic with no ....
5 The Nile Delta has very fertile farming areas and the people .... rice there every year.
6 The people who work in the community garden are all ....

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 10 pm – usually – in bed – before – I'm.

....

2 always – My dad – a healthy breakfast – in the morning – eats.

....

3 the dentist – you – go – How – do – often – to?

....

4 rains – It – the Western Desert – rarely – in.

....

3 Circle the correct adverb in each sentence:

1 We don't like fish at all. We (often – never) eat it.
2 Date palm trees (usually – never) produce fruit.
3 My aunt lives with us, so I (often – rarely) speak to her.
4 I (sometimes – never) do my homework in the afternoon, but I prefer to do it in the evening.
5 Hani (rarely – often) plays football. He doesn't like sports.

Test Yourself 30 — UNIT 1







Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة: (للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب) — 6

1. Lara .... wakes up at six o'clock.
   a) always b) often c) usually d) never
2. She sometimes eats a .... at nine o'clock.
   a) noodles b) sandwich c) popcorn d) candies
3. She .... watches TV after school.
   a) often b) sometimes c) rarely d) daily
4. She usually does her homework at .... o'clock.
   a) 4 b) 5 c) 6 d) 7

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: — 4

1. The .... giant doesn't want to share his garden.
   a) happy b) kind c) selfish d) helpful
2. Organic food has no .... (الجيزة – إدارة الهرم التعليمية 2024)
   a) harvest b) fertilizers c) chemicals d) invitations
3. The .... will soon reach our town, so we will travel by train.
   a) airport b) railway line c) pavement d) park
4. We climbed onto the .... of a building to get the injured bird.
   a) roof b) street c) flat d) road

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة: — 4

railway – children – residents – species – trains

The famous High Line is in New York City. The High Line was a ....(1)............ line. In 1980s, the ....(2)............ stopped using it, so the local ....(3)............ decided to make the old railway into a big, long park that everyone could use. The railway is now a green space with more than 500 ....(4)............ of plants and trees.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: — 5

Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. These special green areas help people enjoy nature and help our wildlife. At Mini Forest, we always work hard to find the best urban locations for our forests, where people and wildlife need nature most. We never grow foreign plants in our projects, we always plant trees that grow naturally in an area and we carefully look after them until they become a small forest. We rarely have enough volunteers to help us with our projects, so we are always happy when people offer to help us.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We .... grow foreign plants in our projects.
   a) always b) never c) usually d) often
2. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to the ....
   a) small forest b) organization c) trees d) wildlife
3. We need more .... to join the Mini Forest Organization.
   a) students b) volunteers c) foreigners d) players

B. Answer the following questions:

4. What is the Mini Forest? ....
5. Summarize the benefits of the organization for people and nature.

....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملًا: (3)

1. does – How – eat – she – often – dates?

....

2. want to – Do – house – my – come to – you?

....

3. always – My dad – a healthy breakfast – in the morning – eats. الدقهلية – إدارة السنبلاوين التعليمية 2024

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2)
اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

1. They .... (play usually) computer games on Sundays. القاهرة – إدارة الشروق التعليمية 2024
2. A: How .... (many) do you make lunch? B: Twice a week.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى: (1)

Where does Mariam go on fridays

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من 50 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية: (5)

مجاب عنه صفحة 308

"Our community garden"

What is the community garden? – What do you grow there?

....

....

....

....





Unit 1 AL-AZHAR CORNER

تحتوى هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأزهر.

1 Read and complete the dialogue: اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

natural – roof – community – environment – clean

Mai : What's a .... garden?
Hana : It's a big green space on a ....
Mai : What kind of fertilizers do they use?
Hana : They use .... fertilizers.
Mai : Do community gardens help the ....?
Hana : Yes, they help .... the air.

2 Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 A: (How much – How many – How often) do you play tennis?
B: Twice a week.
2 We (doesn't – don't – aren't) water the plants in the morning.
3 I (sometimes – usually – never) watch TV before I sleep. It's unhealthy.
4 I never (eats – eating – eat) unhealthy foods.
5 Does she often (play – plays – played) the piano?
6 We only use (snow – natural fertilizer – railway line) in our garden.
7 When will you (harvest – make – read) the crops?
8 The effects of this (organic – chemical – natural fertilizer) are dangerous.
9 I live with my family in a modern (railway – apartment – roof) overlooking the sea.
10 We can (buy – plant – cook) those flowers in the garden.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة:

1 peppers – They – tomatoes – plant – and – usually.
....
2 mother – do – How often – help – you – your?
....
3 milk – always – He – the morning – drinks – in.
....
4 tall – The – very – is – apartment block.
....
5 city – Do – the – you – grow – in – food?
....

Unit 2

We are all different

جميعنا مختلفون



Unit Objectives

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:
  - listen, read, and write about people's personalities.
  - make clear what people, places, and things he/she's talking about using who, which, and where.
  - describe his/her own and other people's feelings.
  - say the sounds /ʌ/ and /æ/.
  - write a paragraph explaining the positive and negative qualities of something.
  - make a leaflet about his/her school.

- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:
  - يستمع، يقرأ ويكتب عن شخصيات الناس.
  - توضيح الأشخاص والأماكن والأشياء التي يتحدث/تتحدث عنها باستخدام «who»، «which» و«where».
  - يصف مشاعره/مشاعرها الخاصة ومشاعر الناس.
  - يقول الأصوات /ʌ/ و /æ/.
  - يكتب فقرة بشرح الصفات الإيجابية والسلبية لشيء ما.
  - يصمم منشورًا عن مدرسته/مدرستها.

Did you know?

- The way you move gives other people information about your *personality. Each person has a different way of moving, just like we each have our own handwriting. People who move in similar ways often become friends and work well together.

Find out!

- A person's personality is how they think and *behave. People are born with *signs of their personalities, but their personalities develop and change over the years.

* personality	شخصية	* behave	يتصرف	* signs	علامات




Lesson 1
He's very clever إنه ذكى جدًّا




1. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary

nervous (adj.)	متوتر/ عصبى	shy (adj.)	خجول	worried (adj.)	قلِق
clever (adj.)	ذكى	polite (adj.)	مؤدب	messy (adj.)	فوضوى
organized (adj.)	منظم	intelligent (adj.)	ذكى	calm (adj.)	هادئ
personality	شخصية	relaxed (adj.)	مستريح/ هادئ	funny (adj.)	مضحك/ مرح

Extra vocabulary

friendly (adj.)	ودود	a bit	قليلًا/ إلى حد ما	break	فترة الاستراحة (الفسحة)
textbooks	الكتب الدراسية	extra (adj.)	إضافى	copy	نسخة
worksheets	ورق تدريبات	helpful (adj.)	متعاون	quiet (adj.)	هادئ
carefully	بحرص	correctly	بشكل صحيح	respect	احترام
tidy (adj.)	مرتب	careful (adj.)	حريص	bedroom floor	أرضية حجرة النوم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظـمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
worry	يقلق	worried	share	يتشارك	shared

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
show	يعرض	showed	meet	يقابل	met

Expressions and Phrases

look worried	يبدو قلقًا	a bit nervous	متوتر قليلًا
get to know	يتعرف على	take you around	يأخذك فى جولة بأنحاء المكان
at break	أثناء الفسحة	welcome to ...	مرحبًا بك فى ...
I'm not sure.	لست متأكدًا.	a copy of	نسخة من
come on	تعال/ هيا	school work	الواجب المدرسى
show respect	يُظهر الاحترام	make friends	يكوِّن أصدقاء
take turns	يتبادل الأدوار	look like	يشبه / يبدو

Definitions

friendly	nice to others, helpful	لطيف مع الآخرين، متعاون
shy	worried about talking to people, quiet	قلق من التحدث إلى الناس، هادئ
clever	intelligent, good at school work	ذكى، جيد فى العمل المدرسى
polite	speaks carefully and correctly, shows respect	يتحدث بحرص وبشكل صحيح، يظهر الاحترام
messy	not tidy or organized	غير مرتب أو منظم
organized	tidy, careful	مرتب، حريص
nervous	not calm, worried	غير هادئ، قلق

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Hazem is new at school and feels a bit nervous.
حازم جديد فى المدرسة ويشعر بالتوتر قليلًا.
* Asser is friendly and helps Hazem get to know the school.
آسر ودود ويساعد حازم فى التعرف على المدرسة.
* Basel is clever and helps Hazem with his homework.
باسل ذكى ويساعد حازم فى واجباته المدرسية.
* Hazem is a bit messy and doesn't know the books he already has.
حازم فوضوى بعض الشىء ولا يعرف الكتب التى لديه بالفعل.
* Basel is organized and shares his books with Hazem.
باسل منظم ويشارك كتبه مع حازم.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 Salma is nice to others. She's (calm – friendly – shy – sad).

2 I'm (shy – messy – clever – nice). I worry about talking to people.

3 The living room is very (messy – polite – nervous – shy).

4 He always shows respect to his grandmother. He's very (bad – excited – calm – polite).

5 I play in the playground at (break – classroom – hospital – station).

6 Come (away – for – on – by), Ola. I'll show you where the library is.



2. Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



How does Hazem feel today? Why? كيف يشعر حازم اليوم؟ لماذا؟



Asser

Hi, Hazem! I'm Asser. You look worried. Is everything OK?

مرحبًا حازم! أنا آسر. تبدو قلقًا. هل كل شيء بخير؟



Hazem

Hi, Asser! It's my first day at school and I feel a bit nervous and shy.

أهلًا، آسر! إنه يومى الأول فى المدرسة وأشعر ببعض التوتر والخجل.



Asser

Don't worry, we are all friendly. I can help you get to know the school.

لا تقلق، جميعنا ودودون للغاية. يمكننى أن أساعدك فى التعرف على المدرسة.



Hazem

Really! Can you?

حقًّا ! أيمكنك ذلك؟



Asser

Sure. I can take you around, show you where your classroom is, and stay with you at break! Let's go meet some of my friends. Look! There's Basel. Hey, Basel!

بالتأكيد. يمكننى أن آخذك فى جولة وأريك مكان فصلك وأبقى معك فى فترة الاستراحة! دعنا نقابل بعضًا من أصدقائى. انظر! إنه باسل. أهلًا، باسل.





Basel

Hi Asser!

أهلًا، آسر!



Asser

Hazem, this is Basel. He's very clever and he's good at math. You can ask him if you need any help with your homework! Basel, this is Hazem. He's starting school here today.

حازم هذا باسل. إنه ذكى جدًّا وجيد فى الرياضيات. يمكنك أن تسأله إذا كنت بحاجة إلى أى مساعدة فى واجبك المنزلى! باسل، هذا حازم. إنه يبدأ الدراسة هنا اليوم.



Basel
Hi, Hazem. Welcome to our school.

أهلًا، حازم. مرحبًا بك فى مدرستنا.



Asser
He's so polite!
إنه مهذب جدًّا!!



Basel
Thanks! Do you have all your books yet, Hazem?
شكرًا! هل لديك كل كتبك بعد يا حازم؟



Hazem
I'm not sure. I have a lot of books in my room at home but I'm a bit messy. I'm not sure which textbooks I already have.
لست متأكدًا. لدى الكثير من الكتب فى غرفتى فى المنزل ولكنى فوضوى بعض الشىء. لست متأكدًا من الكتب المدرسية التى أمتلكها بالفعل.



Basel
We can share my book today. And I have an extra copy of the worksheets ...
يمكننا مشاركة كتابى اليوم. ولدى نسخة إضافية من أوراق التدريبات ...



Hazem
Wow! You're really organized. Thanks, Basel!
رائع! أنت منظم جدًّا. شكرًا باسل!



Asser
Come on, I'll show you where the science classroom is.
تعال، سأريك أين يوجد فصل العلوم.

Language Notes

1 To make suggestions: لتقديم الاقتراحات:

Let's + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ....

e.g. Let's go meet our friends.

2 To introduce people: لتقديم الأشخاص:

This is + اسم الشخص .



e.g. This is Basel.





Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Mazen moved to a new school last ....
a) week b) month c) year d) weekend

2 Mazen was very .... because he didn't know anyone.
a) polite b) kind c) friendly d) shy

3 Malek showed Mazen where the .... were.
a) teachers b) classrooms c) books d) friends

4 Ali helped Mazen with the .... homework.
a) Arabic b) English c) math d) science

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 My sister is tidy and careful. She's very ....
a) calm b) nervous c) messy d) organized

2 Omar is .... He's nice to others and helpful.
a) friendly b) nervous c) shy d) clever

3 She is a .... girl. She is good at school work. الجيزة - إدارة البدرشين التعليمية 2024
a) clever b) shy c) messy d) nervous

4 Salma is never .... She is calm and relaxed. SB
a) polite b) funny c) nervous d) helpful

5 Asser helps new students get to know the school. He is really ....
a) relaxed b) worried c) helpful d) careful

6 I have a lot of books in my room everywhere, I'm a bit ....
a) shy b) messy c) calm d) happy

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

at – messy – personality – organized – helpful

I'm Ola. I live with my family in a big house. Everyone in my family has a different ....(1)............ . I'm very friendly. I'm nice to others and ....(2)............ . My parents are very ....(3)............ and careful. They are tidy. My sister Omnia is very clever. She's intelligent and good ....(4)............ school work.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Omar. I help new students get to know the school and their classrooms. I take them around, and I stay with them at break. I helped a new student yesterday. His name is Ali. He was very nervous and shy because it was his first day at school. I showed him our classroom because we're all friendly. I helped him with the textbooks. I shared my book with him, and I gave him extra copies of the worksheets.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....
a) teachers at school b) helping new students
c) cleaners at school d) school subjects

2 Ali was nervous and .... because it was his first day at school.
a) excited b) tidy c) shy d) calm

3 The underlined word "friendly" is similar to ....
a) excited b) tidy c) shy d) good

B Answer the following questions:

4 How does Omar help new students at his school?

....

5 What did Omar share with Ali?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 nervous – I – shy – feel – and – a bit.

....

2 share – can – today – We – books – my.

....

3 neighbors – Our – and – are – friendly – helpful.

....

4 have – Do – all – you – books – your?

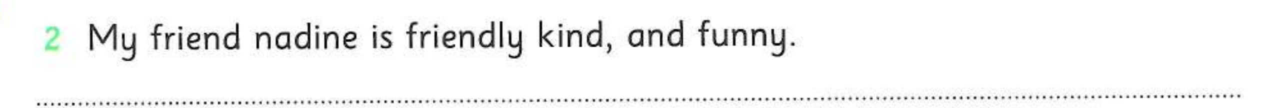
....

6 Punctuate the following:

1 basel is clever and good at math

....

2 My friend nadine is friendly kind, and funny.





Lesson 2





We are proud of our school! نحن فخورون بمدرستنا!



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

building	مبنى	laboratory	معمل	equipment	أدوات
experiments	تجارب (فى المعمل)	court	ملعب	spaceship	سفينة الفضاء

Extra vocabulary

website	موقع إلكترونى	modern (adj.)	حديث	main (adj.)	رئيسى
west (adj.)	غربى	playground	ملعب	playing field	ساحة للعب
benches	مقاعد ثابتة	water fountain	نافورة مياه	desktop computer	كمبيوتر مكتبى
plus	بالإضافة إلى	tablet	حاسوب لوحى (تابلت)	gymnastics	رياضة بدنية
physical education	تربية بدنية	department	قسم	fantasy	خيال
TV series	مسلسل تليفزيونى	planet	كوكب	humans	البشر
alive (adj.)	على قيد الحياة	ostrich	نعامة	pharmacy	صيدلية

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمــة

Present		Past	Present		Past
contact	يتواصل	contacted	borrow	يستعير	borrowed
return	يعود	returned	decide	يقرر	decided

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
sit	يجلس	sat	hide	يختبئ	hid
run	يجرى (يدير)	ran	find	يجد	found

Expressions and Phrases

proud of	فخور بـ	tourist information website	موقع استعلامات سياحى	do experiments	يجرى تجارب
open area	منطقة مفتوحة	run after-school sports clubs	يدير/ يتابع النوادى الرياضية بعد المدرسة	five-a-side football	كرة القدم الخماسية
popular with	معروف لـ	of all age groups	من جميع الفئات العمرية	take place	يحدث
look for	يبحث عن				

Take care!

لاحظ الاختصارات:

IT → information technology تكنولوجيا المعلومات

gym → gymnasium صالة ألعاب رياضية

e.g. El Fouad School أسماء الأماكن المشهورة والاختصارات تبدأ بأحرف كبيرة.



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



Welcome to El Fouad School, a place which we are proud of. We are proud of our new, modern buildings and we are happy to show them to you. Please study the map and find out where the main buildings are, and what we use them for.

مرحبًا بكم فى مدرسة الفؤاد، المكان الذى نفخر به. نحن فخورون بمبانينا الجديدة والحديثة ويسعدنا أن نعرضها لك. برجاء ادرس الخريطة واعرف أماكن المبانى الرئيسية وأغراض استخدامنا لها.

1 The Ahmed Zewail Building



This is the place where students study science. There are four classrooms and two new laboratories. These laboratories have all the equipment which classes need to do experiments.

مبنى أحمد زويل: هذا هو المكان الذى يدرس فيه الطلاب العلوم. هناك أربعة فصول دراسية ومعملان جديدان. تحتوى هذه المعامل على جميع المعدات التى تحتاجها الفصول لإجراء التجارب.

2 The West Court

This is a large open area where students spend time outside. There is a playground and playing field. There are also benches to sit on under the trees and a water fountain. Children can also grow plants with Mr Mahdi. He is the teacher who helps in the garden.

الملعب الغربى: هذه منطقة مفتوحة كبيرة حيث يقضى الطلاب الوقت بالخارج. هناك ملعب وساحة للعب. هناك أيضًا مقاعد للجلوس عليها تحت الأشجار ونافورة مياه. يمكن للأطفال أيضًا زراعة النباتات مع الأستاذ مهدى. إنه المعلم الذى يساعد فى الحديقة.



3 The IT Building



This is the building where you can find our computer classrooms. Students come here for their information technology lessons. We have over 50 desktop computers, plus laptops and tablets which students can borrow.

مبنى تكنولوجيا المعلومات: هذا هو المبنى حيث يمكنك أن تجد فصول الكمبيوتر لدينا. يأتى الطلاب إلى هنا لحصص تكنولوجيا المعلومات الخاصة بهم. لدينا أكثر من 50 جهاز كمبيوتر مكتبيًّا، بالإضافة إلى أجهزة كمبيوتر محمولة وأجهزة لوحية يمكن للطلاب استعارتها.

4 The 2024 Gym



The yellow building is our new gymnasium. We use it for basketball, handball, and gymnastics during physical education lessons. There are some teachers who run after-school sports clubs here too, like five-a-side football (Mr Afifi, math department), and tennis (Mrs Manal, French department).

صالة الألعاب الرياضية 2024: المبنى الأصفر هو صالة الألعاب الرياضية الجديدة. نستخدمه فى كرة السلة وكرة اليد والجمباز خلال دروس التربية البدنية. هناك بعض المعلمين الذين يتولون إدارة النوادى الرياضية بعد المدرسة هنا أيضًا، مثل كرة القدم الخماسية. (الأستاذ عفيفى، قسم الرياضيات) والتنس (الأستاذة منال، قسم اللغة الفرنسية).

Wandaland is a fantasy TV series which is popular with people of all age groups. It's interesting because it takes place in the future on a planet called Wanda. This is a world where humans live because the Earth is now too hot.

«واندالاند» هو مسلسل تليفزيونى خيالى يحظى بشعبية بين الناس من جميع الفئات العمرية. إنه ممتع لأنه يحدث فى المستقبل على كوكب اسمه «واندا». إنه عالم حيثما يعيش الناس لأن كوكب الأرض أصبح الآن حارًّا جدًّا.

The series tells the story of a boy called Frey who wants to return to Earth to look for his family. Frey is a clever, quiet boy who finds life on Wanda boring. He doesn't have many friends but he thinks perhaps his family is still alive, so he decides to hide on a spaceship which is traveling to Earth.

المسلسل يحكى قصة ولد يسمى «فرى» وهو يريد أن يعود إلى الأرض ليبحث عن عائلته. «فرى» ولد ذكى وهادئ وجد حياته على كوكب «واندا» مملة. لا يملك أصدقاء كثيرين. ولكنه يعتقد أنه من المحتمل أن تكون عائلته على قيد الحياة، ولذلك قرر أن يختبئ على متن المركبة الفضائية المتجهة إلى الأرض.

The problem is he doesn't really know where his parents are and he might not find them. I'm excited to see what happens next!

المشكلة أنه لا يعلم حقًّا أين والداه، ومن المحتمل ألا يجدهما. أنا متشوق لأرى ما سيحدث فيما بعد!

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1. We use the (gymnasium – laboratories – library – classroom) for basketball and handball.
2. We do (sports – housework – homework – experiments) at the laboratories.
3. There is a water (equipment – series – fountain – field) in front of my house.



B Language Focus

Relative pronouns ضمائر الوصل

We use relative pronouns "who, which, and where" to give more information about a particular singular or plural person, thing, or place.

نستخدم ضمائر الوصل لإعطاء مزيد من المعلومات حول شخص، شيء، أو مكان (معين) مفرد أو جمع.

who



We use "who" to talk about people. نستخدم للتحدث عن الأشخاص.



e.g. Mr Afifi is the teacher who runs the football club.

which



We use "which" to talk about things. نستخدم للتحدث عن الأشياء.

e.g. These are the shoes which I wear to school.

where



We use "where" to talk about places. نستخدم للتحدث عن الأماكن.



e.g. The gym is a place where we do physical education.



١- لا تكرر الاسم في الجملة بعد استخدام ضمير الوصل.

e.g. This is Mrs Mona. Mrs Mona teaches us English.
=
This is Mrs Mona who teaches us English.

٢- تحل ضمائر الوصل محل الأسماء المفردة والجمع:

e.g. The book which I read was interesting.
These are the books which I read yesterday.



Check

Choose the correct answer:

1. My sister is the girl (where – which – when – who) won the race.
2. This is the beach (where – which – when – who) we spend the summer.
3. This dog is the animal (where – which – when – who) I bought last week.
4. Ali is the boy (when – which – who – where) is wearing a red shirt.
5. Mona's toy is the toy (who – which – when – where) makes a loud noise.
6. This is the house (where – which – when – who) my grandma lives.
7. Mr Ahmed is the teacher (what – who – when – which) wears glasses.
8. My uncle planted the tree (where – when – which – who) grows apples.
9. My friend Omar lives in the same street (where – who – when – which) I live.
10. My uncle is the man (where – who – when – which) sells flowers.

-ed adjectives

We use "-ed" adjectives to describe how a person feels.

نستخدم الصفات التى تنتهى بـ ed- لوصف كيف يشعر الشخص.





He is bored.

Word	Example	Word	Example
excited متحمس	Adel feels excited today.	tired مرهَق	Habiba looks tired.
interested مهتم	Nader is interested in history.	surprised متفاجئ	She was surprised to see me.

-ing adjectives

We use "-ing" adjectives to describe people, places, or things that give us feelings.

نستخدم الصفات التى تنتهى بـ ing- لوصف الأشخاص، الأماكن، أو الأشياء التى تسبب لنا المشاعر.

e.g.



The TV series is really interesting.

Word	Example	Word	Example
exciting مثير	It was exciting to finally meet.	tiring متعِب	It was a tiring trip.
surprising مفاجئ	They prepared for a surprising party.	boring ممل	What a boring movie!

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 The scary movie made me feel (scared – scare – scaring – scares).
2 I was (amuse – amused – amuses – amusing) when I was watching the funny clown.
3 Sitting on the beach was (relax – relaxing – relaxes – relaxed).
4 Nour was (excite – excited – exciting – excites) to buy a new pet.
5 I didn't plan for the trip. It was (surprising – surprised – surprise – surprises).
6 The warm bed made Mona feel (relaxes – relax – relaxing – relaxed).
7 It's (tire – tiring – tired – tires) to climb up a mountain.
8 Habiba never watches cartoons. They make her feel (bore – bores – boring – bored).
9 It was (annoy – annoys – annoyed – annoying) to listen to such loud music all night.
10 I was (excite – excites – exciting – excited) to go on a rollercoaster in the theme park.

Practice

Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Students play sports in the ....
a) playground b) laboratory c) fountain d) department

2 Scientists use special .... in their research.
a) maps b) equipment c) desktops d) courts

3 We sit on the .... when we go to the park.
a) trees b) desks c) benches d) gym

4 I exercise in the .... near my house.
a) department b) lake c) gymnasium d) website

5 We do science experiments in the .... الجيزة - إدارة جنوب الجيزة التعليمية 2024
a) playground b) kitchen c) gymnasium d) laboratory

6 My school has a water .... القاهرة - إدارة السلام التعليمية 2024
a) mountain b) fountain c) dry d) yard

7 The IT building is for .... lessons.
a) physical education b) information technology
c) gymnastics d) science

8 Scientists can travel to other planets in a ....
a) spaceship b) ship c) boat d) felucca

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

popular – gymnastics – buildings – tablets – experiments

This is my school. We have some new ....(1)............ at our school. Science laboratories are where we use all the equipment to do ....(2)............ . We take information technology lessons in the new IT building. There are over thirty desktop computers, laptops, and ....(3)............ which we can borrow too. We use the gymnasium building for basketball, handball, and ....(4)............ .

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 do – laboratory – in – We – experiments – the. بورسعيد - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية 2024

....

2 The yellow – is – gymnasium – our – building – new.

....

3 where – This – have – is – break – the place – students.

....

4 night – really – was – last – I – tired.

....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. This is the shirt .... (who) I bought last week.
2. A pharmacy is a shop .... (which) you can buy medicine. SB
3. Laila is the tall girl .... (which) has red hair. SB
4. This is the bus .... (where) I take to work.
5. This is the nurse .... (where) looks after me.
6. Wandaland is a fantasy TV series .... (who) is popular with many people. الإسكندرية – إدارة المنتزه أول التعليمية 2024
7. We have laptops and tablets .... (where) students can borrow. SB
8. Mr Mahdi is the teacher .... (which) helps in the garden.
9. This is a large open area .... (which) students have break. SB
10. The story is .... (amazed). I like it.
11. The film was very .... (bored). I didn't like it. القاهرة – إدارة روض الفرج التعليمية 2024
12. I'm .... (surprising) to see my cousins here.
13. I'm .... (exciting) about our vacation this week. المنوفية – إدارة أشمون التعليمية 2024
14. I'm very .... (interesting) in math.
15. Wandaland is an .... (excited) TV series.

5 Punctuate the following:

1. i'm really interested in science

....

2. mr Afifi is the teacher who runs the football club

....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 308

"My school"

How many laboratories?	two laboratories
What do you play at the gymnasium?	basketball and handball
Why do students go to the IT building?	come for information technology lessons

....

....

....

....

....



Lesson 3





Story



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

hare	أرنب برى	scared (adj.)	خائف	stomach	معدة
voice	صوت (بشرى)	forest	غابة	lake	بحيرة

Extra vocabulary

sunny (adj.)	مشمس	grass	عشب	suddenly	فجأة
loud (adj.)	صاخب/ عال	noise	إزعاج/ ضجيج	surprised (adj.)	مندهش
favorite (adj.)	مفضل	clever (adj.)	ذكى	interested (adj.)	مهتم
delicious (adj.)	لذيذ	both	كلاهما	the biggest (adj.)	الأكبر
the strongest (adj.)	الأقوى	the bravest (adj.)	الأشجع	mice	فئران
afraid (adj.)	خائف	sorry (adj.)	آسف	finally	أخيرًا

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمة

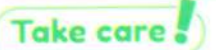
Present		Past	Present		Past
remember	يتذكر	remembered	shout	يصرخ	shouted
move	يتحرك	moved	laugh	يضحك	laughed

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
lie	يرقد	lay	speak	يتحدث	spoke
come	يأتى	came	tell	يخبر	told

Expressions and Phrases

run back home	يعود مسرعًا للمنزل	get to	يصل إلى
come in	يدخل	Stay where you are!	ابق حيث أنت!
look at each other	ينظر بعضهم إلى بعض	run out	يجرى إلى الخارج
for as everybody knows	كما يعلم الجميع	afraid of	خائف من
run away	يهرب	ask for help	يطلب المساعدة



- يمكن كتابة أسماء الحيوانات بحروف كبيرة إذا كانت تعامل على أنها اسم لشخصية وليس نوعًا:

e.g. - There is a hare in my house. (حيوان)
- Something is moving inside Hare's house. (اسم الشخصية)



Hare gets scared الأرنبة البرية تصاب بالخوف



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The beginning



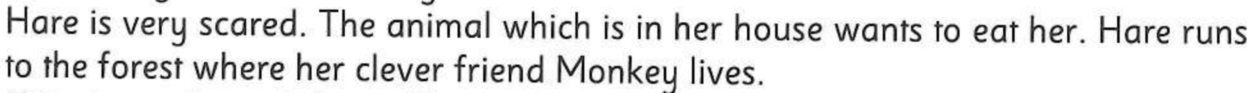
1 It's a sunny day, and Hare lies in the grass. Suddenly, her stomach makes a loud noise. Hare remembers the carrots in her kitchen. She's hungry!

إنـه يـوم مشـمس، والأرنبـة البريـة ترقـد علـى العشـب. فجـأة، تصـدر معدتهـا ضوضـاء عاليـة. تتذكـر الأرنبـة الجـزر الموجـود فـى مطبخهـا. هـى جائعـة!

The middle



2 Hare runs back home. But when she gets to her door, she stops. What is that noise? Something is moving inside Hare's house! "Is somebody there?" asks Hare. "Stay where you are!" says a loud voice.
Hare is very surprised. Who is in her house? Then the voice speaks again. "Hare, don't come in. If you come in, I'll eat you. Hares are my favorite food."



Hare is very scared. The animal which is in her house wants to eat her. Hare runs to the forest where her clever friend Monkey lives.
"Monkey, please help me!" says Hare. "There's an animal in my house, and it wants to eat me!"
Monkey looks interested. "An animal? Let's go and see," Monkey says.
They go back to Hare's house. "Who's in there?" shouts Monkey.
A voice answers, "Monkey, don't come in. I'll eat you if you come in. Hares are my favorite food, but monkeys are also delicious."

الأرنبـة البريـة تركـض للمنـزل، ولكـن عندمـا تصـل إلـى بابهـا، تتوقـف. مـا هـذه الضوضـاء؟ شـىء مـا يتحـرك داخـل منـزل الأرنبـة البريـة!
«هـل يوجـد أحـد هنـاك؟» تسـأل الأرنبـة البريـة.
«ابق حيث أنت!» يقول صوت عالٍ.
الأرنبـة البريـة متفاجئـة جـدًا. مَـنْ فـى منزلهـا؟ ثـم يتحـدث الصـوت مـرة أخـرى. «الأرنبـة البريـة، لا تدخلـى. إذا دخلـتِ فسـآكلك. الأرانـب البريـة طعامـى المفضـل».
الأرنبـة البريـة خائفـة جـدًا. الحيـوان الـذى فـى منزلهـا يريـد أن يأكلهـا. الأرنبـة البرية تركض إلـى الغابة حيـث تعيـش صديقتها القـردة الذكية.
«قردة، ساعدينى أرجوك!» تقول الأرنبة البرية: «يوجد حيوان بمنزلى، ويريد أن يأكلنى!».
القردة تبدو مهتمة. «حيوان؟ هيا بنا نذهب ونرى» تقول القردة.
يعودون إلى منزل الأرنبة البرية. «من بالداخل؟» تصرخ القردة.
يجيب صوت، «قردة، لا تأتى. سآكلك إذا أتيت. الأرانب البرية طعامى المفضل، ولكن القرود أيضًا لذيذة».

Monkey and Hare look at each other. They are both very scared. They run to the lake where their friend Elephant lives. "There's an animal which eats hares and monkeys in Hare's house," they tell Elephant. "We need your help!"
"Don't worry!" says Elephant. "I'm coming! I'm the biggest, strongest, bravest animal in the world. Nobody can eat me!"



Elephant goes to Hare's door. "I'm coming in!" he shouts.
"Stop!" says the animal inside. "I'm hungry and I love to eat ..."
"You can't eat me!" shouts Elephant. "I'm the biggest, the strongest ..."

القردة والأرنبة البرية تنظران إلى بعضهما. كلتاهما خائفة جدًّا. تركضان إلى البحيرة حيث يعيش صديقهما الفيل. «هناك حيوان يأكل الأرانب البرية والقردة في منزل الأرنبة البرية»، تخبران الفيل. «نحن نحتاج مساعدتك!».
«لا تقلقا!» يقول الفيل. «أنا قادم! أنا الحيوان الأكبر والأقوى والأشجع في العالم. لا أحد يستطيع أن يأكلني!».
الفيل يذهب إلى باب الأرنبة البرية. «أنا قادم!» وهو يصرخ.
«توقف!» يقول الحيوان بالداخل. «أنا جائع وأحب أن آكل ...».
«لا تستطيع أن تأكلني!» يصرخ الفيل. «أنا الأكبر، الأقوى ...».

The end

3 Suddenly, Hare's door opens, and a small mouse runs out. Elephant jumps high in the air! He's very scared. For as everybody knows, elephants are afraid of mice! "Help! A mouse! A mouse!" cries Elephant and he quickly runs away.
Mouse looks at Hare and Monkey. "I'm sorry," she says. "Are you angry?"
Hare and Monkey start to laugh. "No, we're not angry," they say. "What scares you might be much smaller than you!"
They all laugh again. Then Hare goes inside to finally eat her carrots.

فجأة، يفتح باب الأرنبة البرية، ويركض فأر صغير للخارج. الفيل يقفز عاليًا في الهواء! هو خائف جدًّا. فكما يعرف الجميع، الفيلة تخاف من الفئران!
«ساعدوني! فأر! فأر!». يصرخ الفيل وهو يهرب بسرعة.
تنظر الفأرة إلى الأرنبة البرية والقردة. تقول «أنا آسفة، هل أنتم غاضبون؟».
تبدأ الأرنبة البرية والقردة في الضحك. تقولان: «لا، لسنا غاضبتين،» «"ما يخيفك قد يكون أصغر منك بكثير!».
يضحك الجميع مرة أخرى. ثم تذهب الأرنبة البرية إلى الداخل لتأكل جزرها أخيرًا.

The moral of the story

What scares you might be much smaller than you!

ما يخيفك قد يكون أصغر منك بكثير!

Check

1 Who is in Hare's house? ....

2 Why was Hare scared?  ....

Tip! **When characters speak in stories, we show it with punctuation called quotation marks:**

عندما تتحدث الشخصيات في القصص، نعرض ما يقولون بعلامات ترقيم تسمى علامات التنصيص:

e.g. "Hares are my favorite food." "Don't worry!"

We put quotation marks before and after the sentence. نضع علامات التنصيص قبل وبعد الجملة.

e.g. "Is somebody there?" asked Monkey.

We use verbs like say, shout, and ask to say who is speaking.

نستخدم أفعالًا مثل: يقول، يصرخ، ويسأل لنذكر من يتحدث.

e.g. "No, we are not angry," said Hare and Monkey.



Pronunciation

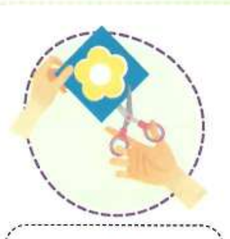




3. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

/ʌ/



cut

يقص (يقطع)



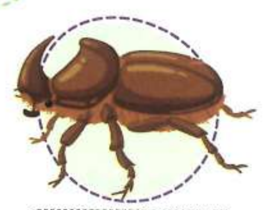
truck

عربة نقل



hut

كوخ



bug

حشرة





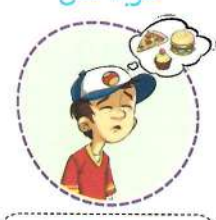
stuck

عالق



uncle

عم/خال



hungry

جائع



stomach

معدة



funny

مضحك



come

تعال



nuts

مكسرات



duck

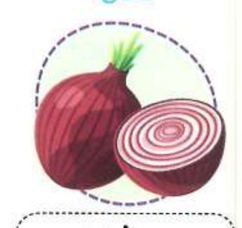
بطة

honey

عسل

brush

فرشاة



onion

بصلة

/æ/



cat

قطة



track

مسار/ طريق



hat

قبعة



bag

حقيبة



stack

رصة/ كومة



ankle

كاحل



animal

حيوان



angry

غاضب





happy

سعيد



Harry

ولد اسمه هارى





Estimating numbers تقدير الأرقام



4. Look, read, and notice: انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

When we don't need to calculate exactly, we estimate an approximate number. We can round decimal numbers up or down to the nearest whole number:

عندما لا نحتاج أن نحسب بدقة، فإننا نقدر رقمًا تقريبيًّا. يمكننا تقريب الأعداد العشرية لأعلى أو أقل لأقرب رقم كامل:

1.88 → 2.00   3.12 → 3.00

e.g. Hatem's classroom wall needs painting. The class calculate how much paint they need to paint the wall. They measure the wall and write down the measurements. Then they look on the internet to see how many cans of paint they need.

جدار فصل حاتم يحتاج للدهان. يقوم الفصل بحساب كمية الطلاء التي يحتاجونها لدهان الجدران. يقيسون الجدران ويكتبون القياسات. ثم يبحثون على الإنترنت لمعرفة عدد علب الطلاء التي يحتاجونها.





Classroom wall measurements قياسات جدران الفصل

Wall = h 2.66 m × w 7.95 m

The answer:

To estimate how much paint they need, the students round their measurements up to the nearest whole number, then multiply them to estimate the area to paint:

لتقدير كمية الطلاء التي يحتاجونها، يقوم الطلاب بتقريب قياساتهم إلى أقرب عدد صحيح، ثم يضربونها لتقدير المساحة التي يريدون طلاءها:

2.66 → (3.00) X 7.95 → (8.00) = $24\ m^2$





Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 I love .... stories.

a) writing b) reading c) making d) buying

2 My favorite story is "Hare gets .... ".

a) happy b) noisy c) loud d) scared

3 Hare is hungry and goes to her home to eat her ....

a) bananas b) apples c) carrots d) tomatoes

4 At the end, they find .... inside the house.

a) Mouse b) Hare c) Monkey d) Elephant

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Ali was very ...., so he ate an apple.

a) nervous b) angry c) worried d) hungry

2 There's someone here, I can hear his ....

المنوفية - إدارة أشمون 2024

a) voice b) clothes c) books d) face

3 My uncle drives a white .... every day.

a) truck b) track c) duck d) stack

4 My sister is afraid .... the darkness.

a) next b) by c) of d) on

5 The duck is .... in the hole. It can't get out.

a) stack b) stuck c) cut d) some

6 When you have a problem, you can ask .... help.

a) about b) after c) for d) at

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

cat – stack – hungry – ankle – track

I like to go for a walk and run every day. Yesterday, I went for a walk and ran on the ....(1)............ . I saw a very cute ....(2)............ . The cat's ....(3)............ was hurt, and it was very ....(4)............ too. The cat was standing next to a big, red truck. We took it to the vet.



4 Read the text and answer the questions:

It's a sunny day, and Hare is hungry! When <u>she</u> gets to her door, she hears a voice. Hare is very scared. The animal in her house tells her not to come in because he will eat her. She asks Monkey to help her. Monkey looks interested. The animal in Hare's house tells Monkey not to come in because he will eat her. Monkey and Hare are both very scared. They ask Elephant to help them. Elephant goes to Hare's door. Suddenly, Hare's door opens, and Mouse runs out. Elephant jumps high in the air! They all laugh.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The underlined pronoun "<u>she</u>" refers to ....

a) Mouse b) Hare c) Monkey d) Elephant

2 Monkey and Hare are both very ....

a) happy b) hungry c) scared d) sad

3 .... was inside the house.

a) Mouse b) Hare c) Monkey d) Elephant

B Answer the following questions:

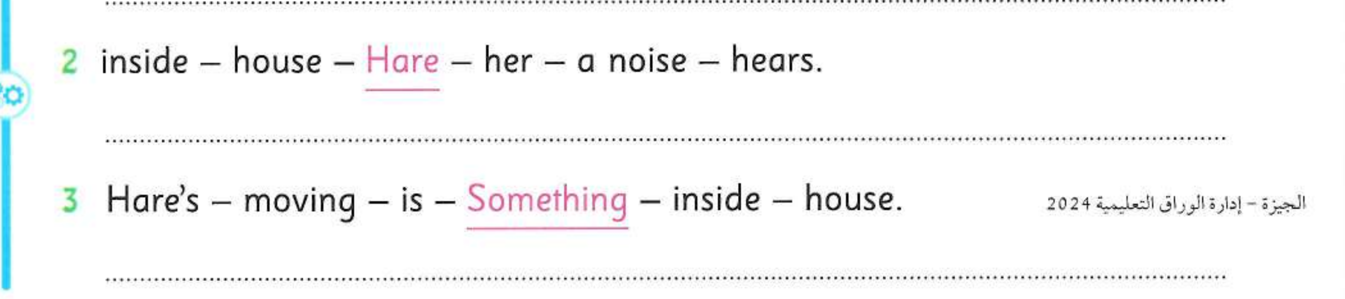
4 Who helped Hare when she asked? ....

5 Why did they all laugh? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 eat – if – <u>I'll</u> – you – come in – you.

....



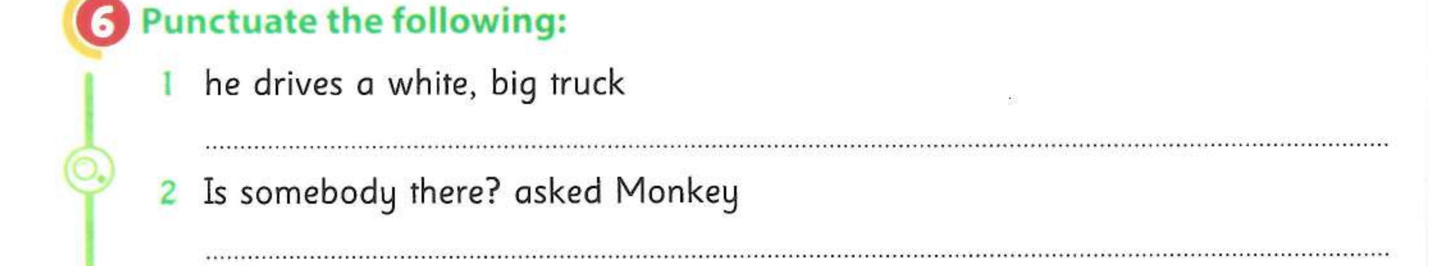
2 inside – house – <u>Hare</u> – her – a noise – hears.

....

3 Hare's – moving – is – <u>Something</u> – inside – house.

....

6 Punctuate the following:



1 he drives a white, big truck

....

2 Is somebody there? asked Monkey

....



Lessons 4 & 5

Writing & Project



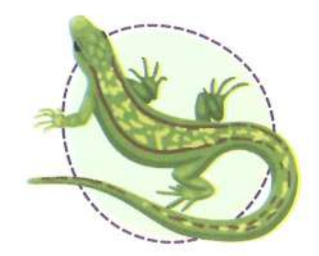


1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:

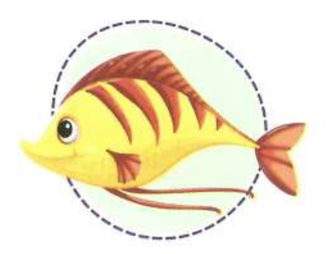




Main vocabulary











lizard	bird	fish	cat
سحلية	طائر	سمكة	قطة

Extra vocabulary

pet	حيوان أليف	positive (adj.)	إيجابى	negative (adj.)	سلبى
calm (adj.)	هادئ	clean (adj.)	نظيف	independent (adj.)	مستقل
soft (adj.)	ناعم	fur	فرو	sharp (adj.)	حاد
claws	مخالب	scared (adj.)	خائف	well-being	راحة/ سعادة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمــة

Present		Past	Present		Past
touch	يلمس	touched	pet	يلاعب	petted
use	يستخدم	used	include	يتضمن	included

Expressions and Phrases

has to	يضطر أن	keep as a pet	يحتفظ به كحيوان أليف
nice to touch	لطيف للمس	for a walk	للتمشية
It is true that	إنه صحيح أن	good for	جيد لـ
It's difficult to	من الصعب أن	far from	بعيد عن
take a lot of time	يستغرق وقتًا طويلًا	find their way around	يجدون طريقهم

Important sentences جمل هامة

* I think cats make the best pets. — أعتقد أن القطط هى أفضل الحيوانات الأليفة.
* Cats have soft fur which is nice to touch. — القطط لها فراء ناعم لطيف الملمس.
* Cats are clean and calm. — القطط نظيفة وهادئة.
* Cats are independent. — القطط مستقلة.
* Cats have sharp claws and teeth. — القطط لديها مخالب وأسنان حادة.

2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Cats Are the Best Pets القطط هى أفضل الحيوانات الأليفة

Cats are my favorite animals and I think they make the best pets. They are beautiful with soft fur which is nice to touch. They are clean and calm animals which are usually friendly. They like people but they are independent, so you don't need to take them for a walk every day. It is true that cats have sharp claws and teeth, but they only use them when they are scared. People also say that when you pet a cat, it makes you happy, so they are good for your well-being, too.



القطط هى حيواناتى المفضلة وأعتقد أنها أفضل حيوان أليف. إنها جميلة بفراء ناعمة جميلة الملمس. هى حيوانات نظيفة وهادئة وعادة ما تكون ودودة. إنها تحب الناس ولكنها مستقلة، لذلك لست بحاجة لأخذها للتمشية كل يوم. صحيح أن القطط لديها مخالب وأسنان حادة، لكنها تستخدمها فقط عندما تكون خائفة. يقول الناس أيضًا إنه عندما تدلل قطة، تجعلك سعيدًا، لذا فهى جيدة لرفاهيتك أيضًا.

Cats as pets: القطط كحيوانات أليفة:

Positives إيجابيات	calm and clean	usually friendly	independent	have soft fur	beautiful	petting a cat makes you happy
Negatives سلبيات	have sharp teeth and claws					

Language Focus

You can use but to join two contrasting ideas in a sentence. For example, you can mention a negative point, then use but to explain why it's not really a problem.

يمكنك استخدام "but" لربط فكرتين متناقضتين فى جملة. على سبيل المثال، يمكنك ذكر نقطة سلبية، ثم استخدام "but" لشرح لماذا لا تمثل مشكلة حقًا.

e.g. I like most types of fruit, but I don't like mangoes.
It is true that cats have sharp claws and teeth, but they only use them when they are scared.

Check

Join these phrases to make single sentences. Use "but":

1 I want to watch TV. My brother wants to play football.

....

2 Lizards make good pets. It's difficult to find food for them. 

....

3 Five-a-side football is an exciting sport. It takes a lot of time to practice it. 

....







• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 .... cats makes me happy.
a) Drawing b) Petting c) Studying d) Sleeping

2 Cats are my best .... المنيا - إدارة بنى مزار التعليمية 2024
a) fruit b) pets c) plants d) vegetables

3 Cats are .... animals, so you don't need to take them for a walk.
a) independent b) bad c) hungry d) scared

4 Cats have beautiful, ... fur.
a) soft b) hard c) bad d) ugly

5 You don't need to take cats for a .... every day.
a) swim b) run c) food d) walk

6 Cats are good for your ....
a) well-being b) riding c) studying d) eating

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

I'm Adam. I have a cat. Cats are my favorite animals. I love cats because they make me feel happy, and I think they are the best pets. My cat has soft fur, which is nice to touch. My cat is very clean, calm, and friendly. I don't need to take it for a walk every day. My cat has very sharp claws and teeth, but it only uses them when it's <u>scared</u>. My cat is very beautiful and very cute. They are good for your well-being, too.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about a pet ....
a) fish b) lizard c) cat d) bird

2 The underlined word "<u>scared</u>" means ....
a) excited b) happy c) sad d) afraid

3 My cat has soft fur, which is nice to ....
a) eat b) cut c) touch d) taste

B Answer the following questions:

4 Why does Adam think cats are the best pets? ....

5 What negative points did Adam say about cats? ....

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 to touch – The – nice – cat's – is – fur.

....

2 animals – Cats – calm – are – and – clean.

....

3 for – It's – lizards – food – difficult – to find.

....

4 sharp – teeth – Cats – have – claws – and.

....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 Cats like people, ... (so) they are independent.
2 My new school is great, ... (because) it's far from my house. SB
3 My job is tiring, ... (so) I like it.
4 We ordered a pink dress, ... (and) we received a red dress.
5 She told him a joke, ... (or) he didn't laugh.
6 The food was expensive, ... (and) it wasn't good.

5 Punctuate the following:

1 you don t need to take cats for a walk every day.

....

2 what is your favorite pet

....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 308

"My favorite pet"

What's your favorite pet?
Why is it your favorite pet?
What do you do with your pet?

....

....

....

....

Unit 2 REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التى وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

shy	خجول	calm	هادئ
polite	مؤدب	clever	ذكى
messy	فوضوى	organized	منظم
nervous	متوتر/ عصبى	worried	قلقان
intelligent	ذكى	personality	شخصية
relaxed	مستريح/ هادئ	funny	مضحك/ مرح
textbook	كتاب مدرسى	friendly	ودود

Lesson (2)

laboratory	معمل	equipment	أدوات
experiments	تجارب (فى المعمل)	IT (information technology)	تكنولوجيا المعلومات
building	مبنى	gym (gymnasium)	صالة ألعاب رياضية
physical education	تربية بدنية	spaceship	سفينة فضاء
desktop computer	كمبيوتر مكتبى	tourist information website	موقع استعلامات سياحى
water fountain	نافورة مياه	gymnastics	رياضة بدنية
benches	مقاعد ثابتة	department	قسم

Lesson (3)

hare	أرنب برى	stomach	المعدة
forest	الغابة	lake	بحيرة
delicious	شهى/ لذيذ	voice	صوت (بشرى)
scared	خائف	the bravest	الأشجع
truck	شاحنة	track	مسار/ طريق
stuck	عالق	stack	كومة
nuts	مكسرات	hut	كوخ

Lessons (4 & 5)

lizard	سحلية	bird	طائر
pet	حيوان أليف	positive	إيجابى
negative	سلبى	calm	هادئ
clean	نظيف	independent	مستقل
fur	فرو	well-being	سعادة/ راحة
sharp	حاد	claws	مخالب

Language Focus

Relative pronouns

who

We use "who" to talk about people.

e.g. Mr Afifi is the teacher who runs the football club.

which

We use "which" to talk about things.

e.g. These are the shoes which I wear to school.

where

We use "where" to talk about places.

e.g. The gym is a place where we do physical education.

-ed adjectives

We use "-ed" adjectives to describe how a person feels.

excited — interested — surprised — bored — tired

e.g. Adel feels excited today.

-ing adjectives

We use "-ing" adjectives to describe people, places, or things that give us feelings.

exciting — interesting — surprising — boring — tiring

e.g. It was exciting to finally meet.





تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

مهذب	....	ودود	....
فوضوى	....	خجول	....
منظم	....	هادئ	....
متوتر	....	ذكى	....

Lesson 2

موقع إلكترونى	....	مبنى	....
ملعب	....	صالة ألعاب رياضية	....
معامل	....	خريطة	....
تجارب	....	أدوات	....
مقاعد	....	نافورة	....
التربية الرياضية	....	رياضة بدنية	....

Lesson 3

أرنب برى	....	معدة	....
غابة	....	بحيرة	....
عشب	....	خائف	....
الأشجع	....	فئران	....
عسل	....	يقص/ يقطع	....
فرشاة	....	عربة نقل	....
بصلة	....	مكسرات	....
معدة	....	عالق	....
سعيد	....	طريق/ مسار	....

Lessons 4 & 5

إيجابى	....	حيوان أليف	....
سحلية	....	سلبى	....
حاد	....	مستقبل	....
خائف	....	راحة/ سعادة	....
فرو	....	مخالب	....

WRITING TIME



تجميعة لأهم موضوعات الوحدة

لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about helping new students at school:

- My name is + اسمك and I often help new students.
- New students often feel + شعور الطلاب الجدد because + السبب.
- I help them + طريقة المساعدة.

Helping new students at school

My name is Yara and I often help new students at school. New students often feel nervous and shy because it's their first day at school. I help them get to know the new school. I sometimes stay with them at break, too. When they don't have their textbooks, I share my books with them.

How to write about a place which you are proud of:

- Welcome to (اسم المكان), a place which we are proud of.
- (اسم المبنى) is (وصف المكان) .... .
- (اسم مبنى آخر) is (وصف المكان) .... .
- We use it for (استخدامات المكان) .... .

A palce I am proud of

Welcome to El Fouad School, a place which we are proud of. The Ahmed Zewail Building is the place where students study science. The West Court is a large open area where students spend time outside. The 2024 Gym is our new gymnasium. We use it for basketball, handball, and gymnastics during physical education lessons.

How to write about your favorite pet:

- I like (اسم الحيوان).
- I think + (صفة مميزة لهذا الحيوان).
- They are (صفة أخرى مميزة لهذا الحيوان) .... .
- They are (صفة سلبية لهذا الحيوان) .... .
- People say that + (رأى الناس بخصوص الحيوان) .... .

"My favorite pet"

I like cats. They're my favorite animals. I think they make the best pets. They are beautiful with soft fur. They are clean and calm. They're also independent. I don't have to take it for a walk every day. Cats have sharp claws and teeth, but they only use them when they are scared. People say that when you pet a cat, it makes you happy.



STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التى وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Match the words to their meanings:

1 friendly	a. not tidy or organized
2 shy	b. nice to others, helpful
3 clever	c. tidy, careful
4 polite	d. intelligent, good at school work
5 messy	e. not calm, worried
6 organized	f. worried about talking to people, quiet
7 nervous	g. speaks carefully and correctly, shows respect

2 Complete the sentences with who, which, or where:

1 Dalia is the girl .... sits next to me in the English class.

2 An ostrich is a big bird .... can't fly.

3 This is the street .... my uncle lives.

4 I really love the red flowers .... grow in our garden.

5 The supermarket is the place .... we buy food.

3 Choose the correct adjective to complete the sentence:

1 Hi Fareeda, I'm (surprised – surprising) to see you!

2 The children feel (bored – boring) when there is nothing to do.

3 His birthday party was (excited – exciting). It was a lot of fun.

4 I'm really (interested – interesting) in Ancient Egypt.

5 I was really (tired – tiring) last night. I finished my homework late.

6 The results of the students' last test are (surprised – surprising).

Test Yourself 30 — UNIT 2





Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (6)

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1. Ola has a .... cat.
   a) desert b) wild c) pet d) forest
2. Cats are clean and .... animals.
   a) noisy b) loud c) naughty d) calm
3. Cats are .... animals, so you don't need to take them for a walk.
   a) angry b) independent c) friendly d) scared
4. When Ola pets her cat, it makes her feel ....
   a) happy b) sad c) scared d) clean

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (4)

1. Someone who is clever, they are .... and good at school work.
   a) messy b) relaxed c) intelligent d) nervous
2. Mr Hisham .... the after-school sports club.
   a) hides b) runs c) borrows d) worries
3. Cats use their sharp claws and teeth when they are ....
   الدقهلية - إدارة غرب المنصورة التعليمية 2024
   a) happy b) soft c) scared d) independent
4. She goes for a run on the .... every day.
   a) truck b) stack c) cut d) track

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4)

showed – shy – helpful – shared – relaxed

I moved to a new school last month. I was very nervous and ....(1)............ because I didn't know anyone. I met a new friend. His name is Malek. He took me around and ....(2)............ me where my classrooms were. Malek ....(3)............ his textbooks and worksheets with me. He is really helpful. I also met Ali, who is really ....(4)............ . He helped me with my math homework.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (5)

My name is Lama. I'm in grade six. I love my school. My school has many new, modern buildings. There's the Ahmed Zewail Building. This is the place where we study science. There are four classrooms and two laboratories in that building. There is also the West Court. It's a large open area where students can spend time outside. There are also benches to sit on under the trees and a water fountain. We have a new gymnasium, we use it for basketball, handball, and gymnastics during physical education lessons. I always enjoy my day at school.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Lama's school has many .... buildings.
a) ancient b) old c) small d) modern

2 The underlined word "Court" means ....
a) classroom b) house c) park d) playground

3 We use the gymnasium during .... lessons.
a) science b) physical education c) math d) IT

B Answer the following questions:

4 How many laboratories are there in the school? ....

5 Summarize the text in two sentences. ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3)

1 study – This is – where – science – the place – students. ....

2 Salma – tidy – is – organized – or – not. ....

3 tired – My – was – father – yesterday – really. ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2)

1 My sister's birthday is today. She's really .... (exciting).

2 This is the man .... (which) can speak English. القاهرة - إدارة هليوبوليس التعليمية 2024

7 Punctuate the following: (1)

nadine is kind and friendly

....

8 Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

مجاب عنه صفحة 309

"My first day at school"

How did you feel? – Who helped you?

....

....

....

....

Assess your progress

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Unit 2 AL-AZHAR CORNER

تحتوى هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأزهر.

1 Read and circle the odd one out:

1 classroom – playground – laboratory – funny
2 friendly – messy – share – organized
3 help – meet – kind – show
4 white – which – who – where
5 tiring – interesting – excited – amazing

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

I'm Salma. I moved to a new school last month. I was very nervous and shy on the first day at school, but I met Lara. She helped me get to know the school. She took me around the school and showed me where my classrooms were. She also stayed with me at break. She helped me get the books and the worksheets I need. She's a very kind person. Now I feel happy, and I love my new school.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Salma moved to a new .... last month.
a) job b) school c) sport d) hospital

2 Lara .... with Salma at break.
a) stayed b) sang c) taught d) knew

B Answer the following questions:

3 How was Salma on her first day at school? ....
4 How did Lara help Salma? ....
5 How does Salma feel now? ....

3 Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences using the following guiding elements:

"Cats are the best pets"

calm – clean – sharp claws – independent – soft fur

مجاب عنه صفحة 309

....
....
....
....
....

OCTOBER REVISION

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 We usually .... tomatoes, peppers, onions, and lettuce.
a) plant b) make c) play d) read

المنوفية – إدارة أشمون التعليمية 2024

2 I live in a/an .... in the city with my family.
a) tent b) apartment block c) cave d) factory

دمياط – إدارة الروضة التعليمية 2024

3 People who are .... work for no money. بورسعيد – توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية 2024
a) volunteers b) fishermen c) parents d) engineers

4 .... are harmful for plants. We use natural fertilizers instead.
a) Crops b) Soil c) Trees d) Chemicals

5 .... people are people who live in the neighborhood.
a) Foreign b) Unhealthy c) Local d) Strange

6 The community garden helps to clean the .... القليوبية – إدارة قليوب التعليمية 2024
a) air b) room c) table d) school

7 There's a .... near my house, but there aren't any trains using it now. محافظة المنوفية – إدارة الباجور التعليمية 2024
a) minaret b) souk c) palace d) railway line

8 Egyptian food tastes delicious. I really .... our food so much.
a) use b) pass through c) hang out d) miss

9 Cats use their sharp claws and teeth when they are ....
a) happy b) soft c) scared d) independent

الدقهلية – إدارة غرب المنصورة التعليمية 2024

10 When you show respect to other people, they know you're ....
a) polite b) boring c) organized d) worried

11 You can find all the information you need on the school's ....
a) court b) gym c) website d) building

12 The word ".........................." has the same meaning as "tidy".
a) shy b) nervous c) afraid d) organized

القاهرة – إدارة الزيتون التعليمية 2024

13 We have a water .... in the playground of our school.
a) wheel b) tank c) fountain d) bottle

14 Birds and cats are my favorite ....
a) pets b) bets c) bites d) pits

15 A cat can make you happy when you touch its soft ....
a) mouth b) fur c) claw d) teeth

16 The .... is the place where students can study science.
a) playground b) court c) laboratory d) gymnasium

دمياط – إدارة دمياط الجديدة التعليمية 2024

17 Volunteers are people who work .... money. محافظة القاهرة – إدارة الشروق التعليمية 2024
a) with b) without c) of d) in



18 Tom is .... There are lots of books and clothes on his bedroom floor.
محافظة كفر الشيخ - إدارة دسوق التعليمية 2024

a) organized b) calm c) messy d) shy

19 "........................." means worried about talking to people. محافظة الشرقية - إدارة القنايات التعليمية 2024

a) Tidy b) Messy c) Fascinating d) Shy

20 If I forget my book at home, I can .... my friend's book.
محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة غرب المنصورة التعليمية 2024

a) sure b) share c) eat d) help

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

look – wildlife – foreign – local – forests

At Mini Forest, we always work hard to find the best urban locations for our ....(1)............ . We never grow ....(2)............ plants in our projects, we always plant trees that grow naturally in an area. We carefully ....(3)............ after them until they become a small forest. We also usually work with ....(4)............ communities to plant and look after the forests over time.

play – green – apartment – cook – view محافظة الجيزة - إدارة السادس من أكتوبر التعليمية 2024

I live with my family. We live in a big ....(1)............ . It's on the first floor. We have a great ....(2)............ from the balcony. We have ....(3)............ space in our neighborhood. We usually go and ....(4)............ football there.

pet – family – interesting – series – planet

Wandaland is a fantasy TV series which is popular with people of all age groups. It's ....(1)............ because it takes place in the future on a planet called Wanda. This is a ....(2)............ where humans live because the Earth is now too hot. The ....(3)............ tells the story of a boy called Frey who wants to return to Earth to look for his ....(4)............ .

friendly – sharp – fur – scared – walk محافظة القاهرة - إدارة حدائق القبة التعليمية 2024

Cats are my favorite pets. They have soft ....(1)............ which is nice to touch. They are beautiful and clean animals. They are usually ....(2)............ . Cats like people, but they are independent. Cats have ....(3)............ claws and teeth, but they only use them when they are ....(4)............ .

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 goes – zoo – She – to – a year – twice – the. الشرقية - إدارة شرق الزقازيق التعليمية 2024

....

2 always – Dalia – plays – tennis – on the – weekends.

....

3 to touch – The – nice – cat's – is – fur. الدقهلية – إدارة غرب المنصورة التعليمية 2024

....

4 in – rarely – football – They – play – the – park. القاهرة – إدارة السلام التعليمية 2024

....

5 is – where – This – the house – Hana – lives.

....

6 never – They – late – are – school – for. محافظة القاهرة – إدارة الوايلى التعليمية 2024

....

7 do – laboratories – in – We – experiments – the. محافظة بورسعيد – إدارة بورسعيد التعليمية 2024

....

8 great – for – roofs – Green – are – the environment. محافظة بورسعيد – مديرية التربية والتعليم 2024

....

9 The selfish – anything – doesn't – boy – share. محافظة الجيزة – إدارة الهرم التعليمية 2024

....

10 do – the dentist – you – go to – How – often? محافظة الشرقية – إدارة بلبيس التعليمية 2024

....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets:

1 He .... (go) shopping every month. محافظة المنوفية – إدارة أشمون التعليمية 2024

2 My sisters .... (practicing) playing the piano on Fridays.

3 Mr Adel .... (not come) to work late.

4 Mona and Huda .... (doesn't) plays games outside.

5 How .... (many) do you grow tomatoes in your garden?

6 Hamza .... (always) drinks soda. He knows it's unhealthy.

7 They .... (play usually) computer games on Sundays. محافظة القاهرة – إدارة الشروق التعليمية 2024

8 I know a company that organizes trips to Luxor .... (one) a week.

9 Habiba is .... (exciting) to see her old friends. محافظة بورسعيد – توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية 2024

10 I don't want to watch this series. It's really .... (bored).

11 We can sit under the tree .... (who) has long, green branches.

12 The park is a place .... (who) he flies his kite. محافظة الشرقية – إدارة ديرب نجم التعليمية 2024

13 These are the shoes .... (who) I wear to school. محافظة المنوفية – إدارة شبين الكوم التعليمية 2024

14 Mr Ali is the manager .... (which) organizes the event.

15 Let's play "Hide and seek" in the open area .... (who) there's a fountain.

16 Nabil .... (drink) milk every morning. محافظة الشرقية – إدارة منيا القمح التعليمية 2024

17 Is this the house .... (who) your uncle lives? محافظة الجيزة – إدارة منشأة القناطر التعليمية 2024

18 I don't .... (visiting) my friends on Fridays. محافظة دمياط – إدارة الروضة التعليمية 2024

19 I'm .... (exciting) about our vacation this week. محافظة المنوفية – إدارة أشمون التعليمية 2024

20 This is the man .... (which) can speak English. محافظة القاهرة – إدارة هليوبوليس التعليمية 2024

لمزيد من التدريبات ارجع إلى صفحة 252.



Unit 3

Vacation plans

خطط للعطلة

Unit Objectives

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:
  - listen, read, research, and write about making vacation plans.
  - talk about facts using clauses with "if" or "when".
  - talk about when something happens using prepositions of time.
  - read and listen to determine the central message.
  - practice saying the initial consonant sounds /w/ and /v/.
  - write a blog post about a place he/she likes visiting.
  - research and make a brochure about a vacation destination.

- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:
  - يستمع، يقرأ، يبحث ويكتب عن خطط لقضاء العطلة.
  - يتحدث عن الحقائق باستخدام عبارات بها «if» أو «when».
  - يتحدث عن متى يحدث شيء ما باستخدام حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت.
  - يقرأ ويستمع ليحدد الفكرة الأساسية (المغزى).
  - يتدرب على نطق الأصوات الساكنة في بداية الكلمة مثل /w/ و /v/.
  - يكتب مدونة عن مكان يحب زيارته.
  - يبحث ويقوم بعمل كتيب عن وجهة العطلة.

Did you know?

- When you see it from the air, the Nile Valley is in the shape of a fan. In the north, where it opens into the delta, it is wide. In the south, where it passes between *desert cliffs, it is narrow.

Find out!

- If we see Egypt from the air, the Nile Delta and the Nile *Valley are green areas. The *western and *eastern deserts are brown. There are many cities in Egypt like Cairo, Alexandria, Port Said, Aswan, and Luxor.

*desert cliffs	المنحدرات الصحراوية	*Valley	الوادى	*western	الغربية	*eastern	الشرقية



Lesson 1
Let's go quad biking on Tuesday
دعنا نركب الدراجات الرباعية يوم الثلاثاء





1.Listen, point, and say:
استمع، أشر، وقل:



Main vocabulary


explore the souks
يستكشف الأسواق


climb the Bab Zuwayla minaret
يتسلق (يصعد إلى) مئذنة باب زويلة


take photos for the school project
يلتقط صورًا من أجل مشروع مدرسى


go quad biking in the desert
يركب الدراجات الرباعية في الصحراء


ride on a rollercoaster
يركب قطار الملاهى


visit the Manial Palace Museum
يزور متحف قصر المنيل

Extra vocabulary

excited (adj.)	متحمس	vacation	عطلة (إجازة)	places	أماكن
theme park	مدينة الملاهى	outside	بالخارج	interesting (adj.)	شيق/ مثير للاهتمام
Giza	الجيزة	minutes	دقائق	early	مبكرًا
difficult (adj.)	صعب	the view	المنظر	the top	القمة
beautiful (adj.)	جميل	sunset	الغروب	near (adj.)	قريب/بالقرب من



Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (ph) فى كلمة (photo) ينطقان (ف) /f/.
- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (ua) فى كلمة (quad) ينطقان /wa/.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعــال منتظمــة

Present		Past	Present		Past
try	يحاول/ يجرب	tried	watch	يشاهد / يراقب	watched
arrive	يصل	arrived	explore	يستكشف	explored

Irregular verbs أفعــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
go	يذهب	went	take	يأخذ	took
ride	يركب	rode	come	يأتى	came

Expressions and Phrases

Me too!	وأنا أيضًا!	Why don't we ...?	لمَ لا ...؟
look interesting	يبدو مثيرًا للاهتمام	Like what?	مثل ماذا؟
take the bus	يستقل (يركب) الأتوبيس	late afternoon	وقت متأخر من الظهيرة
over the city	فوق المدينة (يغطى المدينة)	come back to	يعود إلى
What else ...?	ماذا أيضًا ...؟	here we come	إننا قادمون

Important sentences جمل هامة

* There are many activities to do in Cairo. هناك العديد من الأنشطة للقيام بها فى القاهرة.
* We can visit the Manial Palace Museum. يمكننا زيارة متحف قصر المنيل.
* We can go quad biking in the desert in Giza. يمكننا ركوب الدراجات الرباعية فى صحراء الجيزة.
* We can climb the Bab Zuwayla minaret. يمكننا تسلق مئذنة باب زويلة.
* We can explore the souks. يمكننا استكشاف الأسواق.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 Why don't we go quad (climbing – biking – riding – visiting) in the desert of Giza?
2 We should climb the Bab Zuwayla (project – souk – rollercoaster – minaret) when we visit Cairo.
3 Let's (take – explore – climb – go) the souks on Sunday.
4 I can (take – arrive – go – visit) the Manial Palace Museum.
5 Salma is too scared to (climb – ride – take – explore) on the rollercoaster.
6 You can take (souks – minarets – photos – palaces) for your school project when you visit the museum.



2. Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:







Samer

I'm excited about our vacation this week, Basel.

أنا متحمس بشأن عطلتنا هذا الأسبوع يا باسل.

Basel

Me too! Why don't we try new places? We can travel to Cairo. There are lots to see there.

أنا أيضًا! لماذا لا نجرب أماكن جديدة؟ يمكننا السفر إلى القاهرة. يوجد الكثير لرؤيته هناك.





Samer

Yes. We can visit the Manial Palace Museum first. If we go to the museum on Sunday, on Monday we can take photos for my school project.

نعم، يمكننا زيارة متحف قصر المنيل أولًا. إذا قمنا بزيارة المتحف يوم الأحد، يوم الإثنين فيمكننا التقاط الصور لمشروعي المدرسي.



Basel

Okay, cool! My mom can go with us. She loves museums. Let's also go to the theme park and ride on a rollercoaster!

حسنًا، رائع! يمكن لأمي المجيء معنا. هي تحب المتاحف. دعنا نذهب أيضًا إلى مدينة الملاهي ونركب قطار الملاهي!





Samer

Okay! Let's do that on Tuesday. There are also some places outside Cairo that look interesting.

حسنًا! دعنا نفعل ذلك يوم الثلاثاء. هناك أيضًا بعض الأماكن خارج القاهرة التي تبدو مثيرة للاهتمام.



Basel

Like what?

مثل ماذا؟



Samer

We can go quad biking in the desert in Giza. If we take the bus, we will arrive in about 30 minutes.

يمكننا ركوب الدراجات الرباعية فى صحراء الجيزة. إذا استقللنا الأتوبيس، حسنًا فى حوالى ٣٠ دقيقة.



Basel

Great! We can go early on Wednesday and come back to the hotel before evening. Yes. What else can we do?

عظيم! يمكننا الذهاب باكرًا يوم الأربعاء ونعود للفندق قبل المساء. حسناً. ماذا يمكننا أن نفعل أيضًا؟



Samer

Let's climb the Bab Zuwayla minaret on Thursday. It's difficult, but the view from the top is beautiful. If we are there in the late afternoon, we can watch the sunset over the city.

دعنا نصعد إلى مئذنة باب زويلة يوم الخميس. إنه صعب، لكن المنظر من الأعلى جميل. إذا كنا هناك فى وقت متأخر بعد الظهر، يمكننا أن نشاهد الغروب فوق المدينة.



Basel

Cool! And in the morning, we can explore the Souks! They're near the minaret.

رائع! ويمكننا استكشاف الأسواق فى الصباح! إنها قريبة من المئذنة.



Samer

Great! Cairo, here we come!

عظيم! القاهرة، إننا قادمون!

Language Functions

- لتقديم الاقتراحات نستخدم عبارات مثل:

Let's + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ... .

e.g. Let's visit the museum on Monday.

Why don't + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ...?

e.g. Why don't we try new places?



Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Reem and Rana are ....
a) sisters b) friends c) cousins d) aunts

2 They are planning for a vacation in ....
a) Cairo b) Alexandria c) Aswan d) Giza

3 Reem thinks they should visit the .... Museum on Monday.
a) Art b) Natural c) Egyptian d) Manial Palace

4 Rana wants to go quad biking in the desert on ....
a) Sunday b) Tuesday c) Monday d) Friday

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 You can visit many places in Cairo when you go on a ....
a) museum b) souk c) minaret d) vacation

2 I want to .... the souks on Monday. محافظة القليوبية - إدارة طوخ التعليمية 2024
a) expand b) explain c) explore d) experience

3 We can ride on a rollercoaster at the .... محافظة القليوبية - إدارة بنها التعليمية 2024
a) palace b) museum c) theme park d) desert

4 The students need to .... some photos for their school project.
a) go b) ride c) take d) visit

5 We can go quad biking in the .... محافظة الجيزة - إدارة الهرم التعليمية 2024
a) desert b) sea c) pitch d) school

6 The Bab Zuwayla .... is an amazing place to visit in Cairo.
a) museum b) street c) souk d) minaret

7 He wants to visit the Manial .... Museum. محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة السنبلاوين التعليمية 2024
a) Palace b) Castle c) House d) Home

8 If we .... the bus, we will arrive in 30 minutes.
a) take b) go c) visit d) climb

9 It's difficult to climb, but the .... from the top is beautiful.
a) view b) vacation c) project d) photo

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

sunset – project – try – ride – Manial

Hana is too excited about her next vacation in Cairo. There are lots of things to see there and she wants to ....(1)............ new places when she arrives. On Monday, she can visit the ....(2)............ Palace Museum with her friend Ola. They want to take some photos for their school ....(3)............ . She also wants to climb the Bab Zuwayla minaret and watch the ....(4)............ over the city.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

محافظة القليوبية - إدارة غرب شبرا الخيمة التعليمية 2024

Samer and Basel are planning for their vacation this week. They are very excited. They will take their mom with them. Basel suggested trying new places, like Cairo where there are lots to see. Samer wants to see the Manial Palace Museum to take photos for his school project. He thinks museums are very interesting places. Basel wants to go to the theme park and ride on a rollercoaster. Also, they are going to visit other places outside Cairo, like going quad biking in the desert in Giza. If they take the bus, they will arrive in about 30 minutes. Exploring new places is a very good idea.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) plans for school day   b) plans for a vacation
c) plans for the summer   d) plans for a picnic

2 Basel and Samer are ....

a) guests   b) friends   c) teachers   d) brothers

3 They want to ride on a .... in the park.

a) rollercoaster   b) camel   c) horse   d) bus

B Answer the following questions:

4 Why does Samer want to visit the Manial Palace Museum?

....

5 What activity can they do in the desert of Giza?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 Let's – the – minaret – Zuwayla – climb – Bab.   محافظة بورسعيد - إدارة بورسعيد التعليمية 2024

....

2 can – places – new – We – try – our vacation – on.   محافظة القاهرة - إدارة عين شمس التعليمية 2024

....

3 Monday – What – we – can – do – on?

....

6 Punctuate the following:

1 I m excited about my vacation   القاهرة - إدارة شرق مدينة نصر التعليمية 2024

....

2 What else can we do in cairo

....



Lesson 2



If we book the tour today, it's cheaper
إذا حجزنا الجولة اليوم، فستكون أرخص



1. Listen and say:
استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

information	معلومات	company	شركة	website	موقع إلكترونى
tour guide	مرشد سياحى	price	سعر	tour	رحلة/ جولة
instructions	تعليمات	discount	خصم	tickets	تذاكر

Extra vocabulary

adventures	مغامرات	helmet	خوذة	cheaper (adj.)	أرخص
office	مكتب	wallet	محفظة	credit card	بطاقة ائتمان
bank details	تفاصيل بنكية	dust	غبار	free (adj.)	مجانى
stomach ache	ألم فى المعدة	freezer	مُجمد	dictionary	قاموس
regular (adj.)	منتظمة	breaks	استراحات	brains	أدمغة/ عقول
routine	(روتين) عادات متكررة	lunchtime	وقت الغداء	list	قائمة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

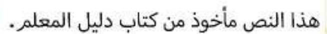
Present		Past	Present		Past
book	يحجز	booked	last	يدوم	lasted
press	يضغط	pressed	die	يموت	died
concentrate	يركز	concentrated	check	يتحقق/ يراجع	checked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
meet	يقابل	met	wear	يرتدى	wore
drive	يقود	drove	ride	يركب	rode

Expressions and Phrases

lunch is included	السعر يشمل وجبة الغداء	stay safe	يبقى آمنًا
pay for (something)	يدفع ثمن شيء ما	Here you are.	تفضل
get better	يتحسن	look up	يبحث عن معنى كلمة
turn the music down	يخفض صوت الموسيقى	write down	يسجل / يدون
check it off	يتحقق منها	feel proud	يشعر بالفخر

Listening script page 38 SB

هذا النص مأخوذ من كتاب دليل المعلم.




2. Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Samer

Dad, here's the information I found online about quad biking in the desert.

أبى، هذه هى المعلومات التى وجدتها على الإنترنت عن ركوب الدراجات الرباعية فى الصحراء.



Dad

Oh, thanks, Samer. Show me.

شكراً يا سامر. أرنى.



Samer

The company is called Desert Adventures. When you look at their website, the information is here. Look. The tour guide will meet us at the hotel.

الشركة تسمى «مغامرات الصحراء»، عندما تنظر إلى موقعهم الإلكترونى، تجد المعلومات هنا. انظر. سيقابلنا المرشد السياحى فى الفندق.



Dad

OK. What time will he meet us?

حسناً. فى أى وقت سيقابلنا؟



Samer

He'll meet us at 9 am and he'll drive us into the desert.

سيقابلنا فى الساعة ٩ صباحًا وسيقودنا إلى الصحراء.



Dad

And what time do we get back?

ومتى سنعود؟



Samer

We should be back around 2 pm. Lunch is included in the price. Should we take some water?

سنعود حوالى الساعة ٢ ظهرًا. السعر يشمل وجبة الغداء. هل يجب أن نأخذ بعض الماء؟



Dad

Yes. Good idea. How big is the group?

نعم. فكرة جيدة. ما هو حجم المجموعة؟



Samer

It'll be a group of six.

ستكون مجموعة من ستة أشخاص.




Dad

I like the photos. Everyone is wearing helmets. That's good. You have to wear a helmet if you ride a quad bike. How long do we ride the quad bikes for?

تعجبني الصور. الجميع يرتدي خوذات. هذا جيد. عليك ارتداء خوذة إذا كنت تركب دراجة رباعية. إلى متى سنركب الدراجات الرباعية؟



Samer

One of the trips is 45 minutes, but there's also a trip for an hour. Can we do the hour tour, Dad?

تستغرق الرحلة الواحدة ٤٥ دقيقة، ولكن هناك أيضًا رحلة لمدة ساعة. هل يمكننا القيام بجولة لمدة ساعة يا أبي؟




Dad

Yes, of course. This is going to be a lot of fun. Remember to listen to the guide's instructions so that you stay safe.

نعم، بالطبع. سيكون هذا ممتعًا للغاية. تذكر أن تستمع لتعليمات المرشد حتى تبقى آمنًا.

Samer



Yes, I will, Dad.

نعم، سأفعل، يا أبي.



Dad

Good! How do we book the tour if we can't book it on the website?

جيد! كيف نحجز الجولة إذا لم نتمكن من الحجز على الموقع الإلكتروني؟



Samer

We can book it at the office in town. If we book the tour today, it's cheaper. We get a 10% discount.

يمكننا حجزها في المكتب في المدينة. إذا حجزنا الجولة اليوم، فستكون أرخص. سنحصل على خصم 10%.



Dad

Great. Can you pass me my wallet? I need my credit card to pay for the tickets. Let's go to the office now.

عظيم. هل يمكنك أن تناولني محفظتي؟ أحتاج بطاقتي الائتمانية لدفع ثمن التذاكر. لنذهب إلى المكتب الآن.



Samer

Sure, Dad. Here you are.

بالتأكيد يا أبي، تفضل.





Language Focus

A If/When (Zero Conditional)

لو / عندما (الحالة الصفرية)

We use clauses with "if/when" plus present tense verbs, or a modal verb like "can" to talk about facts or things that are usually true.

نستخدم العبارات مع «if/when» مع المضارع أو الأفعال الناقصة مثل «can» للتحدث عن الحقائق أو الأشياء التى عادة ما تكون صحيحة.

Form: التكوين

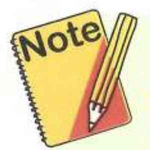
If/When →	present simple ... . جملة فى المضارع البسيط	,	present simple/ can + (inf.) ... . جملة فى المضارع البسيط / فعل ناقص

e.g. If you press the button, the tablet switches off.
When the lights turn off, you can use a candle.

Question: السؤال

Wh- word	do/ does/ can	subject الفاعل	(inf.) الفعل فى المصدر	if/ when	present simple ...? جملة فى المضارع البسيط

e.g. How do we get to Giza if we take the bus?



- عندما تأتى if/when فى بداية الجملة، نفصل بين الجملتين بفاصلة سفلية (,):

e.g. If you go to bed early, you get up early.

- العبارات المسبوقة بـ if/when عادة تأتى فى نهاية السؤال:

e.g. What can we watch when we go to the cinema?

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1. When it (rains – rained – rain – raining), the ground gets wet.
2. If it gets hotter, ice (melt – melted – melts – melting).
3. If you study hard, you (learned – can learn – learns – learning) more.
4. Flowers open when (it's – it was – it does – it can) warm in the spring.
5. You (got – can get – gets – getting) purple if you mix red and blue.
6. What (happens – happened – to happen – happening) if you freeze water?
7. What (did – can – could – does) you do when you receive the money?
8. (Do – Does – Did – Doing) birds sing if it's morning?
9. (Can – Would – Did – Doing) you ask her about my phone when you meet her?
10. Can stars shine brighter if there (is – does – do – was) no moon?



3. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Study for about 30 minutes, but no longer.

If you try to study for hours without a break, you can't concentrate. When you have regular breaks, you remember more. It's also better to study at the same time each day, even on Fridays or Saturdays. People's brains work better if they have a regular routine. Also, don't study when you're hungry! If you eat a healthy meal at lunchtime, you can concentrate better in the afternoon. It's helpful if you write down a list of what you want to do each time you study. Then you can check it off the list when you finish studying and feel proud!

ادرس لمدة ٣٠ دقيقة ولكن ليس أكثر. إذا حاولت أن تذاكر لساعات بدون فاصل ، فلن تستطيع التركيز. عندما تحصل على فترات راحة منتظمة، تتمكن من التذكر أكثر. يفضل أيضًا أن تذاكر فى نفس الوقت كل يوم حتى فى أيام الجمعة والسبت. تعمل عقول البشر بشكل أفضل إذا كان لديها روتين يومى منتظم. أيضًا ، لا تذاكر وأنت جائع! إذا كنت تأكل وجبة صحية فى وقت الغداء، يمكنك التركيز بشكل أفضل فى فترة ما بعد الظهر. من المفيد أن تكتب قائمة بما تريد إنجازه فى كل مرة تذاكر فيها. ثم تتحقق من هذه القائمة عندما تنتهى من المذاكرة وتشعر بالفخر.

Check

1. How long should a student study?

   ....

2. Why is it important to have regular breaks?

   ....

3. Why is it better to study at the same time each day?

   ....



Prepositions of time حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت

We use prepositions of time at, on, and in, to say when something happens.
نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت (in - on - at) لتقول متى يحدث شيء ما.

at — with times
مع الأوقات

at midnight	فى منتصف الليل
at four o'clock	فى الساعة الرابعة
at lunchtime	فى وقت الغداء
at midday	فى منتصف اليوم

I have breakfast at 7 o'clock in the morning.



on — with days and dates
مع الأيام والتواريخ

on Monday	فى يوم الإثنين
on my birthday	فى يوم عيد ميلادى
on April 13th	فى الـ 13 من إبريل
on the weekend	فى الإجازة الأسبوعية
on holidays	فى الإجازات

My birthday is on April 24th.



in — with times of day, months, seasons, and years
مع أجزاء اليوم والشهور والفصول والسنوات

in the afternoon	فى وقت الظهيرة
in May	فى شهر مايو
in the summer	فى فصل الصيف
in 2004	فى عام 2004

I go to Paris in the winter.





- نستخدم When للسؤال عن وقت حدوث الأشياء:

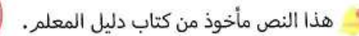
e.g. A: When do you go to bed? B: I go to bed at 9:00 pm.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1. (In – On – At – By) 7:00 am, I wake up ready for a new school day!
2. (In – On – At – By) December, it often snows here.
3. I always sleep early (in – on – at – of) school days.
4. A: (Where – When – Who – How) do they travel abroad? B: In the summer.
5. I travel to London (on – in – at – by) May.
6. The sun rises brightly (at – on – in – to) the morning every day.
7. Is Ola's birthday (at – in – to – on) July 4th?
8. The movie starts (at – on – in – by) 8:30 pm, so hurry up!
9. We go skiing (on – in – at – by) the winter when there's a lot of snow.
10. We celebrate the festival (at – in – on – to) October 31st.

Listening script page 41 





4. Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:





Hana

Hi. My name's Hana. I get up every day at 6 o'clock. I have breakfast with my family at 6:30 in the morning. I go to the library on Saturday and I play sports on Sunday. I do homework on Sunday, Tuesday, and Thursday.

مرحباً، اسمى هنا. أستيقظ كل يوم فى السادسة صباحًا. أتناول الإفطار مع عائلتى فى الساعة ٦:٣٠ صباحاً. أذهب إلى المكتبة يوم السبت وألعب الرياضة يوم الأحد. أقوم بالواجبات المنزلية أيام الأحد، الثلاثاء، والخميس.



Youssef

Hi. I'm Youssef. I get up every day at 7 o'clock. I have breakfast with my grandparents at 7:30 in the morning. I don't go to the library but I play sports on Saturday. I do homework on Thursday.

مرحبًا، أنا يوسف. أستيقظ كل يوم فى الساعة السابعة صباحًا. أتناول الإفطار مع جدى وجدتى فى الساعة 7:30 صباحًا. لا أذهب إلى المكتبة ولكننى ألعب الرياضة يوم السبت. أقوم بالواجبات المنزلية يوم الخميس.



Mayar

Hello. My name's Mayar. I get up every day at 6:30 and I have breakfast with my family at 7 o'clock. I go to the library on Sunday in the afternoon. I don't play sports. I do homework on Monday and Wednesday.

مرحبًا. اسمى ميار. أستيقظ كل يوم فى الساعة 6:30 وأتناول الفطور مع عائلتى فى الساعة 7:00 صباحًا. أذهب إلى المكتبة يوم الأحد بعد الظهر. لا أمارس الرياضة. أقوم بالواجبات المنزلية يومى الإثنين والأربعاء.



Nader

Hi. I'm Nader. I get up every day at 8 o'clock. I have breakfast with my sister at 8:15, then we go to school. I don't go to the library because I have a lot of books at home. I play sports on Wednesday. I do homework every day.

مرحبًا. أنا نادر. أستيقظ كل يوم فى الساعة 8:00، أتناول الإفطار مع أختى فى الساعة 8:15، ثم نذهب إلى المدرسة. لا أذهب إلى المكتبة لأن لدى الكثير من الكتب فى المنزل. ألعب الرياضة يوم الأربعاء. أقوم بالواجبات المنزلية كل يوم.



Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 A: What .... will he meet us? B: At 9 am.
a) place b) time c) cost d) website

2 You should listen to the guide's .... to stay safe.
a) adventures b) tours c) instructions d) tickets

3 You have to wear a .... if you ride a quad bike.
a) wallet b) credit card c) ticket d) helmet

4 If you book today, you can get a 10% ....
a) discount b) tour c) company d) guide

5 I need my .... to pay for the tickets.
a) helmet b) adventure c) credit card d) quad bike

6 When you study for hours without break, you can't ....
a) eat b) concentrate c) write down d) check

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

brains – longer – concentrate – have – forget

محافظة القاهرة - إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2024

If you want to study hard, you should follow these tips. Study for about 30 minutes, but no ....(1)............ . If you try to study for hours without a break, you can't ....(2)............ . When you ....(3)............ regular breaks, that helps you more. It's also better to study at the same time each day, even on Fridays and Saturdays. People's ....(4)............ work better if they have a regular routine.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 don't – water – Plants – if – die – you – them. محافظة القليوبية - إدارة شبرا الخيمة التعليمية 2024

....

2 when – study – Don't – you're – hungry. محافظة المنوفية - إدارة أشمون التعليمية 2024

....

3 at – us – will – the hotel – The guide – meet. محافظة المنوفية - إدارة شبين الكوم التعليمية 2024

....

4 don't – We – go to – at – library – lunchtime – the.

....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 .... (At) Saturdays, Ayman goes cycling. محافظة القاهرة - إدارة عين شمس التعليمية 2024

2 I got many presents .... (at) my birthday. محافظة القاهرة - إدارة دار السلام التعليمية 2024

3 He was born .... (on) March. محافظة القليوبية - إدارة بنها التعليمية 2024

4 A: .... (What) is your birthday? B: It's on April 14th.

5 If you .... (studied) hard, you can pass the exam.

6 Yesterday, my dad came home .... (in) midnight.

7 If you book the tour on the website, it .... (be) faster and cheaper.

8 You can get a discount when you .... (using) your credit card.

9 I usually go to Alexandria ....(on) summer. محافظة الجيزة - إدارة البدرشين التعليمية 2024

10 How can we ....(getting) to Luxor if we miss the train? محافظة القليوبية - إدارة بنها التعليمية 2024

5 Punctuate the following:

1 noha was born on may 17th.

....

2 if you heat water it melts.

....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 309

"Tips for studying"

30 minutes but no longer – have regular breaks – healthy meal

....

....

....

....



Lesson 3





Fatima faces her fear فاطيمة تواجه خوفها



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

teenage (adj.)	مراهق	dome	قبة	secret	سر
heights	ارتفاعات	fear	خوف	sunset	غروب الشمس
calmer (adj.)	أكثر هدوءًا	view	منظر	incredible (adj.)	لا يصدق

Extra vocabulary

building	مبنى	typical (adj.)	عادى	monument	أثر تاريخى
cousin	ابن عم / بنت عم	excited (adj.)	متحمس	famous (adj.)	مشهور
hill	تل	fantastic (adj.)	رائع	scared (adj.)	خائف

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
climb	يتسلق	climbed	face	يواجه	faced
disappoint	يحبط	disappointed	reach	يصل	reached
smile	يبتسم	smiled	breathe	يتنفس	breathed
lift	يرفع	lifted	suggest	يقترح	suggested

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
come	يأتى	came	see	يرى	saw
say	يتكلم / يقول	said	feel	يشعر	felt

Expressions and Phrases

climb up the hill	يتسلق التل	afraid of heights	خائف من الارتفاعات
That's a good idea.	إنها فكرة جيدة.	(someone's) face is white	أصبح وجهه شاحبًا
look around	ينظر حوله	feel proud	يشعر بالفخر

Take care!

- بعض الكلمات تأتى أحيانًا كاسم أو كفعل:

e.g. - climb (n) تسلُّق : After a long climb, they reached the top.
- climb (v) يتسلق : Fatima climbed the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa.



2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Fatima's favorite cousin Amal comes to visit her. It is Amal's first time in Aswan. She's very excited. She wants to see all the famous places.

تأتى أمل ابنة عم فاطيمة المفضلة لزيارتها. إنها الزيارة الأولى لأمل فى أسوان. هى متحمسة للغاية. تريد أن ترى جميع الأماكن المشهورة.



Amal shows Fatima a photo. "Can we go visit the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa? We can climb up the hill to it – there's a great view from there!"

تعرض أمل على فاطيمة صورة. «هل يمكننا الذهاب لزيارة قبة أبو الهوى؟ يمكننا تسلق التل لنصعد إليها، يوجد منظر رائع من هناك!»



Fatima doesn't know what to say. She wants to make Amal happy, but she has a secret: she is afraid of heights. How can she climb up the hill to the dome?

لا تعرف فاطيمة ماذا تقول. تريد أن تجعل أمل سعيدة. لكن لديها سر: هى خائفة من الارتفاعات. كيف تستطيع هى أن تتسلق التل لتصعد للقبة؟



Fatima doesn't want to disappoint her cousin, so she decides to face her fear. "That's a good idea," she says. "Let's go on Tuesday in the afternoon. We can watch the sunset."

لا تريد فاطيمة أن تخيب ظن ابنة عمها، لذلك قررت أن تواجه خوفها. تقول فاطيمة «إنها فكرة جيدة». «لنذهب يوم الثلاثاء بعد الظهر. يمكننا أن نشاهد الغروب».

It's Tuesday and the girls are at the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa. After a long climb, they reach the top. Fatima's face is white. She is very scared. But Amal takes her hand and smiles. "Breathe slowly," she says. "You can do this, Fatima. Now look around you."



إنه الثلاثاء والفتيات عند قبة أبو الهوى. بعد تَسَلُّق استمر طويلًا، وصلتا للقمة. وجه فاطيمة يبدو شاحبًا، هي خائفة جدًّا. تأخذ أمل يدها وتبتسم وتقول «تنفسي ببطء». «يمكنك فعل ذلك يا فاطيمة، الآن انظري حولك».

Fatima feels calmer. She lifts her head to look at the view. It is incredible. Suddenly she doesn't feel scared any more. She feels proud to live in such a fantastic place!



تشعر فاطيمة بالارتياح . ترفع رأسها لترى المنظر. إنه لا يصدق. فجأة، لم تعد تشعر بالخوف. هي تشعر بالفخر لأنها تعيش في مكان رائع كهذا.

Tip! Pictures can help you understand what a story is about and give you extra details. For example, the background can show you where the action happens, and the faces of the characters can tell you how they feel at that moment.

يمكن أن تساعدك الصور على فهم ما تدور حوله القصة وتعطيك تفاصيل إضافية. على سبيل المثال، يمكن أن تُظهر الخلفية مكان الحدث ويمكن أن تدل وجوه الشخصيات على إحساسهم في تلك اللحظة.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 Fatima and Amal are (sisters – cousins – mothers – friends).

2 Fatima lives in (Alexandria – Aswan – Cairo – Luxor).

3 Fatima is afraid of (dogs – cats – school – heights).





3. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary


lake
بحيرة


river
نهر


stream
نهر صغير


puddle
بركة مياه

Extra vocabulary

deer	غزال	forest	غابة	beautiful (adj.)	جميل
a drink	شربة ماء	wolf	ذئب	cool (adj.)	بارد
clear (adj.)	نقي	bear	دب	fox	ثعلب
finally	أخيرًا	thirsty (adj.)	عطشان	afraid (adj.)	خائف
brave (adj.)	شجاع	delicious (adj.)	لذيذ	proud (adj.)	فخور

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعــال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
stop	يتوقف	stopped	want	يريد	wanted
sparkle	يلمع	sparkled	watch	يراقب	watched

Irregular verbs أفعــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
run	يجري	ran	come	يأتي	came
drink	يشرب	drank	see	يرى	saw

Expressions and Phrases

run through	يجري عبر	stop for a drink	يتوقف لأجل شربة ماء
the same lake	نفس البحيرة	have a drink from	يتناول شربة ماء من
sparkle in the sun	يلمع في الشمس	go back to	يعود إلى

Take care!

- بعض الكلمات تأتي أحيانًا كاسم أو كفعل:

e.g. - drink (n) شربة ماء : He goes to the lake and has a drink.

- drink (v) يشرب : Little Deer wants to drink from the river.

Little Deer In The Forest الغزال الصغير فى الغابة



4. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

1 Little Deer runs through the forest. He comes to a beautiful, blue lake and he decides to stop for a drink of water. Just then, he sees Wolf. Wolf has a drink from the lake. "Oh no!" says Little Deer. "I can't drink from the same lake as Wolf. Wolf wants to eat me!"

الغزال الصغير يركض عبر الغابة. يأتى إلى بحيرة زرقاء جميلة ويقرر التوقف لشرب الماء. وبعد ذلك، يرى الذئب. الذئب يتناول شربة ماء من البحيرة. «لا!» يقول الغزال الصغير. «لا يمكننى الشرب من نفس البحيرة كالذئب. الذئب يريد أن يأكلنى!».

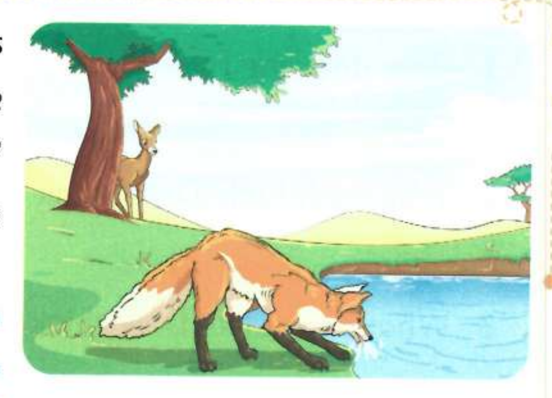
Little Deer runs on through the forest. Next, he comes to a river. The river is cool and clear. But as Little Deer goes to drink from it, he sees Bear. Bear has a drink from the river.

"Oh no!" says Little Deer. "I can't drink from the same river as Bear. Bear wants to eat me!"

الغزال الصغير يركض عبر الغابة. بعد ذلك، يأتى إلى النهر. النهر بارد وصافٍ ولكن عندما يذهب الغزال الصغير للشرب منه، يشرب الدب. يتناول الدب شربة ماء من النهر. «لا!» يقول الغزال الصغير. «لا يمكننى الشرب من نفس النهر كالدب. الدب يريد أن يأكلنى!».

The middle

2 Little Deer runs on through the forest. He comes to a small stream. The stream sparkles in the sun. "Finally!" he says. "I can have a... Oh no!" Little Deer sees Fox. "I can't drink from the same stream as Fox. Fox wants to eat me!"



الغزال الصغير يركض عبر الغابة. يأتى إلى نهر صغير. يلمع التيار فى الشمس.«أخيرًا!» يقول:«يمكننى أن أحصل على... أوه لا!» الغزال الصغير يرى الثعلب. «لا أستطيع الشرب من نفس النهر الصغير كالثعلب. الثعلب يريد أن يأكلنى!».

Little Deer runs on through the forest. He comes to a large puddle. It isn't blue like the lake. It isn't cool and clear like the river. And it doesn't sparkle like the stream. But Little Deer is very thirsty now!

الغزال الصغير يمر عبر الغابة. يأتى إلى بركة كبيرة. إنها ليست زرقاء مثل البحيرة. وليست باردة ونقية مثل النهر. ولا تلمع مثل التيار. لكن الغزال عطشان جدًا الآن!

The end

3 Just then, Little Deer sees Little Bird. Little Bird sees Little Deer, too, but she isn't afraid. Little Bird has a drink from the puddle.

Little Deer watches Little Bird. "Hmm," he thinks. "If Little Bird can be brave, I can be brave, too!"

Little Deer goes back to the beautiful, blue lake. He sees Wolf, Bear, and Fox. But this time, Little Deer goes to the lake and has a drink. It is delicious! Little Deer feels happy and proud.



وبعد ذلك، يرى الغزال الصغير الطائر الصغير. الطائر الصغير يرى الغزال الصغير، ولكنه ليس خائفًا. الطائر الصغير يتناول شربة ماء من البركة.
يراقب الغزال الصغير الطائر الصغير، و يفكر، «إذا كان الطائر الصغير يمكن أن يكون شجاعًا فيمكنني أن أكون شجاعًا أيضًا!».
يعود الغزال الصغير إلى البحيرة الزرقاء الجميلة. يرى الذئب والدب والثعلب. ولكن هذه المرة، يذهب الغزال الصغير إلى البحيرة ويشرب.
إن الماء لذيذ! الغزال الصغير يشعر بالسعادة والفخر.

The moral of the story

Facing our fears and being brave makes us feel happy and proud.

مواجهة مخاوفنا والتحلي بالشجاعة يجعلنا نشعر بالسعادة والفخر.

Check

1 How does the river look like?

....

2 Why can't Little Deer drink from the stream?

....

3 What does Little Deer think when he sees the bird?

....



Pronunciation



5. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



/w/

water	wolf	window	wet	whale
مياه	ذئب	شباك	مبتل	حوت

west	walk	web	warm
غرب	يمشي	شبكة عنكبوت	دافئ

white	went	wear	watch
أبيض	ذهب	يرتدي	ساعة يد

/v/

volcano	violin	vegetables	vet	veil
بركان	كمان	خضراوات	طبيب بيطري	حجاب

vest	van	visit	vase	village
سترة	شاحنة صغيرة	يزور	مزهرية (فازة)	قرية



Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Little Deer runs through the ....
a) river b) forest c) farm d) park

2 Little Deer comes to a beautiful .... to drink.
a) building b) palace c) stream d) lake

3 Little Deer sees a .... by the lake.
a) wolf b) lion c) hippo d) bird

4 .... has a drink from the lake.
a) Bear b) Cat c) Wolf d) Fox

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 We .... up the hill to the dome. محافظة المنوفية - إدارة شبين الكوم التعليمية 2024
a) fly b) swim c) climb d) drive

2 Kamal is .... of heights. He can't climb the minaret. محافظة المنوفية - إدارة شبين الكوم التعليمية 2024
a) afraid b) proud c) excited d) sure

3 My house is by the river. I have a beautiful .... from my window.
a) monument b) teenager c) fear d) view

4 You should keep your friends' ....
a) families b) secrets c) jobs d) puddles

5 She is trying to .... her fear of heights. محافظة دمياط - إدارة الزرقا التعليمية 2024
a) face b) hunt c) want d) reach

6 We are .... of our country. محافظة المنوفية - إدارة أشمون التعليمية 2024
a) proud b) kind c) happy d) angry

7 Little Deer was .... and it wanted to have a drink.
a) hungry b) thirsty c) afraid d) scared

8 The stream .... in the sun. It looks amazing.
a) dries b) sparkles c) cleans d) drinks

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

disappoint – view – delicious – famous – afraid

Amal comes to visit her cousin Fatima in Aswan. She wants to see all the ....(1)............ places. She wants to visit the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa. There is a great ....(2)............ from there. Fatima has a secret. She is ....(3)............ of heights. She can't climb the hill up to the dome, but she doesn't want to ....(4)............ her cousin. She decides to face her fears and go with her.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

محافظة الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزة ثان التعليمية 2024

Omar and his sister Logy like going outside on their vacation. They visit many places in Cairo, Giza, Luxor, and Aswan. One day, Logy asked her brother to go to the Cairo Tower. At first, Omar didn't want to go there because he was afraid of heights. Then, he decided to face his fear and go to the Cairo Tower. On Friday, they got up early and went to the Cairo Tower by bus. From the Cairo Tower, Omar and Logy could see the great view of Cairo and the Nile.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) school b) tourism c) vacation d) parks

2 The underlined word "afraid" means ....

a) scared b) happy c) sad d) amazed

3 Omar and Logy saw the great view of the ....

a) pyramids b) Nile c) minaret d) museum

B Answer the following questions:

4 Why didn't Omar want to go to the Cairo Tower?

....

5 How did they go to the Cairo Tower?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 feels – Little – and – Deer – proud – happy.

....

2 hill – she – How – can – climb – the?

....

3 the forest – Deer – Little – runs – through.

محافظة الشرقية - إدارة ديرب نجم التعليمية 2024

....

4 face – fear – her – Fatima – decides – to.

....

6 Punctuate the following:

1 It's amal's first time in aswan.

....

2 how does Little Deer feel

....



Lessons 4 & 5





Writing



1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

carnival	مهرجان ترفيهي	rides	جولات (ألعاب)	theaters	مسارح
waterfalls	شلالات	simulation	محاكاة	destination	وجهة

Extra vocabulary

blog post	منشور فى مدونة	surprise	مفاجأة	fantasy	خيال
rollercoaster	قطار الملاهى	stores	محلات	children's section	قسم الأطفال
the Orient Train	قطار الشرق	tickets	تذاكر	scary (adj.)	مخيف
wet (adj.)	مبلل	seat	مقعد	screens	شاشات
snowy (adj.)	مغطى بالثلج	ocean	محيط	realistic (adj.)	واقعى
double room	غرفة مزدوجة	busy (adj.)	مزدحم	Sharm El-Sheikh	شرم الشيخ
St Catherine's monastery	دير سانت كاترين	square	ميدان	tourist brochure	كتيب سياحى

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
guess	يخمن	guessed	arrive	يصل	arrived
wait	ينتظر	waited	relax	يستريح	relaxed

Irregular verbs أفعـال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
sit	يجلس	sat	cost	يتكلف	cost

Expressions and Phrases

a lot to see and do	الكثير لتراه وتفعله	a bit scary	مخيف قليلًا
all around you	فى كل مكان حولك	sound and light effects	تأثيرات الصوت والضوء
around the world	حول العالم	per night/ per person	فى الليلة/ للشخص

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Nashwa has a special birthday surprise at the carnival.
نشوى لديها مفاجأة خاصة من أجل عيد ميلادها فى المهرجان الترفيهى.

* There are amazing rides to try and theaters to watch shows.
هناك ألعاب رائعة يمكنك تجربتها ومسارح لمشاهدة العروض.

* In the simulation theater, there are big screens all around you.
فى مسرح المحاكاة، هناك شاشات كبيرة تحيط بك فى كل مكان.



2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

سجلات | روابط | عن الصفحة | الصفحة الرئيسية

Nashwa's blog
مدونة نشوى

BLOG HOME | ABOUT ME | LINKS | ARCHIVE

Tuesday June 3rd الثلاثاء ٣ يونيو

All the fun of the Carnival!
أجواء المرح فى المهرجان الترفيهى



Today is my birthday and guess where I am? I'm with my family for my special birthday surprise at the Carnival! I want to tell you all about it.

اليوم عيد ميلادى، خمن أين أنا؟ أنا مع عائلتى من أجل مفاجأة خاصة بعيد ميلادى فى المهرجان الترفيهى. أريد أن أخبركم جميعًا عن هذا اليوم.

When you arrive at the park, you are suddenly in a world of fantasy – it's really exciting. There is a lot to see and do here. There are amazing rides to try like the rollercoaster (if you're brave!), and theaters where you can watch shows. There are places to eat and stores, too.

بمجرد وصولك للمكان ستجد نفسك فجأةً داخل عالم خيالى. إنه مكان مثير للاهتمام. يوجد العديد من الأشياء لرؤيتها وفعلها هنا. يوجد العديد من الجولات الرائعة لتجربتها مثل قطار الملاهى (إذا كنت تتحلى بالشجاعة!) والمسارح حيث يمكنك مشاهدة العروض. توجد أماكن لتناول الطعام وتوجد محلات أيضًا.

The children's section has nine rides, including the Orient Train. We have tickets for that at 10 o'clock. My brother loves water rides, so he wants to go on some of those later this morning. At eleven thirty, we have tickets for the Waterfalls ride. It has some high sections so it's a bit scary, and you get very wet!

يشتمل قسم الأطفال على ٩ ألعاب تتضمن قطار الشرق لدينا تذاكر لتجربته فى تمام العاشرة. يحب أخى الجولات المائية. لذلك يود أن يذهب إلى تلك الجولات لاحقًا هذا الصباح. لدينا تذاكر للعبة الشلالات فى تمام الحادية عشرة والنصف. يوجد بها بعض الارتفاعات التى تجعل التجربة مخيفة قليلًا وتجعلك مبتلًا للغاية.

In the afternoon, Dad and I want to go to the simulation theater. You sit in your seat with big screens all around you, and there are sound and light effects. It feels like you're in different places around the world – snowy mountains even under the ocean. It's very realistic – I can't wait! What a great birthday present – thanks Mom and Dad!

بعد الظهر، أريد أنا وأبى الذهاب إلى مسرح المحاكاة. تجلس على مقعد محاط بشاشات كبيرة من حولك ويوجد مؤثرات صوتية وضوئية. تشعر أنك فى أماكن مختلفة حول العالم: جبال يغطيها الجليد وحتى فى قاع المحيط. تشعر كأنها حقيقية بالفعل. لا أستطيع الانتظار! يا لها من هدية رائعة لعيد الميلاد. شكرًا أمى وأبى.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1. The carnival is in a (park – house – school – zoo).
2. If you're (weak – sick– brave – happy), you can go on a rollercoaster.
3. It feels like you're in a different place when you're in the simulation (park – club – school – theater).

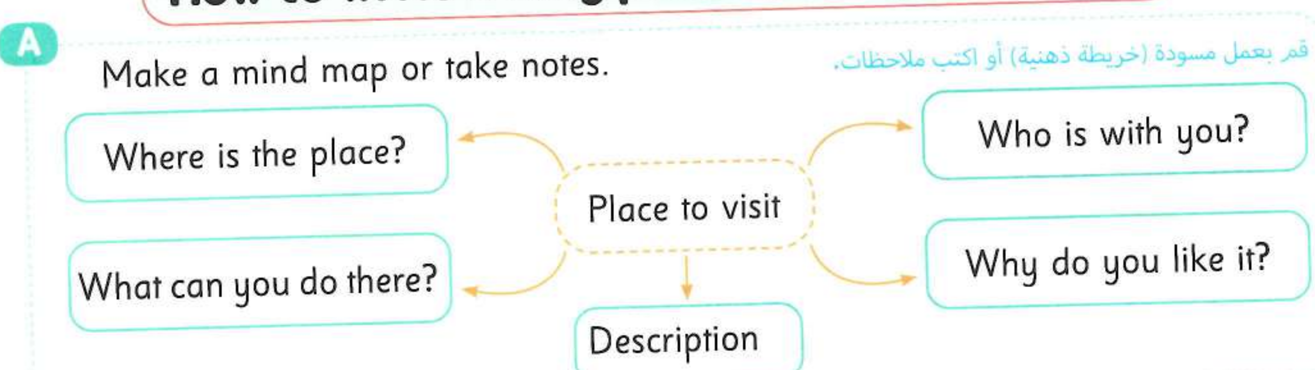
3. Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

How to write a blog post كيفية كتابة منشورًا فى مدونة

A Make a mind map or take notes.

قم بعمل مسودة (خريطة ذهنية) أو اكتب ملاحظات.



B A blog post should have a title and date.

يجب أن تحتوى المدونة على عنوان وتاريخ.

C Use informal language and first-person pronouns (I, my, me). It has to include a personal story, and it usually gives the writer's opinions and feelings about his experiences.

استخدم اللغة غير الرسمية (العامية) وضمائر المتكلم العائدة عليك. يجب أن تتضمن قصة شخصية. وغالبًا يذكر فيها الكاتب آراءه ومشاعره المبنية على تجاربه.

D Bloggers often add photos to make the blog more attractive.

المدونون غالبًا يضيفون صورًا لجعل المدونة تبدو أكثر جاذبية.

e.g. Write a blog post of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"My visit to the Pyramids"

Why do you like it? – What can you do there?

اسم المدون

.................................'s blog | BLOG HOME | ABOUT ME | LINKS | ARCHIVE

.... ← تاريخ التدوين

.... ← عنوان المدونة

....

....

....

....



Sharm El-Sheikh – an amazing holiday destination!

شرم الشيخ - وجهة رائعة فى الإجازة!



For only LE 1000 per night, per person in a double room.

فقط بسعر ١٠٠٠ جنيه فى الليلة للشخص فى الغرفة الثنائية.

Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting and busy town in Egypt by the Red Sea. There are lots of things to see and do.

شرم الشيخ هى مدينة مثيرة للاهتمام ومزدحمة فى مصر مطلة على البحر الأحمر. يوجد العديد من الأشياء لرؤيتها وفعلها.

- swim in the sea — أن تعوم فى البحر
- relax on the beach — أن تسترخى على الشاطئ



- go quad biking in the desert

أن تركب الدراجات الرباعية فى الصحراء

- eat good food

أن تتناول طعامًا لذيذًا





visit the St Catherine's monastery

أن تزور دير سانت كاترين

Take *Let's Ride!* bus from Giza Square every afternoon at 3 pm for LE 500 only!

خذ حافلة *Let's Ride!* من ميدان الجيزة كل ظهيرة، فقط فى مقابل ٥٠٠ جنيه مصرى.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting (country – town – farm – village) in Egypt.

2 You can go quad biking in the (desert – garden – carnival – sea).

3 Sharm El-Sheikh is by the (Red – Yellow – Dead – Blue) Sea.

Practice Lessons 4 & 5



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 There are a lot of .... at the carnival like the rollercoaster.

محافظة الجيزة - إدارة الدقي التعليمية 2024

a) jungles b) rides c) waterfalls d) cities

2 You can watch .... at the theaters.

a) children b) shows c) fairy tales d) waterfalls

3 The .... ride is a bit scary, but it can get you wet.

a) waterfall b) train c) rollercoaster d) simulation

4 There are big .... all around you in the simulation theater.

a) rides b) windows c) screens d) trains

5 We can ride on a rollercoaster in the ....

محافظة القليوبية - إدارة قها التعليمية 2024

a) palace b) museum c) carnival d) desert

6 After a long time, we arrived at our.............................. .

a) information b) waterfalls c) destination d) pollution

7 You can swim in the sea or .... on the beach.

a) fall b) visit c) relax d) fly

8 I'll visit St Catherine's .... when I go to Sharm El-Sheikh.

a) castle b) palace c) museum d) monastery

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

stores – swim – summer – desert – quad biking

محافظة القاهرة - إدارة الشروق التعليمية 2024

Sharm El-Sheikh is a big Egyptian town on the Red Sea. It's hot and sunny in the ....(1)............ . A lot of tourists all over the world love to visit Sharm El-Sheikh. They ....(2)............ in the Red Sea with dolphins. Also, they can go on safari in the ....(3)............ . In Sharm El-Sheikh, there are too many bazaars and ....(4)............ . Tourists can buy Egyptian products, perfume, and spices.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Ola. Today is my birthday. I'm with my family for my special birthday surprise at the Carnival! There is a lot to see and do here. There are amazing rides to try like the rollercoaster, and theaters where you can watch shows. In the afternoon, Dad and I want to go to the simulation theater where we can sit in our seats with big screens all around us and there are sound and light effects, and we feel like we're in different places around the world – snowy mountains even under the ocean. It's very realistic.

A **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1 The general idea of the text is about ....
a) Ola's birthday surprise
b) the amazing rides
c) Ola's family
d) the simulation theater

2 The .... is a ride at the Carnival.
a) rollercoaster
b) simulation theater
c) light effects
d) snowy mountains

3 Dad and Ola want to go to the simulation theater in ....
a) the morning b) the evening c) the afternoon d) night

B **Answer the following questions:**

4 What can we do at the Carnival? ....

5 Why is the simulation theater very realistic? ....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 wants to – theater – go to – Dad – simulation – the.

محافظة الجيزة – إدارة الجيزة التعليمية 2024

....

2 relax – You – on the – can – beach.

....

3 biking – the – Go – desert – in – quad.

....

4 holiday – destination – Sharm El-Sheikh – an amazing – is.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

i'm with my family at the Carnival

محافظة الجيزة – إدارة شمال الجيزة 2024

....

6 Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 309

"An amazing trip to Sharm El-Sheikh"

محافظة القليوبية – إدارة قليوب التعليمية 2024

enjoy swimming – quad biking

....

....

....

....

Unit 3 REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التى وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
explore the souks	يستكشف الأسواق	climb the Bab Zuwayla minaret	يصعد مأذنة باب زويلة
take photos for the school project	يلتقط صورًا لمشروع المدرسة	go quad biking in the desert	يركب الدراجات الرباعية فى الصحراء
ride on a rollercoaster	يركب قطار الملاهى	visit the Manial Palace Museum	يزور متحف قصر المنيل
excited	متحمس	vacation	عطلة
places	أماكن	theme park	مدينة الملاهى
view	منظر	the top	القمة
late afternoon	فى وقت متأخر من الظهيرة	sunset	الغروب

Lesson (2)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
information	معلومات	company	شركة
website	موقع إلكترونى	tour guide	مرشد سياحى
price	سعر	instructions	تعليمات
discount	خصم	tour	جولة
tickets	تذاكر	online	عبر الإنترنت
adventures	مغامرات	bank details	تفاصيل بنكية
credit card	بطاقة ائتمانية	regular	منظم
breaks	استراحات	brains	أدمغة/ عقول
routine	روتين (عادات متكررة)	hungry	جائع
lunchtime	وقت الغداء	helpful	مفيد

Lesson (3)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
fear	خوف	teenager	مراهق
heights	مرتفعات	scared	خائف
cousin	ابن عم / ابنة عم	secret	سر
dome	قبة	hill	تل
famous	مشهور	calmer	أكثر هدوءًا
monument	أثر تاريخى	incredible	لا يصدق
deer	غزال	wolf	ذئب
fox	ثعلب	bear	دب
lake	بحيرة	river	نهر
puddle	بركة ماء	stream	مجرى مائى

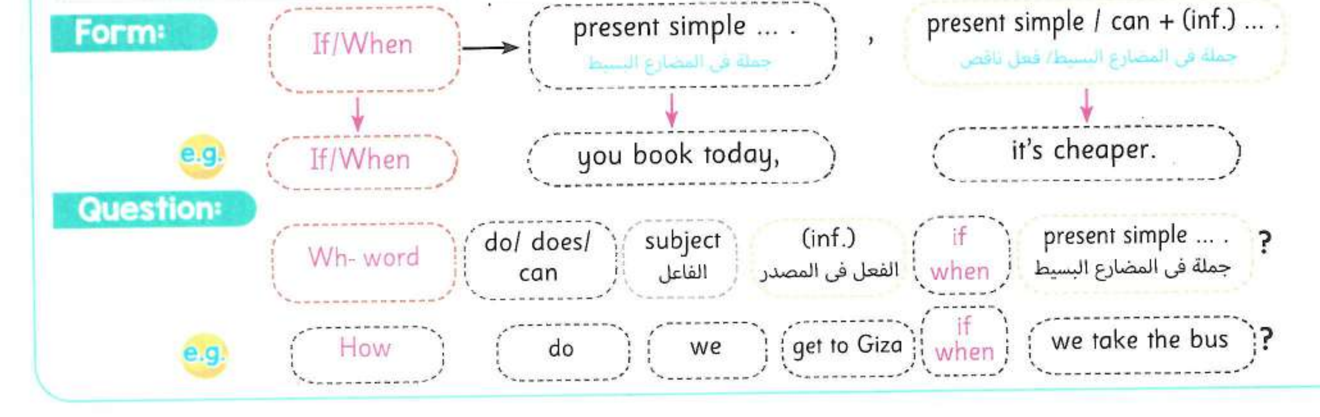
Lessons (4 & 5)

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
blog post	منشور فى مدونة	carnival	مهرجان ترفيهى
birthday	عيد ميلاد	theaters	مسارح
waterfall	شلال	simulation	محاكاة
St Catherine's monastery	دير سانت كاترين	destination	وجهة
surprise	مفاجأة	fantasy	خيال
special	خاص	stores	محلات
children's section	قسم الأطفال	realistic	واقعى
busy	مزدحم	double room	غرفة مزدوجة

Language Focus

If/When (Zero conditional)

We use clauses with "if/when" plus present tense verbs, or a modal verb like "can" to talk about facts or things that are usually true.







تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

يستكشف الأسواق	....	يزور متحف قصر المنيل	....
يركب دراجات رباعية فى الصحراء	....	يصعد إلى مئذنة باب زويلة	....
يلتقط صورًا لأجل مشروع مدرسى	....	مدينة الملاهى	....
الغروب	....	منظر	....
أماكن	....	عطلة (إجازة)	

Lesson 2

شركة	....	معلومات	....
سعر	....	موقع إلكترونى	....
بطاقة ائتمانية	....	تعليمات	....
خصم	....	تفاصيل بنكية	....
استراحات	....	خوذة	....
روتين (عادات متكررة)	....	أدمغة/ عقول	....
يركز	....	وقت الغداء	....

Lesson 3

خوف	....	سر	....
ارتفاعات	....	منظر	....
غزال	....	دب	....
ثعلب	....	مجرى مائى	....
بحيرة	....	ذئب	....

Lessons 4 & 5

ملاهٍ متنقلة	....	منشور فى مدونة	....
محاكاة	....	مسارح	....
واقعى	....	مفاجأة	....
مزدحم	....	وجهة	....

WRITING TIME




لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about your vacation:

- I want to visit + (المكان).
- I want to try some new places.
- I can + (فعل) + on + (يوم).
- If I + (فعل مضارع) + I can + (فعل) on + (يوم) .

My vacation to Cairo

I want to visit Cairo next week. I want to try some new places. I can explore the souks on Saturday. I can climb the Bab Zuwayla minaret on Sunday. I can go quad biking in the desert on Monday. I can ride on a rollercoaster on Tuesday. If I visit the Manial Palace Museum on Wednesday, I can take photos for my school project.

How to write a blog post about a place you visited:

- Add a title and a date to the blog post.
- What is the place?
- Who is with you?
- Why do you like the place?
- What can you do there?

Mona's blog

Tuesday June 3rd

My special day in Alexandria

Today is my birthday and guess where I am. I'm in Alexandria with my friends. I like Alexandria because the weather is always nice and warm. There are many things to see and do here. In the morning, we enjoy swimming in the sea and relaxing on the beach. In the late afternoon, we spend time walking around the shopping malls. We will visit the Alexandria Library, too.

How to write about holiday destination:

- (اسم المدينة) + is an interesting town Egypt.
- It costs + تكلفة الرحلة + per night, per person in a single/double room.
- There are lots of things to do there.
- You can + (أنشطة تستطيع القيام بها).
- You can also visit + (أشهر المعالم السياحية).

Luxor - an amazing holiday destination

Luxor is an interesting town in south Egypt. It costs LE 500 per night, per person in a double room to visit Luxor. There are lots of things to do there. You can explore the city souks, go on boat trips on the Nile, or get in an air balloon. You can also visit many of the ancient monuments and temples there.



STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التى وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets:

1. If you .... (heat) sugar, it .... (melt).
2. If you .... (feel) tired, you can ....(go) to bed early.
3. When the clouds .... (be) red, it .... (mean) there's dust in the sky.
4. My English always .... (get better) when I .... (study) the lessons again at home.
5. You can .... (tell) me if you .... (need) anything.

2 Put the words in order:

1. buy / two T-shirts, / you / free. / get / one / When / you
   ....
2. don't water / Plants / if / die / you / them.
   ....
3. go / want / by bus. / Cairo, / to go to / If / you / you can
   ....
4. eat / too much cake. / stomach ache / I / if / I can get
   ....
5. we / it / my umbrella. / If / can / rains, / use
   ....
6. sees / a bee, / my cat / tries / to catch / it. / When / she
   ....

3 Complete the sentences with at, in, or on:

1. We celebrate Sham El-Nessim .... spring.
2. Let's meet outside the school .... 10:30 am.
3. We had a science class .... Monday.
4. They went on a trip to the Red Sea .... July.
5. Great news! I'm having a party .... my birthday!
6. What did you do .... the weekend?

Test Yourself 30 UNIT 3





Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Amira likes playing ....
a) football b) basketball c) tennis d) chess

2 Amira practices on .... and Sundays.
a) Fridays b) Mondays c) Saturdays d) Wednesdays

3 The .... is on February 3rd.
a) birthday b) party c) race d) match

4 Amira is very ....
a) sad b) angry c) excited d) tired

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 Should we .... the souks on Tuesday?
a) ride b) explore c) take d) visit

2 Let's .... the Bab Zuwayla minaret first.
a) take b) climb c) go d) come

3 In the carnival, the children's .... has nine rides.
a) train b) park c) class d) section

4 She can't climb up the hill. She's afraid of ....
a) heights b) insects c) planes d) snakes

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

card – biking – money – guide – helmet

Ramy and his dad are going on a quad ....(1)........... trip next Thursday. Ramy finds a company that books these trips. The company will send a ....(2)........... to meet them at the hotel at 11 pm. They'll be in a group of four. To ride a quad bike, Ramy has to wear a ....(3)........... . Ramy's dad will pay for the trip by credit ....(4)........... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 5

Basel and Samer are every excited about their vacation this week. They want to try new places. They will travel to Cairo. They will visit the Manial Palace Museum on Saturday. They want to go to the theme park and ride on a rollercoaster! They also want to go quad biking in the desert in Giza on Sunday. Basel wants to climb the Bab Zuwayla minaret on Monday and Samer wants to take photos. They like to watch the sunset over the city. The next morning, they can explore the souks! They are near the minaret.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about the ....

a) garden b) souk c) vacation d) minaret

2 The underlined word "excited" means ....

a) sad b) happy c) angry d) cold

3 They want to go quad .... in the desert.

a) baking b) packing c) backing d) biking

B Answer the following questions:

4 What will they visit on Saturday? ....

5 Summarize the text in two sentences. ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 3

1 Fridays – Where – on – go – does – she? محافظة المنوفية – إدارة الباجور التعليمية 2024

....

2 good – eat – You – can – food – Sharm El-Sheikh – in.

....

3 things – are – lots of – in Cairo – There – to do.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 2

1 When you study for few hours, you .... (could) concentrate. محافظة القاهرة – إدارة مصر الجديدة التعليمية 2024

2 My father arrived .... (in) six o'clock yesterday. محافظة القاهرة – إدارة عين شمس التعليمية 2024

7 Punctuate the following: 1

Let s go quad biking on monday.

....

8 Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"An amazing holiday destination"

مجاب عنه صفحة 309

What is the place? – What can you do there?

....

....

....

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Unit 3 AL-AZHAR CORNER

تحتوى هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأزهر.

1 Read and complete the dialogue:

photos - try - vacation - Palace - Sunday

Samer : I'm excited about our .... this week.

Basel : Me, too. Why don't we .... new places?

Samer : Yes, we can visit the Manial .... Museum.

Basel : Okay. Let's do it on ....

Samer : We can take .... for our school project there, too.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1 Habiba wants to go quad (cycling – driving – biking) in the desert in Giza.
2 Let's (explore – climb – take) the Bab Zuwayla minaret in Cairo.
3 The (view – vacation – sunset) is when the sun comes down.
4 I don't like exploring the (deserts – places – souks) because I don't like busy places.
5 You need a (bank detail – ticket – theater) to go on the waterfall ride.
6 If you face your fear, you (felt – feeling – feel) happy and proud.
7 They (were – be – are) happy when they meet.
8 Adel was born (in – on – at) 2003.
9 Nadia decided to climb the hill (in – on – at) Tuesday.
10 You (bought – can buy – buying) what you need when you explore the souks.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 on – We – can – early – go – Wednesday.

....

2 it's – If – the bus, – we – take – faster.

....

3 went – I – biking – the – quad – in – desert.

....

4 will – Where – the – meet – guide – us?

....

5 do – When – on – get up – you – days – school?

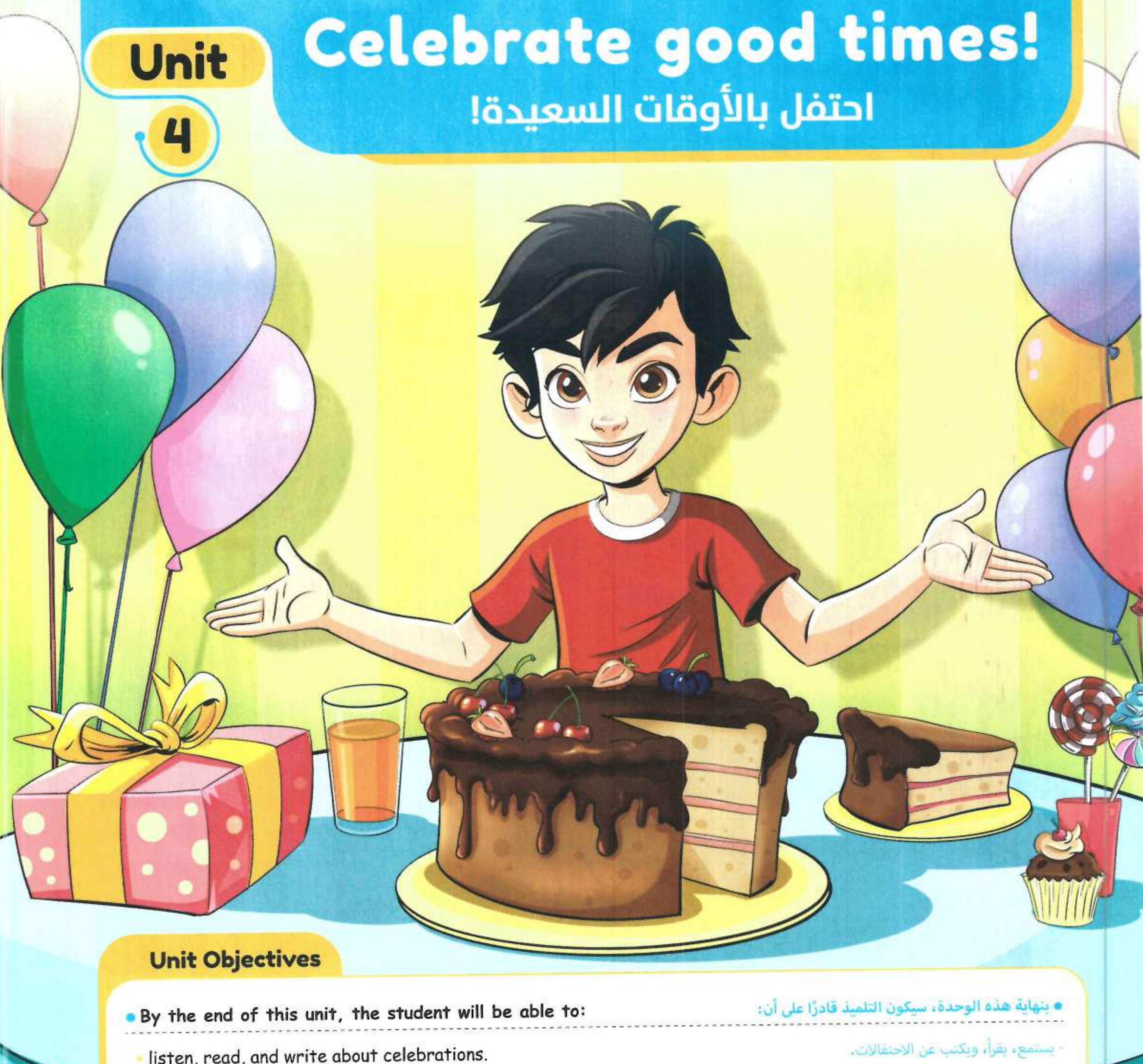
....


Theme
2
Myself and others
نفسى والآخرون

Unit 4

Celebrate good times!

احتفل بالأوقات السعيدة!



Unit Objectives

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:
- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

- listen, read, and write about celebrations.
- يستمع، يقرأ، ويكتب عن الاحتفالات.
- talk about things that are happening at or around the moment of speaking using the present continuous.
- يتحدث عن الأشياء التى تحدث فى أو أثناء لحظة التحدث باستخدام المضارع المستمر.
- understand the meaning of words and phrases in a text.
- يفهم معانى الكلمات والعبارات فى نص.
- learn to estimate volumes.
- يتعلم تقدير الحجم.
- understand the difference between the sounds /ei/ and /e/.
- يفهم الاختلاف بين الأصوات /ei/ و /e/.
- write a formal email invitation.
- يكتب دعوة رسمية عبر البريد الإلكترونى.
- research and make a poster about a celebration.
- يبحث ويصمم ملصقًا عن احتفال.

Did you know?

- In China, people eat *noodles on their birthdays. The noodles are very long to *represent a long life for the person.

Find out!

- The Ancient Egyptians didn't celebrate everyone's birthday. They celebrated the birthdays of the *pharaohs. They also celebrated the pharaohs' *coronation day.

*noodles	شعرية	*represent	تعبر عن/ تمثل	*pharaohs	فراعنة	*coronation	تتويج



Lesson 1
Can you blow up some balloons?
هل يمكنك نفخ بعض البالونات؟





1. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:



Main vocabulary


decorate the birthday cake
يزين كعكة عيد الميلاد


blow up the balloons
ينفخ البالونات


let off the fireworks
يطلق الألعاب النارية


hang up the streamers
يعلق الشرائط


make a playlist
يعد قائمة تشغيل الأغاني


send the invitations
يرسل الدعوات

Extra vocabulary

cousin	ابن العم أو الخال	scissors	مقص
string	خيط	candles	شموع
email invitation	دعوة عبر البريد الإلكتروني	adult	شخص بالغ
yard	حديقة منزل (فناء)	event	حدث

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
pass	يمرر / يناول	passed	tie	يربط	tied
need	يحتاج	needed	help	يساعد	helped
decorate	يزين	decorated	ask	يطلب من / يسأل	asked
finish	ينهي	finished	love	يحب	loved

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
hang up	يعلق	hung up	blow up	ينفخ	blew up
send	يرسل	sent	write	يكتب	wrote
mean	يقصد	meant	choose	يختار	chose
find	يجد	found	let off	يطلق	let off

Expressions and Phrases

Sure. / Of course.	بالطبع.	Good idea.	فكرة رائعة.
I'm not sure yet.	لست متأكدًا بعد.	RSVP	من فضلك، أرسل ردًّا.
have/has to	يجب أن	let me know	يخبرونى
really great	رائع حقًّا	get dark	يظلم

Take care!

- يتغير معنى بعض الأفعال عند إضافة حرف جر ويصبح اسمها (phrasal verb).

e.g. blow up ينفخ - hang up يعلق - let off يطلق

- يتغير الفعل (tie) عند إضافة الـ (ing): تستبدل (ie) بـ "y" ثم نضيف (ing).

tie + ing = tying

- (RSVP) هى اختصار للمصطلح الفرنسى (Répondez s'il vous plait) ويعنى (من فضلك، أرسل ردًّا.).

Tip! **An invitation:** You write it to ask someone to come to a party or event.

الدعوة: تكتبها لتطلب من شخص ما الحضور إلى حفلة أو حدث.

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Everyone is helping for Nesma's birthday. — الكل يساعد فى عيد ميلاد نسمة.
* Youssef is hanging up the streamers. — يوسف يعلق الشرائط.
* Hani is blowing up the balloons. — هانى ينفخ البالونات.
* Dalida and Noha are decorating the cake. — داليدا ونهى يزينان الكعكة.
* Amina is sending the invitations. — أمينة ترسل الدعوات.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1. For the party, I made a/an (cake – playlist – firework – invitation) of the best 20 songs nowadays.
2. Mom likes to (let off – blow up – decorate – hang up) my birthday cake every year.
3. I helped my brother blow up the (streamers – balloons – fireworks – invitations) for the party.
4. They (cook – eat – let – sit) off the fireworks.
5. Are you (cooking – sending – cleaning – blowing) the invitations?
6. My birthday is a special (game – event – stream – yard) for my family.





2. Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Who is the birthday party for? لمن حفلة عيد الميلاد؟



Hani

Hi Youssef, what are you doing?

مرحبًا يوسف، ماذا تفعل؟



Youssef

Hi, Hani. I'm hanging up the streamers for my sister Nesma's party. Can you help me?

مرحبًا هانى، أنا أعلق الشرائط من أجل حفل أختى نسمة. هل بإمكانك مساعدتى؟



Hani

Sure. What can I do, cousin?

بالتأكيد. ماذا يمكننى أن أفعل يا ابن عمى؟







Youssef

Will you pass me the scissors, please? I'm tying the streamers together and I need to cut the string. Can you also blow up some balloons? We need to hang those up, too.

هلا مررت لى المقص، من فضلك؟ أنا أربط الشرائط معًا وأحتاج أن أقطع الخيط. هل يمكنك أيضًا نفخ بعض البالونات؟ نحتاج إلى أن نعلقها أيضًا.

Hani

Of course! What are your other sisters doing? Are they helping?

بالطبع! ماذا تفعل أخواتك الأخريات؟ هل يساعدن؟







Youssef

Dalida and Noha? Yes, they are. They're decorating the birthday cake. They have candles for it, too. Oh, there's Amina. Amina! Are you sending the invitations?

داليدا ونهى؟ نعم. إنهما تزينان كعكة (تورتة) عيد الميلاد. لديهما شموع من أجل الكعك أيضًا. أوه، ها هى أمينة. أمينة! هل تقومين بإرسال الدعوات؟

Amina

Hi Youssef. Yes, I am. But I'm sending everyone email invitations.

مرحبًا يوسف. نعم. لكنى أرسل دعوات بالبريد الإلكترونى للجميع.





Good idea. How many people are coming?

فكرة رائعة. كم عدد الناس القادمين؟



I'm not sure yet, but I wrote "RSVP" on the invitations. That means everyone has to let me know if they're coming.

لست متأكدة بعد، لكني كتبت «من فضلك، أرسل ردًا» على الدعوات. هذا يعني أنه يجب على الجميع إخباري إذا كانوا قادمين.




Hani

Who's choosing the music?

من يقوم باختيار الموسيقى؟



Dalida is going to make a playlist on her phone. She made one for my party and it was really great.

ستقوم داليدا بإعداد قائمة تشغيل أغاني على هاتفها. لقد أعدت واحدة لحفلتي وكانت رائعة حقًا.





That's right. It was really good. We can ask her to make it after she finishes the cake.

هذا صحيح. كانت جيدة حقًا. يمكننا أن نطلب منها أن تعدها بعد أن تنتهي من الكعكة (التورتة).



And we need to find an adult to let off the fireworks in the yard when it gets dark.

ونحتاج إلى نجد شخصًا بالغًا ليطلق الألعاب النارية في حديقة المنزل عندما يحل الظلام.





Yes, Nesma loves them. I know, I'll ask my dad to do it.

نعم، نسمة تحبهم. أعرف، سأطلب من والدي أن يفعل ذلك.



Lesson 1

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 They are having a .... party today for Rana.
a) school b) birthday c) dish d) family

2 .... is blowing up the balloons.
a) Fatma b) Eman c) Mazen d) Mai

3 My sister Eman is sending .... to our friends.
a) photos b) streamers c) email invitations d) balloons

4 Mai is making the playlist on the ....
a) tablet b) laptop c) computer d) phone

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 It is Ahmed's birthday party. We are hanging up the .... كفر الشيخ - إدارة دسوق 2024
a) fireworks b) cakes c) invitations d) streamers

2 You write a/an .... to ask a friend to come to a party or event.
a) decoration b) order c) invention d) invitation

3 If you have a problem, you can ask a/an .... for help.
a) baby b) kid c) child d) adult

4 Can you .... up the balloons? الجيزة - إدارة كرداسة 2024
a) cut b) blow c) send d) write

5 Ola is going to make a/an .... on her phone. She really likes music.
a) album b) playlist c) streamer d) string

6 We need an adult to let off the .... in the sky. المنوفية - إدارة شبين الكوم 2024
a) candles b) fireworks c) fans d) cakes

7 I need .... to tie the balloons together.
a) scissors b) string c) candles d) fireworks

8 We use .... to cut paper. الجيزة - إدارة البدرشين 2024
a) steamers b) strings c) scissors d) pencils

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

blew – decorated – amazing – invitations – dark

المنوفية - إدارة شبين الكوم 2024

Last week was my sister's birthday party. It was in our garden. The party was ....(1)............ and my sister was very happy. We all helped my sister. My mother ....(2)............ the birthday cake. I sent the ....(3)............ . All her friends came and gave her presents. My brother ....(4)............ up the balloons. My father hung up the streamers.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

الجيزة - إدارة البدرشين 2024

Today, we are having a nice party. It's for my sister's birthday. I'm hanging up the streamers for my sister's party. My brother is blowing up some balloons. My mom is making a nice cake. Dalia and Noha are decorating the birthday cake. We have 10 candles to show my sister's age. My father is sending the invitations to our friends. My cousin Sara is going to make a playlist on her phone. She made one for my party and it was really great.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Today, we're having a ....

a) school b) birthday party c) fun d) break

2 My sister is .... years old.

a) nine b) six c) ten d) fifteen

3 My .... is sending the invitations.

a) mom b) friends c) brother d) dad

B Answer the following questions:

4 What is mom making?

....

5 Who is decorating the birthday cake?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 for – party – my – a playlist – Dalida – made.

....

2 Hany – blowing – is – up – balloons – the.

الشرقية - إدارة كفر صقر 2024

....

3 you – me – the scissors, – Will – pass – please?

....

4 hanging – my – I'm – up – for – the streamers – sister.

....

6 Punctuate the following:

1 how many people are coming

دمياط - إدارة دمياط الجديدة 2024

....

2 i m sending everyone email invitations.

....





Lesson 2





I'm studying hard for my exams أنا أدرس بجد من أجل امتحاناتى



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

news	أخبار	hard	بجد	exams	امتحانات
indoors	فى الداخل (بالمنزل)	revision	مراجعة	documentary	فيلم وثائقى

Extra vocabulary

important (adj.)	هام	exercise	تمارين	already	بالفعل
Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	reader	قارئ	history	تاريخ
free time	وقت فراغ	Egyptian celebrations	احتفالات مصرية	music concert	حفلة موسيقية
silly (adj.)	سخيف	armchair	كرسى بذراعين	left (adj.)	متبقى

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
study	يدرس	studied	worry	يقلق	worried
cycle	يقود دراجة	cycled	relax	يسترخى	relaxed
organize	ينظم	organized	practice	يتمرن	practiced

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
spend	يقضى	spent	tell	يخبر	told
show	يعرض	showed	say	يقول	said
wear	يرتدى	wore	read	يقرأ	read

Expressions and Phrases

What's your news?	ما أخبارك	study hard	يذاكر بجدٍّ
How are things?	كيف حالك؟	at the moment	فى الوقت الحال
don't worry	لا تقلق	spend time	يقضى وقتًا
get outside	يذهب إلى الخارج	do exercise	يتمرن
go running	يمارس رياضة الجرى	on the weekends	فى إجازات نهاية الأسبوع
a few times a week	بضع مرات فى الأسبوع	have fun	يستمتع
look forward to	يتطلع إلى	What's the weather like?	ما حال الطقس؟
take ages	يستغرق وقتًا طويلًا	What about you?	ماذا عنك؟
feel a bit better	يشعر بتحسن قليل	wait a moment	انتظرى لحظة
great fun	ممتعة للغاية	you're right about that	أنتِ على حق فى ذلك
as usual	كالمعتاد	get ... ready	يعد / يجهز



كلمة (DVD) هى اختصار لـ (Digital Video Disc) وتعنى قرصًا متعدد الاستخدامات.



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

From:	ali@qwikmail.com
To:	eyad@egyptmail.com
Subject:	What's your news? ما أخبارك؟



Hi Eyad,
How are things?
I'm studying hard for my exams at the moment. But don't worry, I'm not spending all my time indoors! I know it's important to get outside and do some exercise, so I'm going running every morning in the park. I'm also cycling on the weekends with my dad. I'm trying to see my friends a few times a week, too – it's good to relax and have fun sometimes, and we try not to talk about how our revision is going! My friend Asser is organizing a party at his house for the end of the exams, so we are all looking forward to that.

مرحبًا إياد
كيف حالك؟
أنا أذاكر بجد لامتحاناتى فى الوقت الحالى. لكن لا تقلق، أنا لا أقضى كل وقتى فى المنزل! أعلم أنه من المهم الذهاب إلى الخارج وممارسة بعض التمارين، لذلك أمارس رياضة الجرى كل صباح فى الحديقة. أنا أيضًا أقوم بركوب الدراجات فى إجازات نهاية الأسبوع مع والدى. أحاول رؤية أصدقائى بضع مرات فى الأسبوع أيضًا. من الجيد الاسترخاء والاستمتاع أحيانًا، ونحاول ألا نتحدث عن كيف تسير المراجعة! ينظم صديقى آسر حفلة فى منزله احتفالًا بنهاية الامتحانات، لذلك نتطلع جميعًا إلى ذلك.

What's the weather like in Alexandria? It's really hot here already!

كيف حال الطقس فى الإسكندرية؟ الجو حار حقًّا هنا بالفعل!

In your last email, you asked me what I'm reading at the moment. I'm finishing *Everything in Ancient Egypt* but it's taking ages because I'm a slow reader! I am enjoying it – I love history books – and the documentary is good, too (my mom said she will get me the DVD).
What about you? What are you reading?
Write soon and tell me your news,
Ali

فى رسالتك الإلكترونية الأخيرة، سألتنى عما أقرؤه حاليًا. أنتهى الآن من كتاب «كل شىء فى مصر القديمة» ولكن الأمر يستغرق وقتًا طويلاً لأننى قارئ بطىء! أنا أستمتع به - أحب كتب التاريخ - والأفلام الوثائقية جيدة أيضًا. (قالت أمى إنها ستحضر لى DVD). ماذا عنك؟ ماذا تقرأ؟
اكتب قريبًا وأخبرنى عن أحوالك،
على

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1. Ali goes (fishing – swimming – cycling – running) on the weekends.
2. Asser is organizing a (class – revision – post – party) at his house.
3. Mom will get Ali the (computer – DVD – laptop – tablet).



Listening script page 62 

هذا النص مأخوذ من كتاب دليل المعلم.



3. Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:





Nesma

Hi, Salma! How are you?

أهلاً سلمى! كيف حالك؟



Salma

Hi, Nesma. I'm feeling a bit better, thanks. I'm so sorry I couldn't come to your party. Was it fun? Can you show me the photos?

أهلا نسمة. أشعر بتحسن قليل، شكرًا. أنا آسفة جدًّا لأننى لم أتمكن من الحضور إلى حفلتك. هل كانت ممتعة؟ هل يمكنك أن ترينى الصور؟

Nesma

Yes, of course. Wait a moment, they're on my phone. The party was great fun! Look, here we are.

نعم بالطبع. انتظرى لحظة، إنهم على هاتفى. كانت الحفلة متعة كبيرة! انظرى، ها نحن هنا.



Salma

Oh, yes! What are you wearing?

أوه نعم! ما الذى ترتديه؟!



Nesma

I'm wearing a party hat! Do you like it?

أنا أرتدى قبعة الحفلة! هل أعجبتك؟





Salma

It's silly! Let's see some more. What are Noha and Dalia doing there?

سخيفة! هيا نرى المزيد. ماذا تفعل نهى وداليا هناك؟



Nesma

My sisters? They're playing with the balloons! And my cousins, Hani and Youssef, are trying to build a house. They're enjoying it but you can see they aren't very good at it.

أختاى؟ إنهما تلعبان بالبالونات! وابنا عمى هانى ويوسف يحاولان بناء منزل. إنهما يستمتعان ولكن يمكنك أن ترى أنهما ليسا جيدين جدًّا فى ذلك.





Yes, you're right about that! And who is that girl in the red T-shirt? She isn't talking to anyone.

نعم، أنتِ على حق فى ذلك! ومن هى تلك الفتاة ذات التيشرت الأحمر؟ إنها لا تتحدث مع أحد.



Nesma

That's Amina. She's sitting in an armchair reading her book as usual! You know Amina. She's very shy.

هذه أمينة. إنها تجلس على كرسى بذراعين تقرأ كتابها كالمعتاد! أنت تعرف أمينة. إنها خجولة جدًا.



Yes, she is. Where's the food?

نعم هى كذلك. أين الطعام؟



Nesma

You can't see it here. My mom is still getting it ready – you can just see her in the kitchen – look. I have another photo of the birthday cake somewhere ...Yes, here it is.

لن تريه هنا. لا تزال أمى تجهزه - يمكنك فقط رؤيتها فى المطبخ - انظرى. لدى صورة أخرى لكعكة عيد الميلاد فى مكان ما...نعم، ها هى.



Wow, Nesma, it looks amazing! Are those strawberries?

رائع يا نسمة، تبدو مدهشة! هل تلك فراولة؟



Nesma

Yes, they are. And don't worry. There's still some birthday cake left. Let's go to my house and have some now.

نعم هم كذلك. ولا تقلقى، لا يزال بعض كعكة عيد الميلاد متبقيًا دعينا نذهب إلى منزلى ونحصل على البعض الآن.





Language Focus

The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Usage: الاستخدام:

1. We use the present continuous to talk about actions in progress around or near the moment of speaking, often with time phrases like this week, at the moment, and today.

١- نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتحدث عن الأفعال الجارية أثناء أو بالقرب من لحظة التحدث ، غالبًا مع عبارات الوقت مثل "هذا الأسبوع"، "في الوقت الحالي" ، و "اليوم".

e.g. They are organizing a party this week.

2. We also use the present continuous to talk about actions that are happening at the moment of speaking.

٢- نستخدم أيضًا المضارع المستمر للحديث عن الأحداث التي تحدث في لحظة التحدث.

e.g. We are helping to make the birthday cake.

3. We also use the present continuous to describe things that are happening in a picture.

٣- نستخدم أيضًا المضارع المستمر لوصف الأشياء التي تحدث في صورة.

e.g. She isn't talking to anyone.

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

I	am ('m)	+ (inf.) الفعل في المصدر + ing ... .
He/ She/ It	is ('s)	
We/ They/ You	are ('re)	





I am studying for my exams.



They're playing with a balloon.

Negative Form: صيغة النفي:

I	am not ('m not)	+ (inf.) الفعل في المصدر + ing ... .
He/ She/ It	is not (isn't)	
We/ They/ You	are not (aren't)	





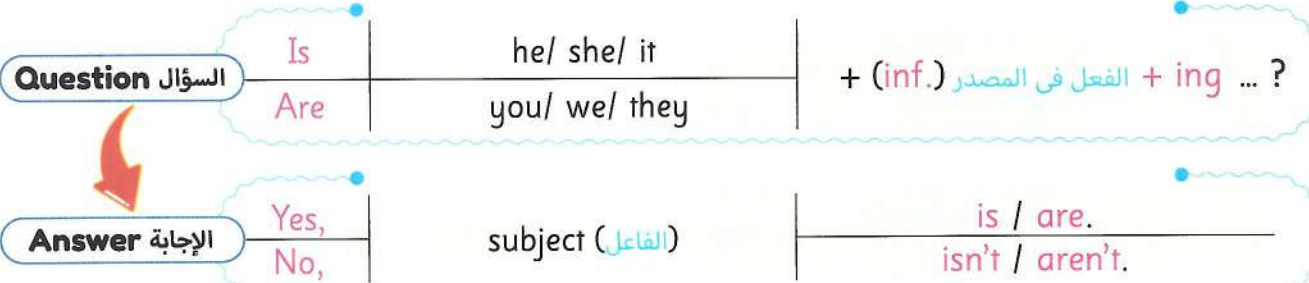
Amr isn't playing basketball. He is studying.



Mom and Ola aren't enjoying their vacation.



Yes/No question: السؤال بـ (هل):



Question السؤال	Is	he/ she/ it	+ (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + ing ... ?
	Are	you/ we/ they	
Answer الإجابة	Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	is / are.
	No,		isn't / aren't.



e.g.

A: Is he staying in France?
B: Yes, he is.



A: Are your cousins studying at home?
B: No, they aren't.



Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Wh- word كلمة الاستفهام	is	he/ she/ it	+ (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + ing ...?
	are	you/ we/ they	



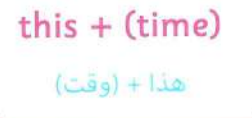
e.g.



A: What is Hani doing?
B: He's reading a book.

A: Where are you having a picnic?
B: We're having a picnic in the park.





Keywords: الكلمات الدالة:

this + (time) هذا + (وقت)	at the moment فى الوقت الحالى	today اليوم	now الآن

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1. I (is – are – am – do) writing a story about my adventures.
2. My brother (am – is – are – does) playing video games with his friends.
3. Dina and Habiba (am – is – are – do) drawing a beautiful picture in the art class.
4. Nader (aren't – isn't – am not – don't) going to the park today.
5. Hany and Hana aren't eating breakfast (always – now – yesterday – ago).
6. Are we (have – has – having – had) online class today?
7. (Does – Do – Is – Are) Mom listening to music?
8. How (is – are – does – do) your friend feeling now?
9. When are you (study – studying – studies – studied) for the test?
10. Where are they going (last – today – often – usually)?



Lesson 2

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 My father likes history, so he always watches .... movies.
a) cartoon b) adventure c) sport d) documentary

2 I have to clean the house and .... my books.
a) cycle b) exercise c) organize d) say

3 .... is my favorite subject. I like to learn about ancient Egypt.
a) Science b) History c) Math d) Arabic

4 Hani is a great .... He always goes to the library to borrow books.
a) climber b) reader c) teacher d) worker

5 Dad bought a new bike for Eslam because he likes ....
a) running b) hanging c) diving d) cycling

6 To get high marks, you should make a/an .... before exams.
a) exercise b) concert c) revision d) weather

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

indoors – exams – reading – outside – going

Yara is a student in grade six. She's studying hard for her ....(1)............ at the moment. She's not spending all her time ....(2)............ studying. She knows it's important to go ....(3)............ and do some exercise. She's trying to see her friends a few times a week. She also reads books. She's ....(4)............ "*Everything in Ancient Egypt*" at the moment because she loves history books.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 sister – My – cooking – food – some – is.

....

2 not – I'm – indoors – spending – my time – all.

....

3 this – What – Malak – doing – are – week, – you?

....

4 my dad – cycling – weekend – I'm – this – with.

....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Hana .... (take) a photo at the moment. محافظة دمياط – إدارة دمياط الجديدة التعليمية 2024
2. We .... (eat) our lunch at the moment. محافظة دمياط 2024
3. They .... (is) coming from school now. محافظة دمياط – إدارة الروضة التعليمية 2024
4. We .... (goes) to the theater to watch a play now. محافظة المنوفية – إدارة شبين الكوم التعليمية 2024
5. Mom .... (are) baking a chocolate cake.
6. What are you .... (do) now? محافظة المنيا – إدارة بنى مزار التعليمية 2024
7. He .... (don't) playing football now. He's studying.
8. I .... (be make) a playlist for the birthday party at the moment.
9. A: What .... (they are) doing now? B: They are playing football.
10. The girls .... (cycling) in the park at the moment.
11. .... (Be) you studying English at the moment?
12. I .... (finish) the book now.
13. What .... (he is) doing there?
14. A: Are you exercising today? B: Yes, ... (you are).
15. I .... (not eat) a cake now. I'm eating biscuits.

5 Punctuate the following:

I m reading at the moment

....

6 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words to your friend Nader to tell him about your exams. Your name is Amr and your email address is amr@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is nader@gmail.com.

مجاب عنه صفحة 309

study hard – get outside – at night

From : ....

To : ....

Subject : ....

.... ,

....

....

....

....

....



Lesson 3





A Birthdays around the world أعيـاد الميـلاد حول العالم



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

candles	شموع	present	هدية	birthday cards	بطاقات عيد الميلاد
breath	نفس	guests	ضيوف	noodles	شعرية

Extra vocabulary

party food	طعام الحفلات	age	عمر / سن	countries	دول
USA	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية	Britain	بريطانيا	South Africa	جنوب إفريقيا
Holland	هولندا	Nigeria	نيجيريا	India	الهند
Brazil	البرازيل	peaches	خوخ	Chinese (adj.)	صينى
fire	حريق	flame	لهب	birthday celebrations	احتفالات عيد الميلاد
flour	دقيق	traditions	تقاليد		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present	Past	Present	Past
celebrate يحتفل	celebrated	invite يدعو	invited

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
blow out ينفخ (يطفئ الشمع)	blew out	burn يحرق	burnt

Expressions and Phrases

all over the world	جميع أنحاء العالم	have a party	يقيم حفلة
It is usual	من المعتاد أن	with one breath	فى نفس واحد
left to burn	يُتركوا حتى يحترقوا	a long life	حياة طويلة
fully grown	ناضج تمامًا	come out of	يخرج من



Definitions

adults	الأشخاص البالغون	fully grown people, not children	أشخاص بالغون تمامًا، وليسوا أطفالًا
blow out	ينفخ	to send air through your mouth to stop a fire or flame	أن تخرج الهواء عبر فمك لإيقاف حريق أو لهب
breath	نفس	the air that comes out of your mouth	الهواء الذى يخرج من فمك
noodles	شعرية	a long, thin piece of food made from flour, water, and eggs	قطعة طويلة ورفيعة من الطعام مصنوعة من الدقيق والماء والبيض
guests	ضيوف	people you invite to your home	الأشخاص الذين تدعوهم إلى منزلك

Take care!

لاحظ الفرق بين

- (breath) وهو اسم بمعنى (نفس) وتنطق الـ(th) /θ/.
- (breathe) وهى فعل بمعنى (يتنفس) وتنطق الـ(th) /ð/.



2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Our birthday celebrations احتفالات أعياد ميلادنا



1 Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. What do we do in Egypt? We usually make birthday cakes for our children and put candles on them to show their age. We often have parties with a lot of family and friends. The children usually get a present, too.

يتم الاحتفال بأعياد الميلاد فى جميع أنحاء العالم. ماذا نفعل فى مصر؟ عادة ما نصنع كعكات أعياد الميلاد لأطفالنا ونضع الشموع عليها لإظهار أعمارهم. غالبًا ما نقيم حفلات مع الكثير من أفراد العائلة والأصدقاء. عادة ما يحصل الأطفال على هدية أيضًا.

Birthdays are not just for children أعياد الميلاد ليست فقط للأطفال



2 What about in other countries? In the USA and Britain, it is usual to give good friends and family presents on their birthdays even when they are adults. People often give other people birthday cards too, especially on important birthdays. In South Africa, 21 is an important birthday because you become an adult at this age. In Holland, children get bigger presents when they are 5, 10, 15 or 20. In Nigeria, the most important birthdays are when someone is one, 10, and 15.

ماذا عن البلدان الأخرى؟ من المعتاد فى الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية وبريطانيا تقديم هدايا للأصدقاء والعائلة فى أعياد ميلادهم حتى لو كانوا بالغين. غالبًا ما يقدم الأشخاص للآخرين بطاقات أعياد ميلاد أيضًا، خاصة فى أعياد الميلاد المهمة. فى جنوب إفريقيا، عيد الميلاد رقم ٢١ هو عيد ميلاد مهم لأنك أصبحت بالغًا فى هذا العمر. فى هولندا، يحصل الأطفال على هدايا أكبر عندما يبلغون من العمر ٥ أو ١٠ أو ١٥ أو ٢٠ عامًا. فى نيجيريا، الأعياد الأكثر أهمية هى عيد الميلاد الأول وعند بلوغ سن ١٠ و ١٥.

Blow or burn the candles انفخ الشموع أو أحرقها



3 In many countries, children like to blow out the candles on their birthday cakes. It is good to do this with one breath! But in India, the candles are left to burn. Did you know that when it is a child's birthday in Brazil, they give the first piece of their birthday cake to the most important people in their family? That's their mom and dad! In India too, the birthday child gives cake to all the guests at their party first, before they have some themselves.

فى العديد من البلدان، يحب الأطفال إطفاء الشموع فى كعكات عيد ميلادهم. من الجيد أن تفعل هذا بنفس واحد! لكن فى الهند، تُترك الشموع لتحترق. هل تعلم أنه عندما يجيء عيد ميلاد الطفل فى البرازيل، فإنهم يقدمون القطعة الأولى من كعك عيد ميلادهم إلى الأشخاص الأكثر أهمية فى أسرتهم: (الأم والأب)؟ فى الهند أيضًا، يقدم طفل عيد الميلاد كعكًا لجميع الضيوف فى حفلتهم أولًا، قبل أن يحصل على بعض منها.

A longer life حياة أطول



Some countries have different birthday food. In China, people like to eat long noodles or peaches on their birthday. Why? Because they think that these can give you a long life. And Chinese people are often older. Why? Because they become one on the day they are born. So if you are 10, a Chinese child is 11!

بعض البلدان لديها طعام عيد ميلاد مختلف. فى الصين، يحب الناس تناول الشعرية أو الخوخ فى عيد ميلادهم. لماذا؟ لأنهم يعتقدون أنها يمكن أن تمنحهم حياة طويلة. والشعب الصينى غالبًا ما يكون أكبر سنًّا. لماذا؟ لأنهم يبلغون من العمر عامًا واحدًا يوم ولادتهم. لذا إذا كنت فى العاشرة من عمرك، فإن الطفل الصينى هو فى الحادية عشرة من عمره!

Check

1 How do we celebrate birthdays in Egypt? ....

2 Why is 21 an important birthday in South Africa? ....

3 Why do people in China like to eat long noodles? ....

Tip! To match headings to paragraphs in a text, look for keywords first. What is the topic of the keywords in each paragraph? Then look at the headings. Are there any words that are the same or are about the same topics?

لمطابقة العناوين بالفقرات فى النص، ابحث عن الكلمات الرئيسية أولًا. ما هو موضوع الكلمات الرئيسية فى كل فقرة؟ ثم انظر إلى العناوين. هل هناك كلمات متطابقة أو تتحدث عن نفس المواضيع؟



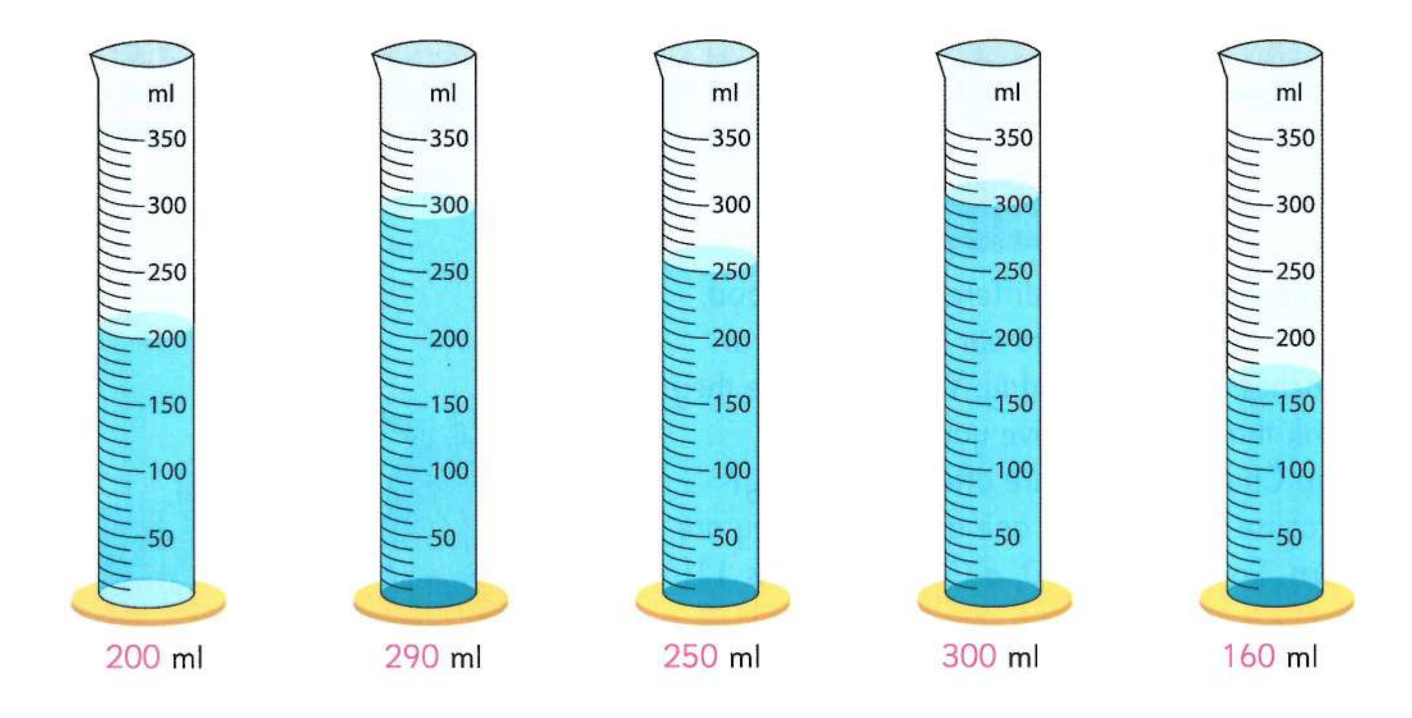
CLIL: Math



3. Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

Estimating volume تقدير الحجم

Estimate how much water is in each one. How much water is there in total?



There's about 1200 ml of water in total.

Tip! When we talk about the amount of something, we don't always need to be exact. We can estimate, or guess, the amount. For example, if your mom asks you, "How much milk is there in the fridge?" You can say, "There's about half a liter," not, "There's 487 milliliters." We often use the word "about" when giving an estimation.

عندما نتحدث عن مقدار شيء ما، لا نحتاج دائمًا إلى أن نكون دقيقين. يمكننا تقدير الكمية أو تخمينها. على سبيل المثال، إذا سألتك والدتك: «ما كمية الحليب الموجودة في الثلاجة؟» يمكنك أن تقول: «هناك حوالى نصف لتر» وليس «هناك ٤٨٧ مليلترًا.» غالبًا ما نستخدم كلمة «حوالى» عند إعطاء تقدير.



Pronunciation

Short and long vowels أصوات الحروف المتحركة القصيرة والطويلة



4. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



/ei/

cake	كعكة (تورتة)	train	قطار	say	يقول
bake	يخبز	pay	يدفع	stay	يبقى
wait	ينتظر	main	رئيسي	shade	ظل
sail	يبحر	pain	ألم	plate	طبق
tasty	لذيذ				

/e/

bed	سرير	head	رأس	shed	كوخ
bread	خبز	get	يحصل على	ledge	الحافة / رف
said	قال	men	رجال	sell	يبيع
pen	قلم جاف	let	يدع	desk	مكتب

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 There's a/an (oven – bed – train – fridge) and a table in the bedroom.

2 I have to (say – wait – said – bake) for my sister. We go home together.

3 We traveled to Aswan by (train – bike – motorbike – foot).



Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 People celebrate birthdays with birthday cakes and .... on them.
a) sticks b) streamers c) strings d) candles

2 In ...., people like to eat peaches on their birthdays.
a) USA b) China c) Nigeria d) India

3 Long noodles give you a .... life.
a) happy b) rich c) long d) sad

4 People in China are .... because they become one on the day they are born.
a) taller b) longer c) happier d) older

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 .... are people you invite to your home. المنوفية - إدارة أشمون 2024
a) Books b) Trees c) Guests d) Pens

2 Men wear galabeyas as a/an ....
a) celebration b) event c) tradition d) birthday

3 .... are a long, thin piece of food made from flour, water, and eggs. القاهرة - عين شمس 2024
a) Peaches b) Noodles c) Fish d) Presents

4 .... are fully grown people, not children. المنوفية - إدارة أشمون 2024
a) Adults b) Children c) Boys d) Girls

5 Children like to .... the candles on the birthday cake.
a) blow out b) hang up c) let off d) breathe

6 The number of candles on a birthday cake shows a person's ....
a) shape b) age c) family d) friends

7 I think the tools are in the ....
a) shade b) bed c) shed d) head

8 I want to .... a boat on the Nile.
a) sell b) wait c) sail d) stay

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

long – presents – birthday – guests – candles

القاهرة - إدارة المطرية 2024

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. What do we do in Egypt? We usually make ....(1)............ cakes for our children. We put ....(2)............ on them to show their age. We often have parties with a lot of ....(3)............ . The guests come and bring ....(4)............ with them. We decorate the house and play the playlist to sing and dance together.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Birthday <u>celebrations</u> are not the same everywhere. In Egypt, we make birthday cakes for our children and put candles on them to show their age. In many countries, children like to blow out the candles on their birthday cakes. It is good to do this with one breath! But in India, the candles are left to burn. In India too, the birthday child gives cake to all the guests at their party first, before they have some themselves. In Brazil, they give the first piece of their birthday cake to the most important people in their family: their mom and dad!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The underlined word "celebrations" means ....

a) games b) parties c) candles d) travels

2 Children like to .... the candles on their birthday cakes.

a) hang up b) let off c) give away d) blow out

3 In ...., the candles are left to burn.

a) Brazil b) India c) Egypt d) USA

B Answer the following questions:

4 How do people in Egypt celebrate birthdays?

....

5 Summarize the text in two sentences.

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 world – the – all – Birthdays – are celebrated – over.

الجيزة - إدارة الحوامدية 2024

....

2 21 – in – important – South Africa – is – birthday – an.



3 blow out – Children – candles – like – to – the.

....

4 10, – If – 11 – is – a Chinese – you're – child!

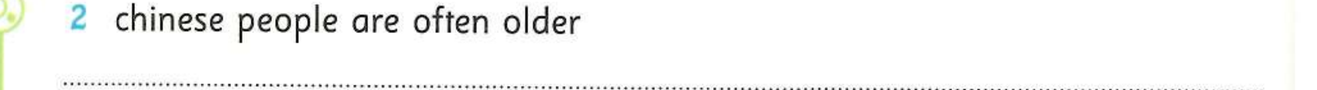
....

6 Punctuate the following:

1 In china, people like to eat long noodles

....

2 chinese people are often older





Lessons 4 & 5





1. Listen and say:





Main vocabulary

Main vocabulary

formal (adj.)	رسمى	celebration	احتفال	Mother's Day	عيد الأم
local community	المجتمع المحلى	opening phrase	عبارة افتتاحية	closing phrase	عبارة ختامية
character	شخصية	prize	جائزة	costume	زى تنكرى

Extra vocabulary

polite (adj.)	مؤدب	dear	عزيزى/ عزيزتى	special (adj.)	مميز/ خاص
event	حدث	details	تفاصيل	school hall	قاعة المدرسة
email address	عنوان البريد الإلكترونى	reason	سبب	request	طلب
poster	ملصق	design	تصميم	family members	أفراد الأسرة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعــال منتظمــة

Present		Past	Present		Past
receive	يتسلم	received	attend	يحضر	attended
invite	يدعو	invited	reply	يرد	replied
organize	ينظم	organized	confirm	يؤكد	confirmed

Expressions and Phrases

(be) addressed to ...	موجه لـ ...	as well as	بالإضافة إلى
by February 20	قبل العشرين من شهر فبراير	yours sincerely	تفضلوا بقبول فائق الاحترام
dress up	يرتدى ملابس (يتنكر)	figure out	يكتشف

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1. I have to wear (casual – jeans – formal – informal) clothes to work.
2. I give my mother a present on (Book Day – Mother's Day – School Day – Child's Day).
3. I need your (bag – house – address – book) to send you the order.
4. "Harry Potter" is my favorite (friend – character – event – reason) in the story.





2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

From:	celebrationgroup@newschool.com
To:	Mr Ahmed Hegazy
Subject:	Mother's Day Celebration

Dear Mr Ahmed,

I am writing to invite you to our school's Mother's Day celebration this year. We are organizing a special day for the event on Sunday March 21 (details below). As well as students and teachers, we are inviting people from the local community who often help our school. We very much hope you can attend.

Date: Sunday March 21

Time 4:00 pm – 7:00 pm

Location: School Hall

RSVP in writing to the email address above

Please reply by February 20 to confirm if you can attend the celebration.

Yours sincerely,

Randa Gamal

Happy Mother's Day

عزيزى، السيد أحمد

أكتب إليكم لأدعوكم إلى احتفال مدرستنا بعيد الأم لهذا العام. ننظم يومًا خاصًا للحدث يوم الأحد ٢١ مارس (التفاصيل أدناه). بالإضافة إلى الطلاب والمعلمين، ندعو الناس من المجتمع المحلى الذين غالبًا ما يساعدون مدرستنا. نأمل بشدة أن تتمكن من الحضور.

التاريخ: الأحد ٢١ مارس

الوقت: ٠٠:٤ مساءً - ٠٠:٧ مساءً

المكان: قاعة المدرسة

يرجى الرد على دعوة الحضور كتابيًا على عنوان البريد الإلكترونى أعلاه، يرجى الرد قبل ٢٠ فبراير لتأكيد ما إذا كان بإمكانك حضور الاحتفال.

تفضلوا بقبول فائق الاحترام،

راندا جمال

Check

1. Who is the invitation addressed to? .... SB
2. What is the celebration? .... SB
3. When and where is the celebration? .... SB

Tip! We use formal language when we speak or write to people we don't know very well.

- نستخدم لغة رسمية عندما نتحدث أو نكتب إلى أشخاص لا نعرفهم جيدًا.

We use polite language, correct spelling, and grammar in formal writing.

- نستخدم لغة مهذبة وقواعد إملاء وقواعد لغوية صحيحة في الكتابة الرسمية.

Formal language لغة رسمية		Informal language لغة غير رسمية	
Sincerely,	تفضلوا بقبول فائق الاحترام،	Bye for now,	وداعا الآن،
Dear,	عزيزي،	Hi!	أهلًا!
celebration	احتفال	party	حفلة
attend	يحضر	come to	يأتي إلى
confirm	يؤكد على	say yes or no	يقول نعم أو لا

How to write an invitation in a formal language
كيف تكتب دعوة بلغة رسمية

From:	عنوان البريد الإلكترونى الخاص بالمرسل
To:	عنوان البريد الإلكترونى للشخص الذى تدعوه
Subject:	عنـوان الدعـوة (مناسبة الدعوة)

Opening phrase **عبارة افتتاحيــة**

Dear Mr Ahmed,

Reason for writing (What the celebration is for): **(سبب الكتابة)**

I am writing to invite you to our school's Mother's Day celebration this year.

Where it is **المكان**

Location: School Hall

When it is (time and date) **الوقت**

Date: Sunday March 21

Time: 4:00 pm – 7:00 pm

A request (When the person has to reply): **طلب**

Please reply by February 20

Closing phrase **عبارة ختامية**

Yours sincerely,

توقيع (اسم) الراسل

Randa Gamal



Project



3. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Book Day Party!

Let's celebrate reading!
Dress up as your favorite character
from your favorite book.
Figure out which character your friends are
from the clothes they are wearing.
We have an amazing prize for the
best costume.
Come and try our drinks
and delicious snacks!
Thursday, 2 pm, in the school hall
Family members all welcome!

حفلة يوم الكتاب!
دعونا نحتفل بالقراءة!
تنكر في زي شخصيتك المفضلة من كتابك المفضل.
اكتشف شخصية أصدقائك من الملابس التي يرتدونها.
لدينا جائزة مذهلة لأفضل زي تنكري.
تعال وجرب مشروباتنا ووجباتنا الخفيفة اللذيذة!
الخميس الساعة ٢ ظهرًا بقاعة المدرسة
نرحب بكل أفراد العائلة!



Practice Lessons 4 & 5

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Please, call me to .... if you can come or not.
a) confirm b) forget c) hope d) sail

2 Next week is our school's Mother's Day .... دمياط 2024
a) celebration b) information c) pollution d) population

3 We are wearing .... in the party. محافظة القليوبية - إدارة غرب شبرا 2024
a) costumes b) celebrations c) fireworks d) invitations

4 Book Day is a great .... to celebrate.
a) tradition b) prize c) poster d) event

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

snacks – prize – dress – Mother's – Book

I'm Sara. I'm in grade six. I like reading. I will attend the ....(1)............ Day party. I will go with my friends. We will ....(2)............ up as our favorite characters from our favorite books. There is an amazing ....(3)............ for the best costume. There are drinks and delicious ....(4)............ at the party. The party will be next Thursday.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

I'm Eman. I'm an English teacher. At school, we are inviting some people to attend the Mother's Day celebration this year. We are organizing a special day for the event on Sunday March 21. We love our school and our students. As well as students and teachers, we are inviting people from the local community who often help our school. Students will dress up as their favorite characters from their favorite books. We will have an amazing prize for the best costume. Some students will sing some traditional songs.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Eman is a teacher of ....
a) Arabic b) English c) math d) science

2 The underlined word "attend" means ....
a) celebrate b) read about c) come to d) say yes or no

3 We are .... people from the local community.
a) teaching b) speaking c) drawing d) inviting



B Answer the following questions:

4 When is the celebration?

....

5 Summarize the text in two sentences.

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 attend – can – celebration – the – You.

....

2 local community – people – the – We – from – are – inviting.

....

3 a prize – the best – We – costume – have – for. الدقهلية - إدارة غرب المنصورة 2024

....

4 are – We – special – a – day – organizing.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

let's celebrate reading

....

6 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words to your teacher Mr Amr inviting him to the Book Day Party. Your name is Nesma and your email address is nesma@gmail.com. Your teacher's email is amr@gmail.com.

مجاب عنه صفحة 310

organize – local community – very happy

From : ....

To : ....

Subject : ....

.... ,

....

....

....

....

....

Unit 4 REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التى وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

decorate the birthday cake يزين كعكة عيد ميلاد	blow up the balloons ينفخ البالونات
let off the fireworks يطلق الألعاب النارية	hang up the streamers يعلق الشرائط
make a playlist يعد قائمة تشغيل الأغانى	send the invitation يرسل الدعوات
scissors مقص	string خيط
candles شموع	adult شخص بالغ
yard حديقة منزل (فناء)	event حدث
cousin ابن العم / الخال	email invitation دعوة عبر البريد الإلكترونى

Lesson (2)

hard بجد	exams امتحانات
revision مراجعة	documentary فيلم وثائق
indoors بالداخل	news أخبار
important هام	exercise تمارين
reader قارئ	history تاريخ
free time وقت الفراغ	music concert حفلة موسيقية
Egyptian celebrations احتفالات مصرية	silly سخيف

Lesson (3)

birthday cards بطاقات عيد الميلاد	breath نفس
guests ضيوف	noodles شعرية
flame لهب	fire حريق
Chinese صينى	USA الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية
party food طعام الحفلات	age عمر
peaches خوخ	shade ظل
plate طبق	shed كوخ
ledge حافة / رف	tasty لذيذ

Lessons (4 & 5)

formal رسمى	local community المجتمع المحلى
opening phrase جملة افتتاحية	closing phrase جملة ختامية
character شخصية	costume زى تنكرى
prize جائزة	Mother's Day عيد الأم
polite مؤدب	dear عزيزى
school hall قاعة المدرسة	email address عنوان البريد الألكترونى
request طلب	poster ملصق
design تصميم	reason سبب

Language Focus



The Present Continuous Tense

Affirmative Form:

I	am ('m)	+ (inf.) + ing ... .
He/ She/ It	is ('s)	
We/ They/ You	are ('re)	

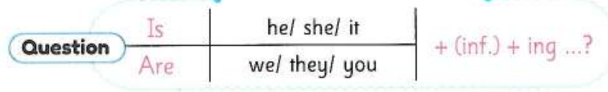
e.g. She's studying for her exams this week.

Negative Form:

I	am not ('m not)	+ (inf.) + ing ... .
He/ She/ It	is not (isn't)	
We/ They/ You	are not (aren't)	

e.g. They aren't enjoying their vacation.

Yes/No question



Question			
	Is	he/ she/ it	+ (inf.) + ing ...?
	Are	we/ they/ you	

Answer			
	Yes,	subject	is/ are.
	No,		isn't/ aren't.

e.g. A: Is he working in France? B: Yes, he is.

Wh- question

Wh- word	is/ are	subject	+ (inf.)+ ing ...?

e.g. A: What are you doing? B: I'm reading a book.





تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

ابن العم / الخال	....	يزين كعكة عيد الميلاد	....
خيط	....	ينفخ البالونات	....
مقص	....	يطلق الألعاب النارية	....
شموع	....	يعلق الشرائط	....
شخص ناضج	....	يعد قائمة تشغيل أغانى	....
حدث	....	يرسل الدعوات	....

Lesson 2

بجد	....	امتحانات	....
فى الداخل (بالمنزل)	....	هام	....
مراجعة	....	بالفعل	....
تاريخ	....	فيلم وثائقى	....
وقت فراغ	....	قارئ	....

Lesson 3

بطاقات عيد الميلاد	....	شموع	....
شعرية	....	ضيوف	....
دول	....	العمر (السن)	....
نَفَس	....	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية	....
ظل	....	جنوب إفريقيا	....
طعام الحفلات	....	نيجيريا	....
كوخ	....	الهند	....
صينى	....	بالغون	....
لهب	....	حريق	....
تقاليد	....	حرارة	....

Lessons 4 & 5

المجتمع المحلى	....	رسمى	....
عيد الأم	....	عبارة افتتاحية	....
جائزة	....	زى تنكرى	....
عبارة ختامية	....	شخصية	....

WRITING TIME





لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about birthday preparations:

- Today is + اسم شخص + birthday.
- (اسم شخص) + is + (نشاط يساعد به الشخص فى عيد الميلاد)
- (أشخاص) + are + (نشاط يساعد به هؤلاء الأشخاص فى عيد الميلاد)
- A lot of people are coming today. It's going to be fun.

"My sister's birthday"

Today is my sister Hana's birthday. Mom is decorating the birthday cake. My brother and I are hanging up the streamers. My cousin Adel is blowing up the balloons. Dad is sending the invitations. He is making a playlist for the party, too. A lot of people are coming today. It's going to be fun.

How to write about a birthday celebration in a country:

- In (اسم البلد), it is (عادات البلد) ....
- In (اسم بلد أخرى), it is (عادات البلد) ....
- In (اسم بلد مختلفة), it is (عادات البلد) ....

"Birthday celebrations around the world"

In the USA and Britain, it is usual to give good friends and family presents on their birthdays, even when they are adults. In South Africa, 21 is an important birthday because you become an adult at this age. In Holland, children get bigger presents when they are 5, 10, 15, or 20. In Nigeria, the most important birthdays are when someone is one, 10, or 15.

How to write a formal invitation email:

- Dear (اسم الشخص المدعو)
- I am writing to invite you to (سبب الدعوة).
- Date : تاريخ المناسبة
- Time : وقت المناسبة
- Location : مكان المناسبة
- Please reply by (وقت) to confirm if you can attend the (مناسبة).



From : nadia@gmail.com
To : nahla@gmail.com
Subject : Wedding Party

Dear Mrs. Nahla,
I am writing to invite you to my sister's wedding party. We are organizing a special day for this event on Monday, October 17th. Family members and friends will be there.
Date: Monday, October 17th
Time: 6:00 to 9:00 pm
Location: Jewel Garden, City Center.
Please reply by September 5 to confirm if you can attend the wedding party.



يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التى وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Match the words to their meanings:

1 adults — a. the air that comes out of your mouth

2 blow out — b. a long, thin piece of food made from flour, water, and eggs

3 breath — c. fully grown people, not children

4 noodles — d. people you invite to your home

5 guests — e. to send air through your mouth to stop a fire or flame

2 Put the words in order.

1 playing / Are / a / they / game?

....

2 wearing / a / hat./ I'm / new

....

3 sisters / My / cooking / food./ some / are

....

4 your / taking / dad / Is / photos?

....

5 helping / Laila and Mona / your / are / mom.

....

3 Complete the sentences with the present continuous form of the verb:

1 Malak .... her project on Egyptian celebrations this week. (finish)

2 The students .... hard for a music concert. (practice)

3 Where .... your brother .... in the USA? (study)

4 We .... our lunch at the moment. (eat)

5 .... Basel and Amir .... a funny movie? (watch)

6 I .... in the basketball match today. I have too much school work. (not play)



30

UNIT 4



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:





6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Today, it's my .... birthday.
a) father's b) sister's c) brother's d) mother's

2 I'm hanging up the .... for the party.
a) balloons b) streamers c) strings d) songs

3 I cut the string with ....
a) knife b) scissors c) fork d) hand

4 The .... are bright and colorful.
a) scissors b) cakes c) balloons d) presents



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



4

1 He blew out the .... with one breath. محافظة القاهرة - إدارة الزيتون التعليمية 2024
a) candy b) camel c) candle d) carpet

2 Youssef is .... up the streamers. محافظة الجيزة - منشأة القناطر التعليمية 2024
a) blowing b) decorating c) sending d) hanging

3 " .... " are people you invite to your home. محافظة المنوفية - أشمون التعليمية 2024
a) Books b) Trees c) Guests d) Pens

4 My brother is twenty years old. He is a/an .... محافظة الشرقية - إدارة منيا القمح التعليمية 2024
a) baby b) old c) adult d) child

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:



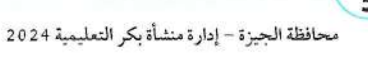
4

cake – blowing – making – happy – hanging

محافظة دمياط - إدارة الروضة التعليمية 2024

I'm Israa. Today, we are having a nice party. It is my birthday. We are very ....(1)........... . My brother is ....(2)........... up the streamers. My sister is ....(3)........... up some balloons. My mother is decorating the birthday ....(4)........... . My cousin Sara is sending email invitations to our friends.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:



5

محافظة الجيزة - إدارة منشأة بكر التعليمية 2024

I am Nour. I study hard to get high marks in the exams. But I don't spend all my time indoors. I sometimes go out and play sports. I go running every morning. I go cycling on the weekends. On holidays, I usually go and see my friends. We sometimes play video games or go to the park to enjoy our time there. Playing sports and doing exercises make me clever and ready to study my lessons.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Nour goes running ....
a) at night b) in the morning c) on holidays d) now

2 Nour plays .... games with his friends.
a) basketball b) video c) radio d) football

3 The underlined word "there" refers to the ....
a) park b) garden c) school d) farm

B Answer the following questions:

4 Why does Nour study his lessons hard? ....

5 When does Nour usually see his friends? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 3

1 this – Hamza – reading – week – a history – book – is. محافظة الجيزة - إدارة البدرشين التعليمية 2024

....

2 birthday – Are – the – you – decorating – cake?

....

3 a special – We – celebration – are – preparing – for.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 2

1 Where .... (be) they spending their vacation? محافظة القليوبية - إدارة قليوب التعليمية 2024

2 The boys .... (play) football at the moment. محافظة دمياط 2024

7 Punctuate the following: 1

who is going to make a playlist محافظة الجيزة - إدارة البدرشين التعليمية 2024

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: 5

مجاب عنه صفحة 310

محافظة القاهرة - إدارة الوايلى التعليمة 2024

"My birthday party"

blow up balloons – make a playlist

....

....

....

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!



تحتوى هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأزهر.

1 Read and complete the dialogue:

noodles – older – one – birthdays – life

Yara : What do people eat on .... in China?
Dad : They eat long .... or peaches.
Yara : Why do they eat them?
Dad : Because they think these can give them a long ....
Yara : Why are the Chinese often ....?
Dad : Because they become .... on the day they are born.

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

I'm Ahmed. Today is my brother Youssef's birthday party. I'm hanging up the streamers for the party. My friend Adam is blowing up some colorful balloons. My mother and my friend Amira are decorating the cake that my mom made for the birthday party. I'm also making a playlist of all my brother's favorite songs. My father has some fireworks. He's going to let them off in the yard when it gets dark. We're all very excited about the party.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The main idea of the text is about a ....
a) trip to Cairo b) day at the zoo
c) birthday party d) sports day

2 Adam is blowing up some colorful ....
a) cakes b) balloons c) water d) fireworks

B Answer the following questions:

3 Whose birthday party is it today? ....
4 What are mom and Amira doing? ....
5 Where are they going to let off the fireworks? ....

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 sisters – My – cooking – food – some – are.
....

2 birthday – is – Whose – party – it?
....

3 doing – is – father – Nesma's – What?
....

4 for – Dalida – making – birthday – a playlist – is – my.
....

5 sending – the – Who – invitations – is – birthday?
....

NOVEMBER REVISION

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من المراجعة على محتوى شهر نوفمبر.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Hana is so excited about her .... in Cairo this week.
a) places b) theme park c) vacation d) sunset

2 Let's ride a rollercoaster in the ....
a) Cairo souks b) minaret c) theme park d) desert

3 The *mosque has a very high .... محافظة القاهرة - إدارة الوايلي التعليمية 2024
a) market b) mountain c) minaret d) museum

4 We can visit the Manial .... Museum and take some photos.
a) Palace b) House c) Bab d) Boat

5 She went quad .... in the desert in Giza.
a) hiking b) biking c) climbing d) running

6 Fatima decided to .... her fear of heights and climb the mountain.
a) face b) explore c) visit d) ride

7 Nadia wants to take some .... for the school project.
a) rollercoasters b) museums c) places d) photos

8 The .... is the time when the sun comes down.
a) morning b) afternoon c) sunset d) evening

9 My sister is .... the birthday cake for the big party.
a) blowing up b) hanging up c) sending d) decorating

10 Who is sending the birthday ....?
a) invitations b) streamers c) scissors d) playlist

11 Adel is the best one to make the .... for the party. He knows the best songs.
a) cakes b) fireworks c) invitations d) playlist

12 Don't allow children to let off the ....
a) cakes b) fireworks c) invitations d) candles

13 Can you .... up the balloons? محافظة الجيزة - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية 2024
a) cut b) blow c) send d) write

14 .... are people you invite to your home.
a) Adults b) Candles c) Children d) Guests

15 .... are a long, thin piece of food made from flour, water, and eggs.
a) Cakes b) Noodles c) Cookies d) Cupcakes

16 Let's climb the Bab Zuweila .... محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة طلخا التعليمية 2024
a) minaret b) project c) market d) souk

17 We want to go to the theme park to ride on a .... محافظة الشرقية - إدارة أولاد صقر التعليمية 2024
a) rollercoaster b) museum c) minaret d) souk

18 I always help to blow up the .... محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة دكرنس التعليمية 2024
a) streamers b) balloons c) fireworks d) invitations

* mosque مسجد

19 We use .... to cut paper. محافظة الشرقية - إدارة أبو كبير التعليمية 2024

a) plates b) forks c) spoons d) scissors

20 My cousin is old enough to .... off the fireworks. محافظة الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزه أول التعليمية 2024

a) decorate b) send c) let d) make

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

breaks – list – study – concentrate – proud

People's brains work better if they have a regular routine. Also, don't ....(1)............ when you're hungry! If you eat a healthy meal at lunchtime, you can ....(2)............ better in the afternoon. It's helpful if you write down a ....(3)............ of what you want to do each time you study. Then you can check it off the list when you finish studying and feel ....(4)............ .

exciting – fantasy – rides – theaters – understand محافظة الشرقية - إدارة ديرب نجم التعليمية 2024

When you arrive at the theme park, you are suddenly in a ....(1)............ world – it's really ....(2)............. There's a lot to see and do here. There are amazing ....(3)............ to try like the rollercoaster and ....(4)............ where you can watch shows.

blow out – cakes – hang out – Brazil – guests

Children everywhere like party food. This often includes small ....(1)............, sandwiches, and snacks. In many countries, children like to ....(2)............ the candles on their birthday cakes. In ....(3)............, they give the first piece of their birthday cake to their mom and dad. In India too, the birthday child gives cake to all the ....(4)............ at their party first.

playlist – Let – balloons – fireworks – streamers محافظة الجيزة - إدارة الدقي التعليمية 2024

Today, we are having a party for my sister's birthday. We are going to do many things. I'm blowing up some ....(1)............ . My sister is hanging up the ....(2)............ . My brother is making a ....(3)............ on his phone. My father is going to let off the ....(4)............ .

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 the – forest – Deer – Little – runs – through. محافظة الشرقية - إدارة ديرب نجم التعليمية 2024

....

2 explores – Mom – souks – the – Mondays – on.

....

3 else – what – Great, – we – do – can? محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة أجا التعليمية 2024

....

4 a rollercoaster – We – at – the theme park – ride on. محافظة الشرقية - إدارة العاشر من رمضان التعليمية 2024

....

5 are – today – doing – What – you? محافظة الجيزة - إدارة 6 أكتوبر التعليمية 2024

....

6 mom – cake – My – sister – a nice – for – made – my. محافظة القليوبية - إدارة قليوب التعليمية 2024

....

7 are – this – doing – What – you – week? محافظة القاهرة - إدارة روض الفرج التعليمية 2024

....

8 you – pass – Can – the glue, – please – me? محافظة الشرقية - إدارة الزقازيق التعليمية 2024

....

9 traveling – to London – you – Are – tomorrow? محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة المطرية التعليمية 2024

....

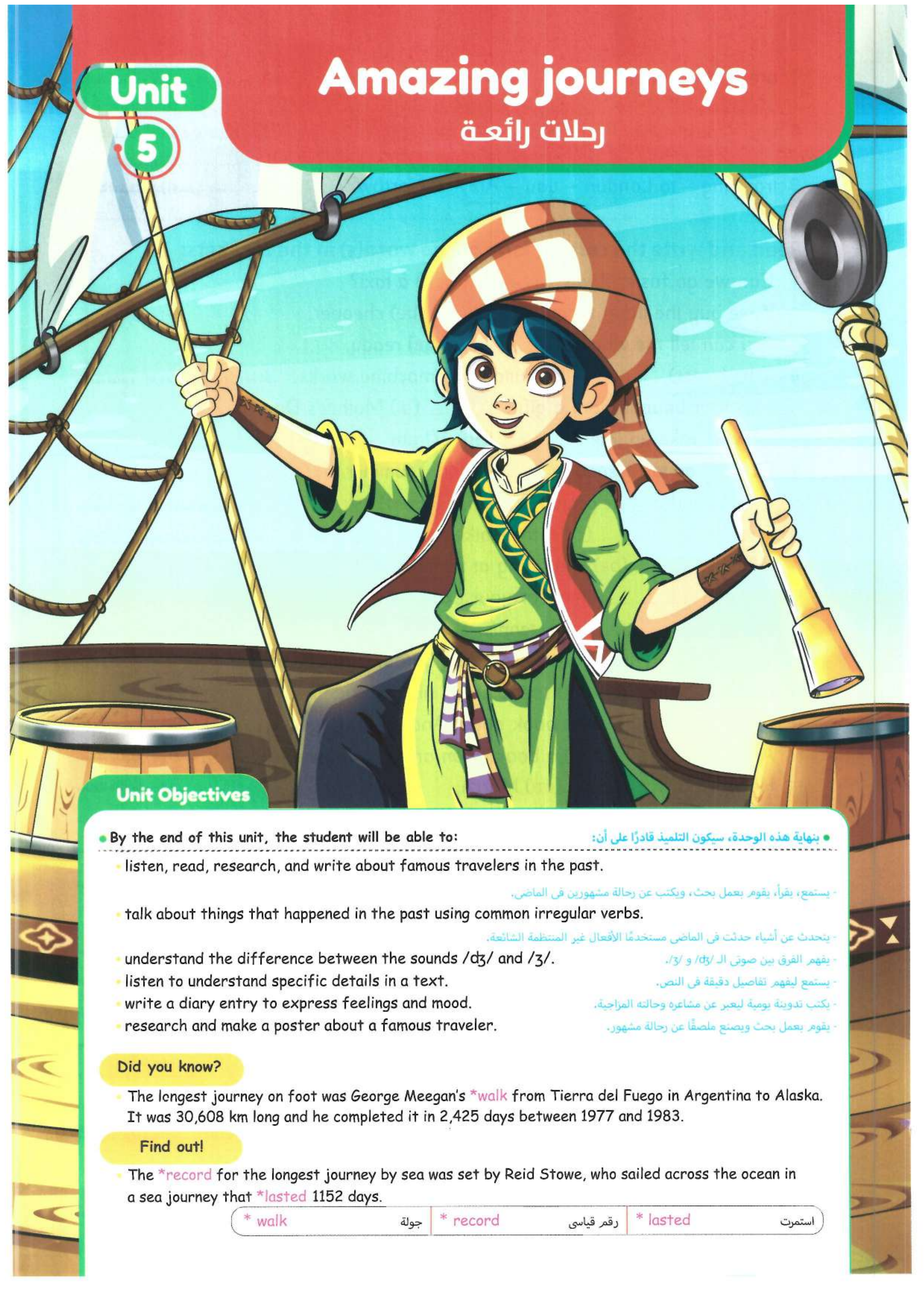
4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets:

1 Can we go faster if we .... (took) a taxi?
2 If we buy the ticket today, it .... (be) cheaper.
3 You can tell me when you .... (be) ready.
4 If he (press) .... the button, the machine works. محافظة القاهرة - إدارة عين شمس التعليمية 2024
5 My sister bought mom a gift .... (at) Mother's Day.
6 I never wake up late .... (on) 10 am.
7 I usually go to Alexandria .... (on) summer. محافظة القاهرة - إدارة السلام التعليمية 2024
8 If you need any help, you .... (could) ask me. محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة طلخا التعليمية 2024
9 The boys ....(ride) their bikes now. محافظة الشرقية - إدارة مشتول التعليمية 2024
10 What .... (be) Ola doing at the moment?
11 Are you .... (plan) for your exams this month?
12 Look! He .... (play) tennis. محافظة الجيزة - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية 2024
13 .... (Be) your parents celebrating your birthday today?
14 Moaz .... (be not) spending all his day indoors.
15 I .... (be finish) a book about Ancient Egypt today.
16 Amina .... (read) a book in an armchair now. محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة السنبلاوين التعليمية 2024
17 He was born .... (on) March. محافظة القليوبية - إدارة بنها التعليمية 2024
18 We never go to school .... (at) Friday. محافظة الإسكندرية - إدارة برج العرب التعليمية 2024
19 We are .... (eat) our lunch now. محافظة الجيزة - إدارة الشيخ زايد التعليمية 2024
20 Are they .... (watch) a funny movie? محافظة القاهرة - إدارة الزيتون التعليمية 2024

5 Punctuate the following:

1 I m excited about my vacation .... محافظة المنوفية - إدارة أشمون التعليمية 2024
2 who is going to make a playlist .... محافظة الجيزة - إدارة منشأة القناطر التعليمية 2024
3 go and get me some candles ....
4 are the boys riding their bikes now .... محافظة القاهرة - إدارة الشروق التعليمية 2024
5 what time will he meet us ....
6 Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting and busy town in egypt ....
7 some countries have different birthday food ....
8 In china, people like to eat long noodles ....

لمزيد من التدريبات ارجع إلى صفحة 255.



Unit 5 Amazing journeys

رحلات رائعة

Unit Objectives

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:
- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

- listen, read, research, and write about famous travelers in the past.
- يستمع، يقرأ، يقوم بعمل بحث، ويكتب عن رحالة مشهورين فى الماضى.
- talk about things that happened in the past using common irregular verbs.
- يتحدث عن أشياء حدثت فى الماضى مستخدمًا الأفعال غير المنتظمة الشائعة.
- understand the difference between the sounds /ʤ/ and /ʒ/.
- يفهم الفرق بين صوتى الـ /ʤ/ و /ʒ/.
- listen to understand specific details in a text.
- يستمع ليفهم تفاصيل دقيقة فى النص.
- write a diary entry to express feelings and mood.
- يكتب تدوينة يومية ليعبر عن مشاعره وحالته المزاجية.
- research and make a poster about a famous traveler.
- يقوم بعمل بحث ويصنع ملصقًا عن رحالة مشهور.

Did you know?

- The longest journey on foot was George Meegan's *walk from Tierra del Fuego in Argentina to Alaska. It was 30,608 km long and he completed it in 2,425 days between 1977 and 1983.

Find out!

- The *record for the longest journey by sea was set by Reid Stowe, who sailed across the ocean in a sea journey that *lasted 1152 days.

* walk	جولة	* record	رقم قياسى	* lasted	استمرت



Lesson 1
He Went By Ship
ذهب بالسفينة





1. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:



Main vocabulary



go on a journey
يذهب في رحلة طويلة



ride a camel
يركب جملًا



take a trip
يقوم برحلة قصيرة



go on a voyage
يذهب في رحلة بحرية



sail by ship
يبحر بالسفينة



travel by train
يسافر بالقطار

Famous explorers from the past مستكشفون مشاهير من الماضى



Ibn Battuta
ابن بطوطة
1304 – 1368



Vasco da Gama
فاسكو دا جاما
1460 –1524



Marco Polo
ماركو باولو
1254 –1324

Extra vocabulary

explorer	مستكشف	diary	مفكرة (مذكرات)	vacation	إجازة
Croatia	كرواتيا	museum	متحف	island	جزيرة
Korcula	جزيرة كورتشولا	travels	سفريات / رحلات	interesting (adj.)	مثير للاهتمام
Italian (adj.)	إيطالى	the West	الغرب	century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)
experiences	تجارب	Venice	فينيسيا	Iran	إيران
Hormuz	مضيق هرمز	ancient (adj.)	قديم	objects	أغراض

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
remember	يتذكر	remembered	sail	يبحر	sailed
travel	يسافر	traveled	imagine	يتخيل	imagined

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
read	يقرأ	read	write	يكتب	wrote
get to	يصل إلى	got to	fly	يطير/ يسافر بالطائرة	flew
ride	يركب	rode	make	يجعل	made

Expressions and Phrases

That's a good idea.	هذه فكرة جيدة.	one of the first people	من أوائل الناس
get to	يصل إلى	far away	بعيدًا
take years	يستغرق سنوات	go across	يذهب عبر
What an adventure!	يالها من مغامرة!	come to life	تعود للحياة

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Marco Polo is a famous Italian explorer.

ماركو بولو مستكشف إيطالى مشهور.

* Marco Polo was one of the first people from the West to visit China in the 13th century.

كان ماركو بولو أول شخص من الغرب يزور الصين فى القرن الـ ١٣ الميلادى.

* Traveling to China was very difficult in those days. He went on a long voyage by sea.

كان السفر إلى الصين صعب جدًّا فى تلك الأيام. ذهب ماركو بولو فى رحلة طويلة عبر البحر.

* Marco Polo Museum is on an Island in Croatia called Korcula.

يقع متحف ماركو بولو على جزيزة كورتشولا فى كرواتيا.

* The museum had a lot of things from ancient China.

احتوى المتحف على الكثير من الأشياء من الصين القديمة.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 Sailing by (car – bus – ship – van) was an amazing experience.
2 Nadia (took – traveled – went – rode) on a journey last weekend.
3 Ibn Battuta was a famous (guide – explorer – doctor – sailor).
4 She enjoyed riding the (boat – ship – camel – train) across the desert.
5 I (take – ride – sail – write) a trip once a week.
6 I think they (traveled – rode – sailed – made) by train.





2. Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:





Rana

What are you reading, Injy?

ماذا تقرئين يا إنجي؟



Injy

Oh hi, Rana. It's my travel diary. I want to remember my family's vacation in Croatia a few years ago.

أووه، أهلًا رنا! إنها مذكرات السفر الخاصة بي. أريد أن أتذكر إجازة عائلتي في كرواتيا منذ عدة سنوات.



Rana

That's a good idea. What was your favorite thing about the vacation?

هذه فكرة جيدة. ماذا كان أفضل شيء بالنسبة لك في تلك الإجازة؟



Injy

I think it was visiting the Marco Polo Museum.

أعتقد أن الشيء المفضل كان زيارة متحف ماركو بولو.



Rana

Really? Where is that?

حقًا؟ أين هو؟



Injy

It's on an island in Croatia called Korcula. We took a trip there. It's a really interesting museum – all about the travels of Marco Polo.

إنه على جزيرة في كرواتيا تدعى كورتشولا. لقد قمنا برحلة إلى هناك. إنه حقًا متحف رائع عن كل سفريات ماركو بولو.



Rana

Who was Marco Polo?

من هو ماركو بولو؟





Injy

He was an Italian explorer and one of the first people from the West to visit China. He went there in the 13th century and wrote a diary about his experiences. It's called *The Travels of Marco Polo.*

هو مستكشف إيطالي وهو من أوائل الناس الغربيين الذين زاروا الصين. ذهب هناك في القرن الـ ١٣ وكتب مذكرات عن تجاربه. إنها تسمى «رحلات ماركو بولو».



Rana

How did people get to China in those days? It's very far away. You couldn't just fly there, or travel by train!

كيف تمكن الناس من الوصول إلى الصين فى تلك الأيام؟ إنها بعيدة جدًا. لا يمكنك السفر بالطائرة أو بالقطار!





Injy

It was very difficult – the journey took years! Marco Polo went on a long voyage by sea. He sailed by ship from Venice to Korcula, and then on to Iran. When he got to Hormuz, he stopped and went across the desert. He rode a camel all the way to China!

كان الأمر صعبًا جدًا - استغرقت الرحلة سنوات! سافر ماركو بولو فى رحلة طويلة عبر البحر. أبحر بالسفينة من فينيسيا لجزيرة كورتشولا ثم إلى إيران. عندما وصل إلى مضيق هرمز، توقف وذهب عبر الصحراء. ركب جملًا طوال الطريق إلى الصين.



Rana

Wow, what an adventure!

واو، يالها من مغامرة!





Injy

Yes, and imagine arriving in China almost 800 years ago! It was so different then. The museum had a lot of things from ancient China. It really made the story of Marco Polo come to life.

نعم، وتخيلى الوصول إلى الصين قبل ٨٠٠ عام تقريبًا! كان الأمر مختلفًا تمامًا وقتها. المتحف احتوى على العديد من الأشياء من الصين القديمة. لقد جعل حقًا قصة ماركو بولو تعود للحياة.

Take care!

- كلمة **travel** قد تأتى كفعل أو كاسم.

e.g. Marco Polo **traveled** to China. (فعل) It's my **travel** diary. (اسم)

- هناك فرق بين (trip – journey – voyage)
- **trip** تعنى السفر من مكان إلى آخر، من أجل الاستمتاع أو العمل، عادة لفترة قصيرة.
- **journey** تعنى السفر من مكان إلى آخر، عادة لفترة طويلة، عبر الجو، البحر، أو البر.
- **voyage** تعنى الذهاب إلى مكان، فقط عبر البحر.

e.g. We had an amazing **trip** yesterday.

e.g. The **journey** to America was fantastic.

e.g. We went on a long **voyage** by sea.

- لاحظ الفرق بين (**diary**) وتعنى مذكرات و (**dairy**) وتعنى منتجات الألبان.

- لاحظ استخدام (**by**) مع وسائل المواصلات:

e.g. He sailed to China **by** ship.





Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Rania has an interesting travel ....
a) picture b) book c) ticket d) diary

2 She wants to remember her family's vacation in ....
a) France b) Italy c) Croatia d) London

3 They visited the .... Museum.
a) Marco Polo b) Egyptian c) History d) Grand

4 The museum is on a/an ....
a) mountain b) island c) desert d) building

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 They sailed by .... محافظة الشرقية - إدارة الزقازيق التعليمية 2024
a) train b) ship c) plane d) bus

2 Ahmed wrote a .... about his travels. محافظة الشرقية - إدارة صان الحجر التعليمية 2024
a) dry b) diary c) playlist d) dome

3 Salem .... a trip every year. محافظة الإسكندرية - إدارة شرق التعليمية 2024
a) takes b) rides c) sails d) travels

4 My sister wants to go on a long .... next week. She loves the sea.
a) voyage b) experience c) camel d) train

5 I'd never ride a .... in the desert. I'm afraid of them.
a) bus b) ship c) camel d) boat

6 Ibn Battuta is a famous .... from the 14th century.
a) sailor b) doctor c) villager d) explorer

7 Marco Polo wrote a diary about his ....
a) museum b) experiences c) friends d) family

8 When Noha reads her diary, she remembers her .... to Italy.
a) travel b) family c) century d) explorer

9 A .... is 100 years.
a) vacation b) journey c) trip d) century

10 The Museum of Marco Polo is full of .... objects.
a) modern b) small c) new d) ancient

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

train – voyage – Travels – century – explorer

Marco Polo was an Italian ....(1)........... and one of the first people from the West to visit China. He went there in the 13th ....(2)........... and wrote a diary about his experiences. It's called "The ....(3)........... of Marco Polo". Marco Polo's journey to China was very difficult. The journey took years! Marco Polo went on a long ....(4)........... by sea.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

محافظة الدقهلية – إدارة غرب المنصورة التعليمية 2024

Ibn Battuta is one of the greatest explorers in history. He lived in the 14th century. He was born in 1304. Ibn Battuta wanted to explore the world and visit the most important Muslim cities to learn about different cultures. He started his journey at the age of 21, and it lasted for 29 years. He visited places like Egypt, India, China, and many more. He didn't travel by plane like we do today. He used camels, and boats, and walked long distances. Ibn Battuta wrote about his journey. His writings helped us understand and respect the differences between different places in the world. We also learned to be brave and curious فضولي to reach our dreams.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Ibn Battuta started his journey when he was ....

a) 21 b) 29 c) 75 d) 14

2 The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....

a) Ibn Battuta b) the journey c) the camel d) Egypt

3 In his journey, he used ....

a) cars b) trains c) planes d) camels

B Answer the following questions:

4 Why did Ibn Battuta want to explore the world? ....

5 Summarize the text in two sentences. ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 a long – by – Marco – sea – Polo – went on – voyage.

....

2 took – The – years – China – to – journey.

....

3 is – The museum – called – on – Korcula – an island.

....

4 Polo – was – Marco – Italian – an – explorer.

القاهرة – إدارة روض الفرج التعليمية 2024

....

6 Punctuate the following:

1 How did people get to china those days

....

2 What are you reading, injy

....



Lesson 2





A Surprising Discovery اكتشاف مدهش



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

sculptures	منحوتات	clay	طين / صلصال	archaeologists	علماء الآثار
tools	أدوات	civilization	حضارة	mystery	سر غامض/ لغز

Extra vocabulary

surprising (adj.)	مفاجئ	discovery	اكتشاف	culture	ثقافة
local people	السكان المحليون	Nok	قرية نوك	Nigeria	نيجيريا
West Africa	غرب إفريقيا	unusual (adj.)	غير عادى	objects	أشياء
humans	بشر	style	طراز/ شكل	complicated (adj.)	معقد
position	وضعية	quality	جودة	incredible (adj.)	مذهل
similar (adj.)	مشابه/ مماثل	iron (adj.)	حديدى / معدنى	stone (adj.)	صخرى/ حجرى
farming tools	أدوات زراعية	art	فن	CE	الحقبة الميلادية
metal (adj.)	معدنى	ability	قدرة	Ife people	شعب «الإيف»
century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	sticky (adj.)	لزج	wet (adj.)	مبتل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعــال منتظمــة

Present		Past	Present		Past
agree	يوافق	agreed	believe	يعتقد	believed
affect	يؤثر	affected	explain	يشرح	explained

Irregular verbs أفعــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
find	يجد	found	go	يذهب	went
make	يصنع	made	understand	يفهم	understood

Expressions and Phrases

in a sitting position	في وضعية الجلوس	find out more	يكتشف المزيد
an area of hundreds of kilometers	منطقة على مساحة مئات الكيلومترات	most likely	على الأرجح
work iron and stone	يشكل الحديد والحجر	works of art	أعمال فنية
the later Ife people	شعب "الأيف" اللاحق	famous for	مشهور بـ
written information	معلومات مكتوبة	call ... after	يسمى على اسم
learn about	يتعلم عن	made from	مصنوع من

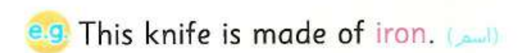
Definitions

clay	a type of earth that is sticky when wet	نوع من الأرض يكون لزجًا حينما يكون مبتلًا
tools	objects we use to make or do things	أغراض نستخدمها لصنع أو عمل أشياء
sculptures	art made from stone or wood	فن مصنوع من الحجارة أو الخشب
archaeologist	a person who studies very old objects that they find under the ground	الشخص الذي يقوم بدراسة أشياء قديمة جدًا وجدها أسفل الأرض
mystery	something that people do not understand or cannot explain	شيء لا يفهمه الناس أو لا يمكن تفسيره



Take care!

- (iron) قد تأتي اسم بمعنى (خام الحديد)، وقد تأتي صفة بمعنى (حديد):



e.g. This knife is made of iron. (اسم) — This is an iron knife. (صفة)

- (stone) قد تأتي اسم بمعنى (صخرة/ حجر)، وقد تأتي صفة بمعنى (صخري):

e.g. This sculpture is made of stone. (اسم) — Look at this stone sculpture. (صفة)

Check

Choose the correct answer:

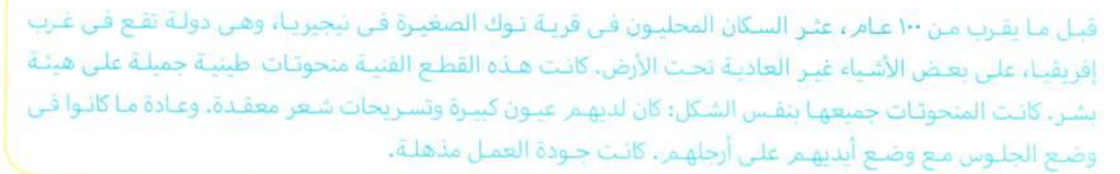
1. (Scientists – Archaeologists – Vets – Teachers) discovered many sculptures.
2. Carpenters need (discovery – mystery – tools – sculptures) to fix chairs.
3. Ancient Egyptians had a great (tool – mystery – human – civilization) of 7,000 years.
4. I can't solve this math problem; it's (easy – far – complicated – surprising).
5. No one knew how the ship disappeared. It's a/an (style – mystery – ability – century).



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



Almost 100 years ago, local people in the small village of Nok in Nigeria, a country in West Africa, found some unusual objects under the ground. These objects were beautiful clay sculptures of humans. The sculptures were all in the same style: they had large eyes and complicated hair styles. They were usually in a sitting position with their hands on their legs. The quality of the work was incredible.



قبل ما يقرب من ١٠٠ عام، عثر السكان المحليون فى قرية نوك الصغيرة فى نيجيريا، وهى دولة تقع فى غرب إفريقيا، على بعض الأشياء غير العادية تحت الأرض. كانت هذه القطع الفنية منحوتات طينية جميلة على هيئة بشر. كانت المنحوتات جميعها بنفس الشكل: كان لديهم عيون كبيرة وتسريحات شعر معقدة. وعادة ما كانوا فى وضع الجلوس مع وضع أيديهم على أرجلهم. كانت جودة العمل مذهلة.

A team of archaeologists went to the area to find out more. They found many similar sculptures in an area of hundreds of kilometers around Nok. There were also iron and stone farming tools. The archaeologists agreed these were most likely from civilization which had the ability to work iron and stone to make tools, and which made beautiful art.

توجه فريق من علماء الآثار إلى المنطقة لاكتشاف المزيد. وجدوا العديد من المنحوتات المماثلة فى منطقة تبلغ مئات الكيلومترات حول نوك. كانت هناك أيضًا أدوات زراعة من الحديد والحجارة. وقد اتفق علماء الآثار على أن هذه على الأرجح كانت من حضارة لديها القدرة على تشكيل الحديد والحجر لصنع الأدوات، والتى صنعت فنًا جميلًا.

They called this culture the "Nok" civilization, after the village where sculptures were found. Some believe that the sculptures affected the famous works of art by the later Ife people, who were in Nigeria from the 11th to the 15th century CE. The Ife were famous for making beautiful metal sculptures of human heads. However, there is no written information about the Nok people, so we can only learn about them from their art. Their culture is still a mystery today.

وأطلقوا على هذه الثقافة اسم «حضارة نوك» على اسم القرية التى تم العثور فيها على المنحوتات. يعتقد البعض أن المنحوتات أثرت على الأعمال الفنية المشهورة لشعب «الإيف» اللاحق الذين كانوا فى نيجيريا من القرن الحادى عشر إلى القرن الخامس عشر الميلادى. اشتهر شعب «الإيف» بصنع منحوتات معدنية جميلة للرؤوس البشرية. ومع ذلك، لا توجد معلومات مكتوبة عن النوك، لذلك لا يمكننا التعرف عليهم إلا من خلال أعمالهم الفنية؛ حيث لا تزال ثقافتهم لغزًا إلى اليوم.

Check

1 Which two cultures are mentioned? SB

....

2 Where did the name "Nok" come from?

....



B Language Focus

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

We use the past simple to talk about finished actions, or situations, in the past.
نستخدم الماضي البسيط للتحدث عن الأفعال أو المواقف المنتهية في الماضي.

1. Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة

- معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (ed):
  rain - rained
- الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e) يضاف لها (d):
  use → used
- الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن + (y)، يحذف الـ (y) ويضاف إليها الـ (ied):
  study → studied
- الأفعال المنتهية بحرف متحرك + حرف ساكن، يضاف لها (ed) مع مضاعفة الحرف الساكن:
  stop → stopped

2. Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past	Present	Past
go يذهب	went	find يجد	found	am/ is يكون	was
has/ have يمتلك	had	make يصنع	made	are يكون	were

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثاني للفعل ... .





Ali traveled to the desert last vacation.



Archaeologists went to the area to find out more.

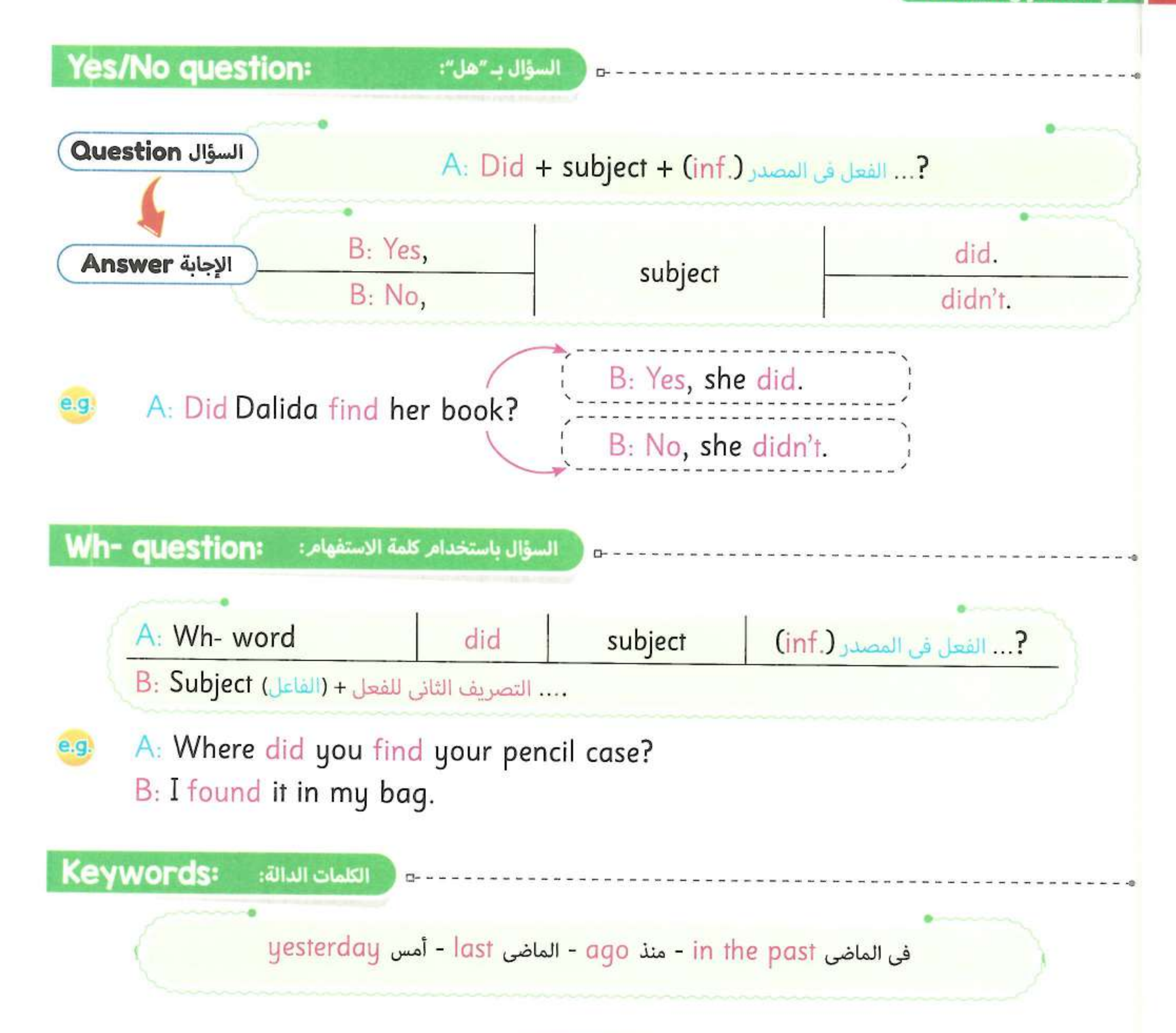
Negative Form: صيغة النفي:

Subject + didn't + (inf.) الفعل في المصدر ... .



We didn't have a vacation two years ago.





Yes/No question: السؤال بـ "هل":

Question السؤال

A: Did + subject + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ...?

Answer الإجابة

B: Yes,	subject	did.
B: No,		didn't.

e.g. A: Did Dalida find her book?
- B: Yes, she did.
- B: No, she didn't.

Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

A: Wh- word	did	subject	(inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ...?

B: Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل ....

e.g. A: Where did you find your pencil case?
B: I found it in my bag.

Keywords: الكلمات الدالة:

yesterday أمس - last الماضى - ago منذ - in the past فى الماضى

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1. Eslam (goes – went – go – going) to the cinema last night.
2. Mom (baked – baking – bakes – bake) a delicious cake for her birthday a week ago.
3. My family (have – has – having – had) a picnic in the park last Sunday.
4. My brother (didn't – don't – doesn't – isn't) have his breakfast yesterday.
5. My team didn't (win – wins – won – winning) the game last week.
6. Dad didn't (slept – sleep – sleeps – sleeping) well.
7. (Does – Is – Did – Are) you wake up early this morning?
8. Did Ola (goes – go – went – going) to the store yesterday?
9. When (did – does – is – do) dad come home last night?
10. Where (does – did – is – are) you find the keys yesterday?

Verb to "be" in the past simple فعل "يكون" فى زمن الماضى البسيط

Verb to "be" changes according to the subject in the past simple.
يتغير فعل «يكون» باختلاف الفاعل فى زمن الماضى البسيط.

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

I / He / She / It + was ...

e.g. Heba was at my birthday party last week.

We / They / You + were ...

e.g. The kids were at the club two days ago.

Negative Form صيغة النفى:

I / He / She / It + was not (wasn't) ...

e.g. Dad wasn't at home yesterday.

We / They / You + were not (weren't) ...

e.g. My friends weren't at school last week.

Yes/No question: السؤال بـ "هل":

Question: السؤال

Was	I / he / she / it ...?
Were	we / they / you ...?

Answer: الإجابة

Yes,	subject (فاعل)	was / were.
No,		wasn't / weren't.

e.g. A: Was she happy in New York?
B: Yes, she was.

e.g. A: Were you at home an hour ago?
B: No, we weren't.

Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Wh- word كلمة الاستفهام	was	I / he / she / it	...?
	were	we / they / you	

e.g. A: Where was he yesterday? B: He was at school.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 I (is – am – was – were) happy to see my friend yesterday.
2 Nawal (is – does – was – were) the tallest student in her class last year.
3 The players (am – is – does – were) tired after playing all day.
4 The students (aren't – don't – weren't – wasn't) ready for the test last week.
5 Who (were – are – is – was) your favorite teacher last year?
6 (Are – Was – Is – Does) Huda sad yesterday when she lost the race?





Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 .... is a type of earth that is sticky when wet. محافظة القاهرة - إدارة السلام التعليمية 2024

a) Clay b) Metal c) Wood d) Paper

2 A/An .... is someone who studies very old objects. محافظة الشرقية - إدارة العاشر من رمضان التعليمية 2024

a) engineer b) teacher c) archaeologist d) farmer

3 .... are works of art that are usually made of stone or wood.

a) Farming tools b) Archaeologists c) Sculptures d) Culture

4 Something that people do not understand or cannot explain is a/an ....

a) culture b) sculpture c) mystery d) ancient

5 A period of time of 100 years is a/an ....

a) century b) ability c) position d) information

6 Tools are .... we use to make or do things.

a) humans b) animals c) objects d) birds

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: محافظة القاهرة - شرق مدينة نصر التعليمية 2024

tools – information – humans – complicated – Archaeologists

The area where the Nok people lived was in Nigeria. People found sculptures in this area. ....(1)............ went there to study them. The sculptures all had large eyes and ....(2)............ hair styles. The people made clay sculptures and other farming ....(3)............ from iron and stone. Their sculptures were usually of ....(4)............ .

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 went – the – last – They – to – zoo – weekend. محافظة الشرقية - إدارة القنايات التعليمية 2024

....

2 visited – the – I – Museum – week – Egyptian – last. محافظة الشرقية - إدارة الصالحية الجديدة التعليمية 2024

....

3 stone – farming – There – tools – iron – were – and.

....

4 was – The – quality – work – of – the – incredible.

....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. She .... (travel) to Luxor last month. محافظة الشرقية - إدارة الزقازيق التعليمية 2024
2. We didn't .... (went) to school yesterday. محافظة المنوفية - إدارة أشمون التعليمية 2024
3. My family .... (go) on a vacation last year. محافظة دمياط - إدارة الزرقا التعليمية 2024
4. Where ....(does) he yesterday?
5. He .... (not have) any homework last week.
6. .... (Did) you at school this morning?
7. He .... (don't) at the club yesterday. محافظة المنوفية - إدارة شبين الكوم التعليمية 2024
8. They .... (not be) at home when I called.
9. She .... (be) happy to see her friends last week.
10. They .... (buy) a new house last year. محافظة البحيرة - إدارة إيتاى البارود التعليمية 2024

5 Punctuate the following:

1. The nok people's tools were made of stone

....

2. did he go on a vacation last summer

....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 310

"Nok Civilization"

local people – West Africa – iron and stone farming tools

....

....

....

....





Lesson 3





Marco Polo Crosses The Desert ماركو باولو يعبر الصحراء



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

fascinated (adj.)	منبهر	dromedary	الجمل العربي	caravan	قافلة
wasteland	أرض قاحلة (خالية)	legends	أساطير	adventure	مغامرة

Extra vocabulary

Gobi Desert	صحراء جوبي	sand dunes	كثبان رملية	step	خطوة
shapes	أشكال	waves	أمواج	language	لغة
ocean	محيط	toward	نحو	Lop Nur	قرية لوب نور
empty (adj.)	فارغ	mysterious (adj.)	غامض	dangerous (adj.)	خطير
silently	بصمت	strange (adj.)	غريب	noises	ضوضاء
voices	أصوات (بشرية)	drums	طبول	travelers	مسافرون / رحالة
enough (adj.)	كافٍ	frightening (adj.)	مخيف	Noah Oasis	واحة نوح
exhausted (adj.)	مُتعَب	direction	اتجاه	landscape	أرض (مكان)

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظـمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
change	يتغير	changed	move	يتحرك	moved
sway	يتمايل	swayed	roll	يلتف	rolled
last	يدوم/ يستمر	lasted	wander	يتجول	wandered

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
know	يعرف	knew	say	يقول	said
leave	يغادر	left	lose	يضيع/ يفقد	lost

Expressions and Phrases

look like	يشبه	for the first time	لأول مرة
in fact	في الواقع	slowly up and down	ببطء لأعلى ولأسفل
over the ocean	عبر المحيط	there was nothing	لم يكن هناك شيء
by day,	أثناء النهار	boiling hot	شديد السخونة
by night,	أثناء الليل	freezing cold	شديد البرودة
go on	يستمر	far away	بعيدًا
lost long ago	مفقود منذ فترة طويلة	make sure	يتأكد
on the horizon	في الأفق	(be) over	انتهى
interested in	مهتم بـ	from side to side	من جانب لآخر

Definitions

fascinated by	very interested in	مهتم جدًّا بشيء
caravan	a group of camels and people traveling together	مجموعة من الناس والجِمّال يسافرون معًا
swaying	moving from side to side	يتحرك من جانب إلى آخر
wasteland	a landscape where nothing lives	أرض (مكان) لا يعيش فيه شيء
wandered	walked about without a direction	يمشي بلا اتجاه
legend	a very old and famous story	قصة قديمة جدًّا ومشهورة

Take care!

- The writer uses "adjectives and adverbs" to help the reader imagine what's happening in their mind and help the reader understand how the characters feel.

يستخدم الكاتب «الصفات والأحوال» ليساعد القارئ أن يتخيل ما يدور في ذهنه ويجعل القارئ يفهم ما تشعر به الشخصيات.

e.g. - He was fascinated by the sand dunes.
- They went on silently, but often the wind made strange noises.



2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Marco Polo was twenty-one when, in 1275, he went into the Gobi Desert for the first time. He was fascinated by the sand dunes, which moved with each step the camels made. Some of the dunes were sixty meters tall and twenty meters long, and their shapes were always changing. The wind made them move and roll like huge yellow waves. In fact, the local people called the Gobi Desert "the dry sea" in their language.

كان ماركو باولو فى الواحد والعشرين من عمره فى عام ١٢٧٥ عندما دخل فى صحراء جوبى لأول مرة. كان مفتونًا بالكثبان الرملية التى تحركت مع كل خطوة تخطوها الجمال. كانت بعض الكثبان الرملية ستين مترًا طولاً و ٢٠ مترًا عرضًا، وكانت أشكالها تتغير دائمًا. الرياح جعلتهم يتحركون ويلتفون مثل الأمواج الصفراء الضخمة. فى الواقع، أطلق السكان المحليون اسم «البحر الجاف» على صحراء جوبى فى لغتهم.

The dromedaries in the caravan moved slowly up and down the dunes, swaying like big ships over the ocean. They went toward Lop Nur, the last village before the empty wasteland of the desert. Marco knew that after this place, there was nothing for thousands of kilometers – no people, no plants, no water.

تحركت الجمال العربية فى القافلة ببطء أعلى وأسفل الكثبان الرملية، متمايلة مثل السفن الكبيرة فوق المحيط. ذهبوا نحو (لوب نور)، القرية الأخيرة قبل الوصول إلي الأراضى الخالية فى الصحراء. عرف ماركو أنه بعد هذا المكان، لم يكن هناك شيء لآلاف الكيلومترات لا أشخاص ولا نباتات ولا ماء.

It was a mysterious and dangerous place. By day, it was boiling hot, by night, it was freezing cold – sometimes there was snow. They went on silently, but often the wind made strange noises, like voices singing and drums playing far away. There were many strange legends about this desert. People said that travelers who were lost long ago in the desert wandered there still ...

كان مكانًا غامضًا وخطيرًا. فى النهار، كان شديد السخونة، فى الليل، كان شديد البرودة - فى بعض الأحيان كان هناك ثلج. استمرت القافلة بصمت، ولكن فى كثير من الأحيان كانت الرياح تصدر أصواتًا غريبة، مثل أصوات تغنى وطبول تُعزف من بعيد. كانت هناك العديد من الأساطير الغريبة حول هذه الصحراء. قال الناس إن الرحالة الذين فُقدوا منذ فترة طويلة فى الصحراء ما زالوا يتجولون هناك ...

Before they left Lop Nur, Marco made sure they had enough food and water for the men and the animals to last for one month. After exactly thirty days of traveling across that frightening, empty land, they finally saw the green line of Noah Oasis on the horizon. They had no water and no food left and the animals were exhausted, but their desert adventure was over. They were in China!

قبل أن يغادروا (لوب نور)، تأكد ماركو من أن لديهم ما يكفى من الطعام والماء للرجال والحيوانات ليدوم لمدة شهر واحد. بعد ثلاثين يومًا بالضبط من السفر عبر هذه الأرض الفارغة والمخيفة، رأوا أخيرًا الخط الأخضر لواحة نوح فى الأفق. لم يكن لديهم ماء ولا بقايا طعام وكانت الحيوانات متعبة، ولكن تلك مغامرة الصحراء قد انتهت. لقد كانوا فى الصين!

Check

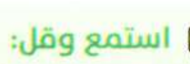
Choose the correct answer:

1. Marco Polo was (lost – bored – fascinated – worried) by the Gobi Desert.
2. The wind made the (caravans – sand dunes – shapes – dromedaries) roll like waves.
3. Local people called the Gobi Desert "the (big – dry – small – wet) sea" in their language.



B Story







3. Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

mysterious (adj.)	غامض	ship	سفينة	port	ميناء
possible (adj.)	ممكن	cabin	كابينة / مقصورة	news	أخبار

Extra vocabulary

island	جزيرة	boring (adj.)	ممل	terrible (adj.)	فظيع
weather	طقس	telescope	تليسكوب/ منظار	beaches	شواطئ
sandy (adj.)	مليء بالرمال	palm trees	أشجار النخيل	mountains	جبال
center	مركز	candle	شمعة	hope	أمل
light	ضوء	clearer (adj.)	أكثر صفاء	quite	إلى حد ما
relaxing (adj.)	مريح	the others	الآخرون	captain	قائد السفينة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمــة

Present		Past	Present		Past
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	seem	يبدو	seemed
move	يتحرك	moved	explore	يستكشف	explored

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
leave	يغادر	left	see	يرى	saw
go	يذهب	went	read	يقرأ	read

Expressions and Phrases

long walks	المشي لمسافات طويلة	pass the time	يقضي الوقت
during the day	خلال النهار	come up	تشرق
have nothing to do	ليس لدى شيء لأفعله	by the light of	في ضوء
a bit clearer	أكثر وضوحًا قليلًا	in my heart	بداخلي

Take care!

- لاحظ الفرق بين (quiet) بمعنى (هادئ) و (quite) بمعنى (إلى حد ما).

e.g. My teacher asked me to be quiet.
It's quite hot outside.

- لاحظ أن (sleep) قد تأتي فعل بمعنى (ينام) أو اسم بمعنى (النوم).

e.g. I had quite a relaxing sleep in my cabin last night. (اسم)
She usually sleeps for 8 hours every day. (فعل)

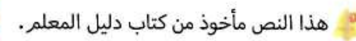
- يستخدم حرف الجر (on) قبل الأيام.

e.g. The writer feels excited on Day 3.



The Mysterious Island الجزيرة الغامضة

Listening script page 82 SB





4. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

January 17



Today was a long, boring, day with terrible weather. The ship didn't leave the port, so my journey to the mysterious island wasn't possible. I can see the island through my telescope. The beaches are white and sandy with many palm trees and there are green mountains at its center. It's exciting to imagine what I could find there. I'm sure I'll travel there soon.

كان اليوم طويلًا ومملًا مع طقس رهيب. لم تغادر السفينة الميناء، لذلك لم تكن رحلتى إلى الجزيرة الغامضة ممكنة. يمكننى رؤية الجزيرة من خلال التلسكوب الخاص بى. الشواطئ بيضاء ورملية مع العديد من أشجار النخيل وهناك جبال خضراء فى وسطها. من المثير أن أتخيل ما يمكن أن أجده هناك. أنا متأكد من أننى سأسافر هناك قريبًا.

The middle

January 19

I was sad all day yesterday. The weather was still bad and there were strong winds. I went for long walks around the ship to pass the time during the day. In the evening, I had nothing to do but read my book by the light of a candle in my small cabin. Today the sky is a bit clearer – there is some hope for my journey perhaps – but time seems to move very slowly in this place.

كنت حزينًا طوال اليوم أمس. كان الطقس لايزال سيئًا وكانت هناك رياح قوية. ذهبت للمشى لمسافات طويلة حول السفينة لقضاء الوقت خلال النهار. فى المساء، لم يكن لدى ما أفعله سوى قراءة كتابى على ضوء شمعة فى مقصورتى الصغيرة. اليوم السماء أكثر وضوحًا - هناك بعض الأمل فى رحلتى ربما - ولكن يبدو أن الوقت يتحرك ببطء شديد فى هذا المكان.

The end

January 21

I had quite a relaxing sleep in my cabin last night, and this morning I had breakfast with the others on the ship. In the afternoon, there was good news from the captain: tomorrow, the weather will be good with no wind, so we can go to the island in the morning. The ship will leave when the sun comes up. I'm very excited: soon I can explore the mysterious island!

لقد حظيت بنوم مريح فى مقصورتى الليلة الماضية، وفى هذا الصباح تناولت وجبة الإفطار مع الآخرين على متن السفينة. بعد الظهر، كانت هناك أخبار جيدة من القبطان، حيث يقول إن الطقس غدًا سيكون جيدًا بدون رياح، لذلك يمكننا الذهاب إلى الجزيرة فى الصباح. ستغادر السفينة عندما تشرق الشمس. أنا متحمس للغاية: فسرعان ما يمكننى استكشاف الجزيرة الغامضة!



Pronunciation



5. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:



/dʒ/

huge	fridge	age	joke	dangerous
ضخم	ثلاجة	عمر/سن	نكتة	خطير
language	cage	bridge	village	damaged
لغة	قفص	كوبرى	قرية	محطم
Jerry	arrange (v.)	luggage	Japan	
(جيرى) اسم شخص	يرتب	أمتعة	اليابان	

/ʒ/

measure (v.)	treasure	usually	leisure
يقيس	كنز	عادة	وقت فراغ
Asia	television	pleasure	
آسيا	تلفزيون	متعة	



Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 I read a nice story ....

a) last week b) yesterday c) an hour ago d) last month

2 It was a page from a diary in the .... century.

a) 16th b) 17th c) 18th d) 19th

3 The writer was traveling on a ....

a) train b) plane c) car d) ship

4 He had a relaxing sleep in his ....

a) cabin b) bedroom c) house d) bed

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The .... is a group of camels and people traveling together. محافظة الشرقية - إدارة بلبيس التعليمية 2024

a) wasteland b) legend c) sculpture d) caravan

2 My dad worked for 12 hours yesterday, so he was .... محافظة المنيا - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية 2024

a) exhausted b) scared c) frightened d) excited

3 A/An ....is a landscape where nothing lives.

a) caravan b) oasis c) wonderland d) wasteland

4 When someone ...., they walk about without a direction.

a) runs b) wanders c) climbs d) jumps

5 .... are very old famous stories.

a) Cultures b) Civilizations c) Caravans d) Legends

6 .... are camels that can carry people across the desert.

a) Cabins b) Captains c) Dromedaries d) Ships

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

sea – animals – dunes – Desert – water

محافظة الجيزة - إدارة الهرم التعليمية 2024

Marco Polo went into the Gobi ....(1)............ . He was fascinated by the sand ....(2)............, which moved with each step the camels made. Marco made sure they had enough food and ....(3)............ for the men and the ....(4)............ to last for one month. After exactly thirty days of traveling across that frightening, empty land, they finally were in China.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Marco Polo was twenty-one when, in 1275, he went into the Gobi Desert for the first time. He was fascinated by the sand dunes which, moved with each step the dromedaries made. Some of the dunes were sixty meters tall and twenty meters long, and their shapes were always changing. The wind made them move and roll like huge yellow waves. In fact, the local people called the Gobi Desert "the dry sea" in their language. The dromedaries in the caravan moved slowly up and down the sand dunes.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Marco Polo was .... when he went to the Gobi Desert.

a) 12 b) 21 c) 31 d) 50

2 Local people called the Gobi Desert "..........................".

a) the big tree b) the wet ocean

c) the dry sea d) the dark place

3 The underlined word "dromedaries" is a type of ....

a) caravans b) people c) camels d) sand dunes

B Answer the following questions:

4 What was Marco Polo fascinated by?

....

5 Summarize the text in two sentences.

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 dunes – sand – Some – were – sixty – tall – meters.

....

2 moved – slowly – The dromedaries – in the – caravan.

....

3 leave – The ship – port – yesterday – the – didn't.

....

4 read – cabin – I – a book – in – my.

....

6 Punctuate the following:

1 she was sad all day yesterday

....

2 China is a country in asia







Lessons 4 & 5
Writing



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:




Main vocabulary

experience	تجربة	felucca	قارب شراعى (فلوكة)	River Nile	نهر النيل
skills	مهارات	sails	أشرعة	magical (adj.)	سحرى

Extra vocabulary

amazing (adj.)	مدهش	traditional (adj.)	تقليدى	sailing boat	قارب شراعى
trip	رحلة قصيرة	warm (adj.)	دافئ	sunshine	شعاع الشمس
gently	برفق	quiet (adj.)	هادئ	peaceful (adj.)	مسالم / آمن
incredible (adj.)	لا يصدق	awesome (adj.)	رائع	oud	آلة العود
beautifully	بطريقة جميلة	enjoyable (adj.)	ممتع	cloth	قماش

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعــال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
sail يبحر	sailed	push يدفع	pushed

Irregular verbs أفعــال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
deal يتعامل	dealt	make يصنع	made

Expressions and Phrases

have an experience	يمر بتجربة	go on a felucca	يذهب على متن فلوكة
made of wood	مصنوع من الخشب	difficult to sail	من الصعب الإبحار به
go slowly down the river	يتحرك ببطء فى النهر	along the way	على طول الطريق
for the first time	لأول مرة	on board	على سطح القارب
play traditional music	يعزف الموسيقى الشعبية	What a day!	يا له من يوم!

Definitions

skills	the ability to deal with something well	القدرة على التعامل جيدًا مع شىء
sails	large pieces of cloth on a boat that make the wind push the boat	قطع كبيرة من القماش تجعل الرياح تدفع القارب
magical	very enjoyable and exciting	ممتع جدًا ومثير للاهتمام

2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

6 January ٦ يناير

Today, I had an amazing experience ... I went on a felucca on the River Nile! A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood.

لقد مررت اليوم بتجربة مذهلة ... ذهبت إلى رحلة بالفلوكة فى نهر النيل! الفلوكة هى قارب شراعى مصرى تقليدى. إنه مصنوع من الخشب.



A tall man called Kareem was the captain of the boat. A felucca is difficult to sail, but Kareem was very strong and had the skills to do it. The trip was amazing. We went slowly down the river in the warm sunshine. The boat had two white sails which moved gently in the wind. It was so quiet and peaceful – a lovely way to travel.

كان قبطان المركب رجل طويل يدعى كريم. من الصعب الإبحار بالفلوكة ، إلا أن كريم كان قويًا جدًا ولديه المهارات للقيام بذلك.كانت الرحلة مذهلة. تحركنا ببطء فى النهر فى أشعة الشمس الدافئة. كان القارب يحتوى على شراعين لونهما أبيض يتحركان بلطف فى الرياح الدافئة. كانت المركب هادئة وآمنة ورائعة للسفر.

We stopped to see some incredible things along the way, too. I saw the Pyramids of Giza for the first time in my life. They were awesome! The Pyramids were huge and the stones were the color of gold. The Great Pyramid, the tallest of the three Pyramids, is 147 meters high. It was wonderful.

توقفنا لرؤية بعض الأشياء المذهلة على طول الطريق أيضًا. رأيت أهرامات الجيزة لأول مرة فى حياتى، كانت رائعة! كانت الأهرامات ضخمة والأحجار بلون الذهب. الهرم الكبير، أطول الأهرامات الثلاثة، يبلغ ارتفاعه ١٤٧ مترًا، كان رائعًا.

In the afternoon, we had a delicious lunch on board the felucca and there was a man playing traditional Egyptian music on an oud. He played beautifully and the music was magical and relaxing. What a day! I had such a wonderful experience!

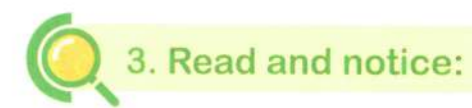
بعد الظهر، تناولنا وجبة غداء لذيذة على متن الفلوكة، وكان هناك رجل يعزف الموسيقى المصرية التقليدية على العود. عزف بشكل جميل وكانت الموسيقى ساحرة ومريحة، يا له من يوم! لقد مررت بتجربة رائعة للغاية!

Take care!

"Adjectives and adverbs help us to understand the feelings of the writer."

"الصفات والأحوال تساعدنا على فهم مشاعر الكاتب."

Adjective An adjective describes a noun. الصفة تصف الاسم.	Adverb An adverb describes a verb. الحال يصف الفعل.
e.g. I had an amazing experience.	e.g. We went slowly down the river.



3. Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

How to write a diary كيفية كتابة مفكرة (المذكرات)

A diary has features that are different from other types of text.
المفكرة لها خصائص مختلفة عن أنواع النصوص الأخرى.

A It usually has short paragraphs, each one about what happened on a single day.
عادة ما تحتوى على فقرات قصيرة، كل فقرة حول ما حدث في يوم منفرد.

B It is usually written in an informal style and uses first-person pronouns (I, we, my, etc.)
عادة ما تكتب بأسلوب غير رسمى وتستخدم ضمائر المتكلم (أنا - نحن - لدى).

C It usually describes the writer's thoughts, feelings, and opinions.
عادة ما تصف أفكار الكاتب ومشاعره وآراءه.

D It usually describes people, places, and experiences.
عادة ما تصف الأشخاص والأماكن والتجارب.

e.g.

Write a diary of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"My visit to Alexandria"

How and when did you go there? – How did you feel about it?

....

....

....

....



Lessons 4 & 5



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 A/An .... is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. محافظة الإسكندرية - إدارة وسط التعليمية 2024
a) bus b) car c) train d) felucca

2 The trip was .... It was such an enjoyable and exciting trip.
a) magical b) boring c) tired d) difficult

3 .... are large pieces of cloth that make boats move.
a) Dromedaries b) Skills c) Sails d) Caravans

4 Captain Kareem had the .... to sail the felucca.
a) sails b) skills c) boat d) wood

5 The white sails moved slowly in the ....
a) wind b) road c) way d) desert

6 The Pyramids have very .... stones. محافظة الجيزة - شمال الجيزة التعليمية 2024
a) large b) soft c) small d) weak

7 He is a great musician. He plays the .... beautifully.
a) boat b) felucca c) oud d) sail

8 We had a delicious lunch on .... the felucca.
a) top b) sail c) board d) oud

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

experience – wood – River – captain – sail

Ali had an amazing experience yesterday. He went on a felucca on the ....(1)............ . Nile with his friend Tamer. A felucca is an Egyptian sailing boat which is made of ....(2)............ . They got on the felucca with a captain called Saber. Saber had the skills to ....(3)............ the felucca. They went slowly down the river and enjoyed the view. It was a lovely ....(4)............ for them. محافظة القاهرة - إدارة هليوبلس التعليمية 2024

3 Read the text and answer the questions:
محافظة القاهرة - إدارة الوايلي التعليمية 2024

Last week, I had an amazing experience. I went on a felucca on the River Nile. A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood. A tall man called Ali was the captain of the boat. A felucca is difficult to sail, but Ali was very strong and had the skills to sail it. The trip was amazing. We went slowly down the river in the warm sunshine. The boat has two white sails which moved gently in the wind. It was so quiet and peaceful – a lovely way to travel.



A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....
a) a strong man
b) an amazing experience
c) the River Nile
d) warm weather

2 The felucca is made of ....
a) metal
b) cloth
c) wood
d) leather

3 The opposite of the underlined word "quiet" is ....
a) noisy
b) traditional
c) lovely
d) difficult

B Answer the following questions:

4 What is a felucca?

....

5 How was the trip?

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 is – made – of – The felucca – wood.

....

2 is – famous – Egypt – its – Pyramids – for. محافظة المنوفية – أشمون التعليمية 2024

....

3 is – The Great – high – Pyramid – 147 – meters.

....

4 had – We – a delicious – on board – lunch – the felucca.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

محافظة الإسكندرية – إدارة وسط التعليمية 2024

1 I had such a wonderful experience in egypt

....

2 did you go on a felucca yesterday

....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 310

"My trip to Al-Fayoum"

"an amazing experience – fascinated by – a delicious lunch"

....

....

....

....

Unit 5 REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التى وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

go on a voyage	يذهب فى رحلة بحرية	go on a journey	يذهب فى رحلة طويلة
ride a camel	يركب جمل	travel by train	يسافر بالقطار
sail by ship	يبحر بالسفينة	take a trip	يقوم برحلة قصيرة
explorer	مستكشف	diary	مفكرة (مذكرات)
vacation	إجازة	museum	متحف
experiences	تجارب	century	قرن
travels	سفريات	the West	الغرب
Italian	إيطالى	objects	أغراض
ancient	قديم	interesting	مثير للاهتمام

Lesson (2)

discovery	اكتشاف	archaeologists	علماء الآثار
complicated	معقد	West Africa	غرب إفريقيا
clay	طين	tools	أدوات
surprising	مفاجئ	unusual	غير عادى
sculptures	منحوتات	Nigeria	نيجيريا
farming tools	أدوات زراعة	stone	حجر
quality	جودة	style	طراز
iron	حديد	civilization	حضارة
mystery	لغز	Ife people	شعب «الإيف»

Lesson (3)

fascinated	منبهر	dromedary	الجمل العربى
caravan	قافلة	ocean	محيط
legends	أساطير	wasteland	أرض قاحلة
adventure	مغامرة	step	خطوة
Gobi Desert	صحراء جوبى	mysterious	غامض
voices	أصوات	noises	ضوضاء
language	لغة	captain	قائد
waves	أمواج	exhausted	مرهَق
direction	اتجاه	frightening	مخيف

Lessons (4 & 5)

felucca	قارب شراعى	skills	مهارات
sails	أشرعة	traditional	تقليدى
sailing boat	قارب شراعى	gently	برفق
sunshine	شعاع الشمس	peaceful	مسالم
warm	دافئ	oud	آلة العود
incredible	لا يصدق	awesome	رائع
beautifully	بطريقة جميلة	quiet	هادئ

Language Focus

The Past Simple Tense

Affirmative Form:

Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل ... .

e.g. Mona went to school on foot last week.

Negative Form:

Subject + didn't + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ... .

e.g. We didn't have a vacation two years ago.

Yes/No question:

A: Did + subject + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر?

B: Yes, subject did.
B: No, subject didn't.

e.g. A: Did Dalida find her book?
B: Yes, she did.

Wh- question:

A: Wh- word | did | subject | (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ?
B: subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل ... .

e.g. A: Where did you find your pencil case?
B: I found it in my bag.





تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

إجازة	....	يركب جملًا	....
يقوم برحلة قصيرة	....	يبحر بالسفينة	....
قديم	....	يسافر بالقطار	....
يذهب فى رحلة طويلة	....	يذهب فى رحلة بحرية	....
مستكشف	....	مفكرة (مذكرات)	....

Lesson 2

مفاجئ	....	طين	....
اكتشاف	....	أدوات	....
منحوتات	....	علماء الآثار	....
حضارة	....	ثقافة	....
لغز	....	جودة	....

Lesson 3

الجمل العربى	....	ضخم	....
قافلة	....	منبهر	....
نكتة	....	يتمايل	....
قرية	....	أرض قاحلة	....
خطير	....	يلتف	....
محطم	....	أمتعة	....
كنز	....	كثبان رملية	....
عادة	....	يرتب	....
متعة	....	وقت فراغ	....

Lessons 4 & 5

مهارات	....	قارب شراعى	....
تقليدى	....	أشرعة	....
شعاع الشمس	....	ممتع	....
سحرى	....	مسالم	....
تجربة	....	آلة العود	....

WRITING TIME



لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about a famous traveler:

- (اسم الرحالة) was a famous traveler.
- He was born in (تاريخ ميلاده) in (مكان الميلاد).
- (اسم الرحالة) is (جنسيته).
- His most famous journey was to (مكان).
- When he reached (المكان), he (نشاط قام به).
- He wrote his famous diary that (محتوى المذكرة).

Marco Polo

Marco Polo was a famous traveler. He was born in 1254 in Venice. Marco Polo is Italian. His most famous journey was to China. When he reached China, he recorded much information about different animals and plants. He wrote his famous diary that described his journey.

How to write about experiences in the past:

- I went to + (مكان) with my family/ friends.
- We went by + (وسيلة مواصلات).
- We stayed there for a + (مدة زمنية).
- We enjoyed + (نشاط قمت به).
- We visited + (معالم سياحية).
- My favorite thing was + نشاط قمت به because (السبب).

My trip to Aswan

I went to Aswan with my family last year. We went there by train. We stayed there for a week. We enjoyed riding camels and boat sailing. We visited the Elephantine Island and Nubian villages. My favorite thing was boat trips because sailing is my favorite sport.

How to write a travel diary:

تاريخ اليوم الذي تتكلم عما حدث فيه

- I went on a trip to + مكان.
- We spent time + نشاط قمت به.
- We stopped to see + معالم سياحية.
- It was / They were + صفات المعالم السياحية.
- At night, we + نشاط قمت به.
- It was + وصف الرحلة.

"My trip to Luxor"

24 June

Today, I had an amazing experience. I went on a boat trip to Luxor. We spent time sailing on the Nile under the golden sunshine. We stopped to see the Temples of Abydos. They were tall, ancient, and fascinating. At night, we had dinner at a traditional restaurant. It was quiet and peaceful. The trip was amazing.



STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التى وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Match the words to their meanings:

A

1 clay
2 tools
3 sculptures
4 archaeologist
5 mystery

B

a. ( ) objects we use to make or do things
b. ( ) art made from stone or wood
c. ( ) a type of earth that is sticky when wet
d. ( ) a person who studies very old objects that they find under the ground
e. ( ) something that people do not understand or cannot explain

2 Circle the correct answer:

1 Hani didn't (go / went) on the palace tour with the guide.
2 A: Did your mom (made / make) your dress, Laila? B: Yes, she (did / didn't).
3 We didn't (have / had) a good meal in that restaurant.
4 The water in the sea (weren't / wasn't) warm.
5 A: Where did you (find / found) your books? B: They (was / were) in my bag.

3 Complete the dialog with the correct past simple form of the verb in brackets:

Sameh : How (1).. your trip, Kareem? (be)
Kareem : It (2).. really good, thanks. (be) We (3) .... to the Western Desert. (go)
Sameh : Wow! (4) .... you .... with your parents? (go)
Kareem : No, I (5).. with my uncle. (be) We (6).. some very nice places. (find)
Sameh : (7).. there any other children on the trip? (be)
Kareem : No, there (8).. . (be) But I (9).. fun! (have)









Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع أخر الكتاب)

1 Yesterday, I went on a .... trip.
a) camel b) bus c) train d) felucca

2 A felucca is a traditional sailing ....
a) boat b) ship c) instrument d) sail

3 A tall man called .... was the captain of the boat.
a) Adel b) Ali c) Kareem d) Omar

4 He had the .... to sail the felucca.
a) time b) money c) job d) skills

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

1 My uncle went on a long .... by sea. محافظة الشرقية - إدارة القنايات التعليمية 2024
a) trip b) ride c) train d) voyage

2 A team of ....found many sculptures in the area of the Pyramids. محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة دكرنس التعليمية 2024
a) doctors b) actors c) nurses d) archaeologists

3 Marco Polo was an Italian .... محافظة القليوبية - إدارة قليوب التعليمية 2024
a) baker b) explorer c) teacher d) farmer

4 We travel in the desert by .... محافظة الجيزة - إدارة منشأة القناطر التعليمية 2024
a) ship b) boat c) camel d) train

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

wind – captain – skills – cabin – explore

I had quite a relaxing sleep in my ....(1)............ last night, and this morning I had breakfast with the others on the ship. In the afternoon, there was good news from the ....(2)............: tomorrow, the weather will be good with no ....(3)............, so we can go to the island in the morning. The ship will leave when the sun comes up. I'm very excited. Soon, I can ....(4)............ the mysterious island!

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

Susan and her family went on a vacation to Croatia a few years ago. They visited the Marco Polo Museum. It's on an island in Croatia called Korcula. They took a trip there. It is a really interesting museum. It's all about the travels of Marco Polo. Marco Polo was an Italian explorer and one of the first people from the West to visit China. He went there in the 13th century and wrote a diary about his experiences, it is called *The Travels of Marco Polo*. It was a very difficult journey. It took years. محافظة القاهرة - إدارة شرق مدينة نصر التعليمية 2024

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about Susan's family ....

a) museum b) vacation c) palace d) house

2 Susan and her family went on a vacation to ....

a) Egypt b) China c) France d) Croatia

3 The Marco Polo Museum is on ....

a) a town b) a lake c) an island d) a city

B Answer the following questions:

4 Who was Marco Polo? ....

5 When did Marco Polo visit China? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 3

1 a – go – you – Where – did – on – vacation? محافظة البحيرة - إدارة إيتاي البارود التعليمية 2024

....

2 had – The – hair – complicated – sculptures – styles.

....

3 didn't – want – She – to go – a journey – on.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 2

1 My family .... (go) on a vacation last year. محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة غرب المنصورة التعليمية 2024

2 She .... (don't) cook fish yesterday. محافظة الشرقية - إدارة العاشر من رمضان التعليمية 2024

7 Punctuate the following: 1

where is Lop Nur

....

8 Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: مجاب عنه صفحة 310 5

"Marco Polo" محافظة القاهرة - إدارة المرج التعليمية 2024

famous traveler – China

....

....

....

....



< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Unit 5 AL-AZHAR CORNER

تحتوى هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأزهر.

1 Read and complete the dialogue:

amazing – felucca – favorite – reading – diary

Rana: What are you ...., Ingy?

Ingy : It's my travel .... I want to remember my trip to Luxor.

Rana: What was your .... thing about the vacation?

Ingy : I think it was the .... trip.

Rana: Really, it sounds ....

2 Choose the correct answer:

1 Nadia rode a (ship – boat – camel) in the desert last week.

2 The sculptures of the Nok were made from (wood – iron – clay).

3 Adel had an amazing (experience – civilization – culture) on the felucca trip.

4 Vasco da Gama was a famous (teacher – archaeologist – explorer) from the past.

5 I like to read my travel (bag – diary – game) to remember my travels.

6 My parents (travels – traveled – travel) to Italy on their last vacation.

7 Where (was – were – do – did) they go this morning?

8 My friends (don't – didn't – doesn't) meet me for dinner yesterday evening.

9 Yesterday (is – are – was) rainy and cloudy.

10 The kids (are – was – were) on board two hours ago.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 didn't – Omar – last – visit – France – year.

....

2 at the – Mona – a week – ago – was – party.

....

3 were – your – Where – parents – yesterday?

....

4 moved – slowly – The dromedaries – desert – in – the.

....

5 Did – visit – Museum – you – the Marco – Polo?

....



Unit 6

Taking Care

الاعتناء

Unit Objectives

- **By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:** ● بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

- listen, read, research, and write about making things at home and how to take care of him/herself.
  - يستمع، يقرأ، يبحث، ويكتب عن عمل الأشياء في المنزل وكيف يعتني بنفسه.
- talk about quantities.
  - يتحدث عن الكميات.
- find the meaning of words in a text.
  - يجد معاني الكلمات في نص.
- learn about personal care in Ancient Egypt.
  - يتعلم عن العناية الشخصية في مصر القديمة.
- write instructions to make something and quantities of ingredients.
  - يكتب تعليمات لعمل شيء ما وكميات المقادير.
- research and create a poster about different spices.
  - يبحث ويصمم ملصقًا عن التوابل المختلفة.

Did you know?

- When you brush your hair, it *spreads the natural oils from your skin through your hair from the roots to the ends. This protects your hair from heat and dirt, and makes it look *shiny and healthy.

Find out!

- The most popular personal care routines people do every day are having fresh morning showers and using skin *cleansers.

*spread	ينشر	*shiny	لامع	*cleansers	منظفات



Lesson 1

Let's Make Candles!

هيا نصنع الشموع!





1. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:



Main vocabulary



popsicle sticks
عصي المصاصة



drops
قطرات



wax
شمع



wick
فتيل



press
يضغط



squeeze
يعصر



stir
يقلب



heat
يسخن

Main vocabulary

candles	شموع	perfume oil	زيت عطرى	instructions	تعليمات
palm wax	شمع النخيل	little (adj.)	قليل / صغير	glass	كوب زجاجى
cotton rope	حبل قطنى	step	خطوة	quantities	كميات
package	عبوة	soap crystals	بلورات الصابون	flower petals	بتلات الزهور
ingredients	مكونات	bowl	وعاء	cooker	بوتاجاز
wooden spoon	ملعقة خشبية	hard (adj.)	صلب	soap container	حاوية صابون

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
need	يحتاج	needed	squeeze	يعصر	squeezed
press	يضغط	pressed	heat	يسخن	heated
melt	يذوب	melted	stir	يقلب	stirred

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
make	يصنع	made	say	يقول	said
take	يأخذ	took	hold	يمسك	held



Expressions and Phrases

have something in mind	تفكر في شيء ما	read (something) out	يقرأ بصوت عالٍ
Here it is.	ها هي!	that's enough	هذا كافٍ
smell lovely	رائحته جميلة	hold ... up	يمسك / يسند
let's see	دعنا نرى	take (something) ... off the cooker	يرفع (شيئًا ما) من على الموقد

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Here are some instructions to make candles. — ها هي بعض التعليمات لصنع الشمع.
* Use 450 grams of wax to make three candles. — استخدم حوالى ٤٥٠ جرامًا من الشمع لعمل ٣ شمعات.
* Squeeze in about 40 drops of perfume oil. — قم بعصر حوالى ٤٠ قطرة من الزيت العطرى.
* Press about 15 flowers on the tops of the candles. — اضغط حوالى ١٥ زهرة على الأجزاء العلوية من الشموع.
* You need a wick, a glass, and a popsicle for each candle. — تحتاج إلى فتيل وكوب وعصا خشبية لكل شمعة.

Tip!

When we listen for **quantities**, remember to listen/ look for numbers and words about measurements.

For example: kilograms, grams, liters, milliliters, spoons, packages, cans.

عندما تستمع إلى الكميات، تذكر أن تستمع / تبحث عن أرقام وكلمات القياسات. مثل: كيلوجرامات، جرامات، لتر، مليلتر، ملاعق، عبوات، علب.

نستخدم **الفعل فى المصدر (.inf)** لإعطاء التعليمات.

 Heat the wax to melt it, and stir well.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 I need to buy the (candles – soaps – ingredients – steps) for our meal today.

2 Squeeze in about 40 (wicks – drops – glasses – cookers) of perfume oil on the wax.

3 The (sand – perfume oil – salt – water) smells lovely.

4 (Stir – Put – Heat – Press) the wax to melt it.

5 Read the (ingredients – instructions – petals – containers) before using the new mobile.



Let's say it right!

لاحظ أن حرف الـ (l) فى كلمة (palm) لا ينطق "silent".



2. Listen, read, and role-play:



استمع، اقرأ، وتبادل الأدوار:



Mom Hi, Laila. I love making things. Why don't we make something new?

مرحبًا ليلى. أنا أحب صنع الأشياء. لماذا لا نصنع شيئًا جديدًا؟



Laila That's a great idea. Do you have something in mind?

إنها فكرة رائعة. هل لديك شيء في ذهنك؟



Mom I have some perfume oil. We can use it to make candles.

لدى بعض الزيت العطرى. يمكننا استخدامه لصنع الشموع.



Laila Candles? Wow! I love it!

الشموع؟ واو! أنا أحبها!



Mom Here are the instructions. Can you read them out to me?

ها هى التعليمات. هل يمكنك أن تقرئيها لى بصوت عالٍ؟



Laila Right. First, we need some wax.

حسنًا. فى البداية، نحتاج إلى بعض من الشمع.



Mom Here it is. It's palm wax from Egyptian palm trees. It makes really nice candles. How much do we need?

ها هو، هذا شمع النخيل المستخلص من أشجار النخيل المصرية. إنه حقًّا يصنع شموعًا جميلة. ما الكمية التى نحتاجها؟



Laila It says, "Use 450 grams of wax to make three candles."

التعليمات تقول:«استخدم 450 جرامًا من الشمع لتقوم بعمل ثلاث شمعات».



Mom Okay, there's about 500 grams here. That's enough. What's next?

حسنًا، يوجد حوالى 500 جرام هنا. هذا يكفى. ماذا بعد؟



Laila We need some perfume oil.

نحتاج إلى بعض الزيت العطرى.



Mom

Here. These are little bottles of lemon oil. Mmm ... they smell lovely. How much do we need?

ها هى، هذه زجاجات صغيرة من زيت الليمون . أممم ... إن رائحتها جميلة. ما الكمية التى نحتاج إليها؟

Laila

The instructions say, "Squeeze in about 40 drops of oil."

التعليمات تقول: «قم بعصر حوالى 40 قطرة من الزيت».



Mom

Fine. And we can take about 15 flowers and press them on the tops of the candles.

حسنًا. ويمكننا أن نأخذ حوالى 15 زهرة ونضغطها على الأجزاء العلوية من الشموع.



Laila

Yes, good idea. Then we need one glass for each candle and one wick – that's the little cotton rope inside the candle.

نعم، إنها فكرة جيدة. سوف نحتاج لكوب زجاجى واحد وفتيل واحد لكل شمعة - إنه ذلك الحبل القطنى الصغير بداخل الشمعة.

Mom

Oh, yes. And we need some popsicle sticks to hold the wicks up in the glasses.

أوه، نعم. ونحتاج لبعض عصى المصاصة لتثبت الفتيل بداخل الأكواب.



Laila

So that's three glasses, three wicks, and three popsicle sticks, right? Now, what do we need to do first?

إذًا سنحتاج ثلاثة أكواب وثلاث فتائل وثلاث عصى مصاصة، أذلك صحيح؟ إذن، ما الذى نحتاج إلى فعله أولاً؟



Mom

Let's see ... "Step one: Heat the wax to melt it, then stir it well."

دعينا نرى... «الخطوة الأولى: قم بتسخين الشمع لإذابته، ثم قلبه جيدًا».

The instructions for making soap:

تعليمات صنع الصابون:

1. Put the ingredients for your soap in a bowl.
   ضع مكونات الصابون الخاص بك فى وعاء.
2. Heat the ingredients on a cooker.
   سخن المكونات على البوتاجاز.
3. Next, stir the ingredients with a wooden spoon.
   ثم قم بتقليب المكونات باستخدام ملعقة خشبية .
4. Take the ingredients off the cooker.
   ارفع المكونات عن البوتاجاز.
5. When the ingredients are hard and cool, add them into a soap container.
   عندما تصبح المكونات صلبة وباردة، قم بإضافتها فى حاوية الصابون.
6. You can press flower petals to make the soap look and smell lovely.
   يمكنك أن تقوم بضغط بتلات الزهور لجعل شكل الصابون ورائحته جميلة.



Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Mom and Laila are making some ....
a) food b) soap c) candles d) perfume

2 First, they need about 450 grams of .... to make three candles.
a) oil b) salt c) flour d) wax

3 They need .... drops of perfume oil.
a) 10 b) 20 c) 30 d) 40

4 They need three .... and three glasses.
a) figs b) wicks c) dates d) bags

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Put little sugar in the tea and .... محافظة القاهرة – إدارة الزاوية الحمراء التعليمية 2024
a) cut b) stir c) drop d) throw

2 The .... smells lovely. You can add a few drops.
a) wax b) perfume oil c) candle d) wick

3 The wick is a cotton .... inside the candle.
a) oil b) stick c) rope d) wax

4 Heat the wax until it .... and stir it well.
a) squeezes b) melts c) presses d) holds

5 We use .... to have light when it's dark.
a) candles b) candies c) food d) soap

6 You must .... the button to make the machine work.
a) stir b) melt c) heat d) press

7 Nadia put some .... to hold the wicks inside the glasses.
a) wax b) perfume oil c) popsicle sticks d) bottles

8 We need some .... to make candles. محافظة الشرقية – إدارة العاشر من رمضان التعليمية 2024
a) flour b) wood c) juice d) wax

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

petals – heat – stirred – ingredients – container

Mom loves making new things. She wanted to make soap yesterday. First, she put the ....(1)............ in a bowl and heated them on the cooker. She ....(2)............ the ingredients with a wooden spoon. When the ingredients are hard and cool, Mom added them into a soap ....(3)............ . She also pressed some flower ....(4)............ to make the soap look and smell lovely.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Here are the instructions for making the candles. First, you need some wax. You can use palm wax that comes from Egyptian palm trees. Use 450 grams of wax to make three candles. You also need some perfume oil. You can use lemon oil. It smells lovely. Squeeze about 40 drops of the oil. You can use flower petals and press them on the top of the candles. First, heat the wax to melt it and stir it well. Put the wax in the glasses. Then, put the wicks inside the glasses. Use popsicle sticks to hold the wicks.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) making candles b) Egyptian palm trees
c) flower petals d) palm wax

2 The underlined word "wicks" means ....

a) wooden sticks b) small bottles c) cotton ropes d) perfume oil

3 We use .... to hold the wicks.

a) glasses b) popsicle sticks c) palm trees d) candles

B Answer the following questions:

4 Where does palm wax come from? ....

5 How many grams of wax do we need to make three candles? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 the – to – wax – Heat – it – melt.

....

2 out – Can – the – please – you – instructions, – read?

....

3 little – bottles – I – have – oil – of – lemon.

....

4 one – You – need – for each – wick – candle.

....

6 Punctuate the following:

1 how much wax do we need

....

2 first, we need some wax

....



Lesson 2





Ancient Egyptians Ate Well! أكل المصريون القدماء جيدًا!!



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

paintings	رسومات	barley	شعير	wheat	قمح
festivals	احتفالات	spices	توابل	herbs	أعشاب

Extra vocabulary

cooking	الطبخ	well	بطريقة جيدة	flood	فيضان
garlic	ثوم	lentils	عدس	beans	الفول
probably	من المحتمل	geese	إوز	honey	عسل
dates	تمر	figs	تين	sweet (adj.)	حلو المذاق
jar	إناء (برطمان)	occasion	مناسبة	taste	طعم / مذاق
traffic	حركة المرور	fridge	ثلاجة	vanilla essence	مستخلص الفانيلا

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
preserve	يحفظ	preserved	dry	يجفف	dried

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
drink	يشرب	drank	come	يأتي	came

Expressions and Phrases

depend on	يعتمد على	taste better	مذاقه أفضل
take care of	يعتني بـ	last for longer	يدوم لمدة أطول

Definitions

barley	a plant whose seeds we can use to make bread and other things نبات يمكننا استخدام بذوره في صنع الخبز وأشياء أخرى
herbs	plants with a strong taste often used in cooking نباتات لها مذاق قوى عادة تستخدم في الطهي
festival	a special occasion when people play music and eat nice food مناسبة خاصة عندما يعزف الناس الموسيقى ويأكلون طعامًا لذيذًا
preserve	add something to food to make it last for longer إضافة شيء ما للطعام لجعله يدوم لمدة أطول



2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Paintings from Ancient Egyptians show that people at this time took care of their bodies and ate very well! So what did the Ancient Egyptians eat and drink?
The water of the Nile has always helped Egyptian farmers to grow a lot of fruit and vegetables. At this time, the vegetables they could grow often depended on how much water came from the Nile floods. Ancient Egyptian farmers usually grew onions, garlic, lentils, and beans, and people cooked with all these vegetables. Farmers also grew wheat and barley. People used this to make bread and they ate a lot of this every day.

توضح لنا رسومات المصريين القدماء أن الناس فى هذا الوقت كانوا يعتنون بأجسادهم ويأكلون جيدًا! فماذا كان يأكل ويشرب المصريون القدماء؟
لقد ساعدت مياه النيل دائمًا المزارعين المصريين على زراعة الكثير من الفواكه والخضراوات. فى هذا الوقت، كانت الخضراوات التى يمكنهم زراعتها تعتمد فى كثير من الأحيان على كمية المياه القادمة من فيضانات النيل. عادة ما كان المزارعون المصريون القدماء يزرعون البصل والثوم والعدس والفول، وكان الناس يطهون كل هذه الخضراوات. كما قام المزارعون بزراعة القمح والشعير اللذين استخدمها الناس لصنع الخبز وكانوا يأكلون الكثير منه كل يوم.

Most people in Ancient Egypt only ate a little meat, usually at festivals. They probably ate a few fish and birds like ducks, geese, and chickens. They also ate some eggs and cheese from cows or goats.
There were a lot of bees in Ancient Egypt, and that means there was honey!
People often used honey with bread and cream to make cakes. They also used a few dates or figs to make sweet fruit drinks.

كان معظم الناس فى مصر القديمة يأكلون القليل من اللحوم، عادة فى المهرجانات. من المحتمل أنهم أكلوا عددًا قليلًا من الأسماك والطيور مثل البط والإوز والدجاج. كما أكلوا بعض البيض والجبن من الأبقار أو الماعز.
كان هناك الكثير من النحل فى مصر القديمة، وهذا يعنى أنه كان هناك عسل!
غالبًا ما كان يستخدم الناس العسل مع الخبز والقشدة لصنع الكعك. كما استخدموا أيضًا القليل من التمر أو التين لصنع مشروبات الفاكهة الحلوة.

Some families also knew how to use spices and herbs to make their cooking taste better, and they also knew how to preserve food. For example, they dried fish or used salt to preserve it, and used jars to keep fruit and vegetables for the winter.

كما عرفت بعض العائلات كيفية استخدام التوابل والأعشاب لتحسين مذاق طبخهم، كما عرفوا أيضًا كيفية حفظ الطعام. على سبيل المثال، كانوا يجففون الأسماك أو يستخدمون الملح لحفظها، واستخدموا الأوانى (البرطمانات) لحفظ الفواكه والخضراوات لفصل الشتاء.

Check

1 What did paintings from Ancient Egyptians show?

....

2 What did Ancient Egyptians grow?

....

Let's say it right!

لاحظ أن حرف الـ (h) فى كلمة (herbs) حرف صامت (silent) لا ينطق.



1. Countable and uncountable nouns

الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

Countable nouns:

- هى الأسماء التى (تعد) ولها مفرد وجمع.
- يسبق المفرد منها أداة النكرة "a" إذا بدأ بصوت ساكن و"an" إذا بدأ بصوت متحرك.
الحروف المتحركة (a - e - i - o - u)

a mango	المانجو	mangoes
a store	محل	stores
an apple	تفاحة	apples

Uncountable nouns:

- هى الأسماء التى (لا تعد)، ليس لها جمع وتعامل معاملة المفرد.
- الأسماء التى لا تعد لا تسبق بأداة نكرة (a/an).



sugar	سكر	water	مياه
oil	زيت	juice	عصير
traffic	مرور	money	نقود

2. Some/ Any

We use some and any to talk about quantities (countable/uncountable):

نستخدم some وany للحديث عن الكميات (المعدودة/غير المعدودة):



Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 Can I have (a – an – some – any) apple, please?
2 Would she like (some – any – a – any) coffee?
3 I can't find (some – a – an – any) butter in the fridge.
4 There (are – is – were – have) some juice in the glass.
5 My mom put (an – a – some – any) oranges in a bowl.



3. How many ...? كم العدد ...؟

We use "**How many** ...?" to ask about quantities of countable things.
نستخدم "كم العدد ...؟" للسؤال عن كميات الأشياء المعدودة.

How many + countable اسم يعد + ...?

- للرد على سؤال "How many" نستخدم:

(two/ three) رقم | (some) للتعبير عن عدد تقريبي | (a few) للتعبير عن عدد قليل | (many/ a lot of) للتعبير عن عدد كبير

e.g. A: How many lemons do we need for a lemonade?
B: We need (10/ a few/ many) lemons.

4. How much ...? كم الكمية ...؟

We use "**How much** ...?" to ask about quantities of uncountable things.
نستخدم "كم الكمية ...؟" للسؤال عن كميات الأشياء التى لا يمكن عدّها.

How much + uncountable noun اسم لا يعد + ...?

- للرد على سؤال "How much" نستخدم:

(a little) للتعبير عن كمية قليلة | (some) للتعبير عن كمية تقريبية | (much/ a lot of) للتعبير عن كمية كبيرة

e.g. A: How much wax do you need?
B: I need (a little/ some much) wax.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1. How (much – old – many – often) pencils do you have in your bag?
2. How (often – much – many – long) milk do you have in the carton?
3. How (many – much – often – old) cookies did you bake yesterday?
4. How (often – much – far – many) homework do you have for tomorrow?
5. There are (a few – a lot of – a little – much) clouds in the sky today. I don't think it's going to rain.
6. She only has (many – lot – a little – a few) perfume oil in the bottle.
7. Samar doesn't have (some – any – much – a little) pets at home.
8. Mom made (much – a little – any – some) candles yesterday.
9. There aren't (some – a little – much – any) tigers in Egypt.
10. We still have a (some – any – lot – little) of time. Let's stop for a drink of water.



Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 .... is a plant whose seeds we can use to make bread.
a) Garlic b) Herb c) Onion d) Barley

2 .... are plants with a strong taste often used in cooking.
a) Herbs b) Barley c) Paintings d) Lentils

3 Ancient Egyptians ate a little meat usually at ....
a) dinner b) lunchtime c) festivals d) breakfast

4 Ancient Egyptians depended on the water from the Nile .... to grow crops.
a) mud b) lights c) papyrus d) floods

5 Ancient Egyptians ate birds like ...., geese, and chicken.
a) figs b) ducks c) goats d) cows

6 Some families used .... and herbs to make their cooking taste better.
a) honey b) spices c) salt d) dates

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

geese – rice – Ancient – cheese – festivals

محافظة القاهرة - إدارة مدينة نصر التعليمية 2024

Paintings from Ancient Egyptians show that people at this time took care of their bodies and ate very well. Most people in ....(1)............ Egypt only ate a little meat. They usually ate meat at ....(2)............ . They probably ate a few fish and birds like ducks, ...(3)............, and chickens. They also ate meat and ....(4)............ from cows. They are great people of all ages.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 much – How – does – she – need – oil?

محافظة الجيزة - إدارة الوراق التعليمية 2024

....

2 many – How – do – have – brothers – you?

محافظة القاهرة - إدارة السلام التعليمية 2024

....

3 lemonade – the – in – There – bottle – is – some.

محافظة الجيزة - إدارة جنوب الجيزة التعليمية 2024

....

4 knew – Ancient – how to – Egyptians – food – preserve.

....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 We use .... (a few) butter to cook. محافظة القاهرة - إدارة المرج التعليمية 2024
2 How .... (many) oil do you need for the recipe? محافظة القاهرة إدارة الشروق التعليمية 2024
3 We need .... (any) lemons to make juice.
4 How .... (much) bottles of milk do you buy a week?
5 The chef needs .... (any) milk to make the cake.
6 There aren't .... (some) clouds in the sky today.
7 You added too .... (many) salt on the recipe.
8 I only need .... (a little) wicks for my candles.
9 There are .... (lot) of fruits and vegetables on the table.
10 Can I have .... (any) water, please?

5 Punctuate the following:

1 how many sandwiches do you need

....

2 there aren t any potatoes in the basket.

....

6 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 311

"Ancient Egyptians ate well"

paintings – a little meat – a lot of bees

....

....

....

....



Lesson 3





Story



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

caretakers	القائمون على الاعتناء بالمكان	throne	عرش	crown	تاج
scepter	صولجان (عصا الملك)	astonished (adj.)	مندهش	dust	تراب

Extra vocabulary

missing (adj.)	مفقود	palace	قصر	carpets	سجاد
precious (adj.)	ثمين	statues	تماثيل	furniture	أثاث
strange (adj.)	غريب	dining room	غرفة الطعام	royal (adj.)	ملكى
prince	أمير	princess	أميرة	empty (adj.)	فارغ
surprised (adj.)	متفاجئ	dangerously	بشكل خطر	curtains	ستائر
quiet (adj.)	هادئ	future	مستقبل	otherwise	وإلا
building	مبنى	vertical position	وضع رأسى	dirt	قذارة/ أتربة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
explore	يستكشف	explored	notice	يلاحظ	noticed
lean	يميل	leaned	knock	يطرق	knocked
explain	يشرح	explained	hurry	يتعجل	hurried
pick	يلتقط	picked	damage	يدمر	damaged

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
understand	يفهم	understood	fall	يسقط	fell

Expressions and Phrases

full of	ملىء بـ	look carefully	ينظر بدقة
lean over	يميل على	at once	فى الحال
go through	يمر من خلال	wash the dust off	يزيل الغبار
had to	كان يجب أن	have a bath	يستحم



Definitions

Word	Definition	
caretaker	people who look after and clean a building	الأشخاص الذين يعتنون بالمبنى
leaning	to bend or move from a vertical position	أن تنحنى أو تتحرك من الوضع الرأسى
astonished	very surprised	مندهش بشدة
dust	dry dirt inside a building	القذارة/ الأتربة الجافة داخل المبنى

The Missing King الملك المفقود



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The beginning



Peter lives in a big palace where his parents are the caretakers. The palace is old and no one lives there now. Peter likes to explore the rooms. They are full of interesting and precious things – old paintings, statues, carpets, and furniture.

One day, Peter notices something strange about the big painting in the dining room. Usually, this colorful painting shows one of the old kings sitting on the throne with a crown on his head and a long scepter in his hand. The queen and the royal children – the prince and the princess – are next to him. But today, the king's place in the painting is empty: he is missing!

يعيش بيتر فى قصر كبير ووالداه هما القائمان على الاعتناء بالمكان. القصر قديم ولا أحد يعيش هناك الآن. يحب بيتر اكتشاف الغرف. إنها مليئة بالأشياء المثيرة للاهتمام والثمينة - كاللوحات القديمة والتماثيل والسجاد والأثاث.

فى أحد الأيام، لاحظ بيتر شيئًا غريبًا على اللوحة الكبيرة فى غرفة الطعام. عادة ما تُظهر هذه اللوحة الملونة أحد الملوك القدامى يجلس على عرشه مع تاج على رأسه وصولجان طويل فى يده. الملكة والأطفال الملكيون- الأمير والأميرة بجانبه. لكن اليوم مكان الملك فى اللوحة فارغ: إنه مفقود!

The middle

Peter is surprised and looks carefully at the painting again. He can see the crown and scepter, but not the king. Also, the scepter is leaning dangerously over the princess's head. Peter knows he must find the king at once!

He goes through all of the rooms in the palace. He looks behind doors and curtains. Finally, he comes to the royal bathroom. He hears singing and knocks on the door. "Who is it?" says the king. "Please be quiet! I'm enjoying a hot bath!" Peter is astonished. When the king comes out, he says to him, "I spend years sitting in that painting and no one ever comes to wash the dust off me. Dust damages the painting, so I simply had to have a bath."

يتفاجأ بيتر وينظر بدقة فى اللوحة مرة أخرى. يمكنه رؤية التاج والصولجان، ولكن ليس الملك. كما أن الصولجان يميل بشكل خطير إلى رأس الأميرة الصغيرة! يعرف بيتر أنه يجب أن يجد الملك فى الحال!

يمر بيتر بجميع الغرف فى القصر، ينظر خلف الأبواب والستائر. وأخيرًا، يأتى إلى الحمام الملكى. يسمع صوت الغناء. يطرق على الباب «من هذا؟» يقول الملك. «من فضلك كن هادئًا! أنا أستمتع بحمام ساخن!». بيتر مندهش. عندما يخرج الملك، يقول له: «أقضى سنوات جالسًا فى تلك اللوحة ولا أحد يأتى أبدًا ليزيل الغبار عنى. الغبار يدمر اللوحة. لذلك كان على ببساطة أن أستحم».

The end

Peter understands but explains to the king that his scepter is about to fall on the princess. "Thank you, my boy," the king says. "I will hurry back. But in the future, please clean the paintings in the palace. Otherwise, they'll be damaged forever!" and he runs back to the painting to pick up the scepter.
Peter now cleans all the paintings in the palace so that they aren't damaged - and so that no one has to leave their painting to have a good bath!

يفهم بيتر لكنه يشرح للملك أن صولجانه على وشك السقوط على الأميرة. «شكرًا لك يا ولدى» يقول الملك. «سأعود بسرعة. ولكن فى المستقبل، يرجى تنظيف اللوحات الموجودة فى القصر. وإلا فإنها سوف تتضرر إلى الأبد!» ويركض عائدًا إلى اللوحة ليلتقط الصولجان.
الآن يقوم بيتر بتنظيف كل اللوحات فى القصر حتى لا تتضرر - وحتى لا يضطر أحد إلى ترك لوحته لأخذ حمام جيد!

Check

1 Why does Peter live in a palace? SB

....

2 Where did the king go?

....

3 Why is the princess in danger? 

....

Tip!

You can use **pictures** in a story to help you understand new words.
You can also look at the words around an unknown word in a text to help you understand it.

من الممكن أن نستخدم الصور فى القصة لنفهم الكلمات الجديدة. من الممكن أيضًا أن ننظر إلى الكلمات حول الكلمة غير المعروفة فى النص لتساعدك على فهم الكلمة غير المعروفة.

For example:
Is there an article (a/an/the) before the word, or an adjective?
If there is, it's a noun. You can then look at the sentences around it and think what the noun could mean in the context.

على سبيل المثال:
هل هناك أداة مثل (a/an /the) أو صفة قبل الكلمة؟
إذا كان هناك شيء من ذلك فهذا يعنى أنها اسم. يمكنك بعد ذلك أن تتمعن فى الجمل حولها وتفكر ماذا يمكن أن يعنى هذا الاسم من خلال السياق.



1 Peter's parents are the caretakers. (noun)
2 Peter is astonished. (adjective)
3 The scepter is leaning dangerously. (verb)



CLIL: Social Studies

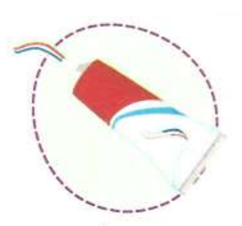
Ancient Egyptian Traditions عادات مصرية قديمة

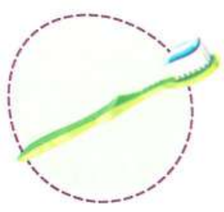


3. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:




hairbrush
فرشاة شعر


toothpaste
معجون أسنان


toothbrush
فرشاة أسنان


stick
عصا


incense
بخور / عطر


powder
مسحوق


cardamom
الحبهان


cinnamon
قرفة

Extra vocabulary

traditions	عادات	personal care	عناية شخصية	products	منتجات
popular (adj.)	شائع (مشهور)	Kapet	كابت «اسم عطر فرعوني»	expensive (adj.)	غالي الثمن
ingredients	مكونات	common (adj.)	شائع/ منتشر	rosemary	روزماري (نوع من التوابل)
mint	نعناع	herbs	أعشاب	minerals	معادن
cone shape	مخروطي الشكل	festivals	احتفالات	papyrus	نبات البردى
rock salt	ملح صخري	pepper	فلفل	dried (adj.)	مجفف
iris flower	زهرة السوسن	mint candies	حلوى النعناع	melon	شمام(كنتالوب)
pine seeds	بذور الصنوبر	nuts	مكسرات	mixture	خليط

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
mix	يخلط	mixed	tie	يربط	tied
rub	يفرك	rubbed	heat	يسخن	heated

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
wear	يرتدي	wore	cut	يقطع	cut

Expressions and Phrases

first used	تم استخدامه لأول مرة	difficult to find	صعب الحصول عليه
quite strange	غريب إلى حد ما	over a fire	على النار



Personal Care In The Past العناية الشخصية فى الماضى

4. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Many of the products we use today for personal care were first used in Ancient Egypt!

معظم أدوات العناية الشخصية التى نستخدمها اليوم كانت تستخدم فى مصر القديمة!

Perfumes العطور



The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes.
The most popular perfume was called *kapet*. It was expensive because it had a lot of ingredients, some of which were difficult to find. But it also had a few common herbs in it, like rosemary and mint, and spices like cardamom and cinnamon. Cheaper perfumes were made from flowers, herbs, and some types of minerals, then mixed with oil to make a cream. Or they pressed the dry ingredients into a cone shape to make incense.
In Ancient Egyptian paintings, you can often see men and women wearing these perfume cones on their heads at festivals!

أحب المصريون القدماء العطور القوية. كان العطر الأكثر شعبية يسمى «كابت». كان باهظ الثمن لأنه يحتوى على الكثير من المكونات، وبعضها كان من الصعب العثور عليه. ولكنه يحتوى أيضًا على بعض الأعشاب مثل الروزمارى والنعناع، وبعض التوابل مثل الحبهان والقرفة. صُنعت العطور الأرخص من الزهور والأعشاب وبعض أنواع المعادن، ثم خلطوها مع الزيت لصنع الكريم، أو ضغطوا المكونات الجافة فى شكل مخروطى لصنع البخور. فى اللوحات المصرية القديمة يمكنك رؤية الرجال والنساء الذين يرتدون مخاريط العطر هذه على رءوسهم فى المهرجانات!

Toothpaste معجون الأسنان

To clean their teeth, Ancient Egyptians used a type of toothbrush – a stick with small pieces of papyrus tied to it at one end. The ingredients of their toothpaste were mint, rock salt, pepper, and dried iris flowers. They put this dry powder directly onto their teeth and rubbed it with their toothbrushes.

لتنظيف أسنانهم، استخدم المصريون القدماء نوعًا من فرشاة الأسنان - عصا مع قطع صغيرة من البردى مربوطة بها فى أحد الطرفين.كانت مكونات معجون الأسنان تحتوى على النعناع والملح الصخرى والفلفل وزهور السوسن المجففة. يضعون هذه البودرة الجافة مباشرة على أسنانهم ويفركونها بفرش الأسنان.

Breath Mints حلوى بطعم النعناع

To keep their mouths fresh all day, the Ancient Egyptians made mint candies. They mixed cinnamon, melon, pine seeds, and some nuts together with honey. Then they heated the mixture over a fire, left it to cool, and cut it into small square candies.

للحفاظ على رائحة نفسهم منتعشة طوال اليوم، صنع المصريون القدماء حلوى النعناع. قاموا بخلط القرفة والشمام وبذور الصنوبر وبعض المكسرات مع العسل.ثم قاموا بتسخين الخليط فوق النار، وتركوه ليبرد، وقطعوه إلى حلوى مربعة صغيرة.



Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Peter lives in a big ....
a) village b) house c) farm d) palace

2 The palace is .... and no one lives there now.
a) modern b) old c) new d) small

3 Peter likes to .... the rooms of the palace.
a) explore b) clean c) sweep d) paint

4 The rooms are full of paintings, statues, ..., and furniture.
a) carpets b) curtains c) food d) windows

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 A king always sits on a ....
محافظة المنوفية - إدارة منوف التعليمية 2024
a) scepter b) desk c) castle d) throne

2 The queen lives in a/an ....
محافظة الجيزة - إدارة الدقي التعليمية 2024
a) palace b) apartment c) tent d) home

3 We use a .... to brush our hair every day.
محافظة الجيزة - إدارة القاهرة الجديدة التعليمية 2024
a) hairbrush b) toothpaste c) candies d) soap

4 You should clean your teeth daily with a/an ....
محافظة القاهرة - إدارة القاهرة الجديدة التعليمية 2024
a) hairbrush b) stick c) spices d) toothbrush

5 .... are the people who look after a building.
a) Parents b) Students c) Caretakers d) Kings

6 The king and the queen wear .... on their heads.
a) thrones b) crowns c) scepters d) palaces

7 When something is very dirty, it's usually covered in ....
a) carpets b) curtains c) furniture d) dust

8 The most popular .... in Ancient Egypt is called *kapet*.
a) shampoo b) cream c) perfume d) herb

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

missing – precious – crown – royal – painting

Peter lives in a big palace where his parents are the caretakers. One day, Peter notices something strange about the big ....(1)........... in the dining room. The painting usually shows a king sitting on the throne with a ....(2)........... on his head and a long scepter in his hand. The queen and the ....(3)........... children are next to him. But today the king's place in the painting is empty, he is ....(4)........... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes. The most popular perfume was called *kapet*. It was expensive because it had a lot of ingredients, some of which were difficult to find. But it also had a few common herbs in it, like rosemary and mint, and spices like cardamom and cinnamon. Cheaper perfumes were made from flowers, herbs, and some types of minerals, then mixed with oil to make a cream. Or they pressed the dry ingredients into a cone shape to make incense. In Ancient Egyptian paintings, you can often see men and women wearing these perfume cones on their heads at festivals.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about .... in Ancient Egypt.
a) festivals b) perfumes c) boats d) plants

2 The underlined word "expensive" means ....
a) difficult b) precious c) common d) cheap

3 Cheaper perfumes were made from ....
a) flour b) wood c) flowers d) sand

B Answer the following questions:

4 What was the most popular perfume in Ancient Egypt called? ....

5 What can you see in Ancient Egyptian paintings? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 Egyptians – loved – Ancient – strong – perfumes.
....

2 Egyptians – mint – The – made – candies – Ancient.
....

3 find – Where – king – Peter – does – the?
....

4 cleans – Peter – all the – in the – palace – paintings.
....



6 Punctuate the following:

1 They mixed cinnamon, melon pine seed, and some nuts together
....

2 Ancient egyptians made mint candies
....



Lessons 4 & 5

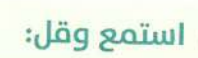




Writing



1. Listen and say:





Main vocabulary

Main vocabulary

salt dough	عجينة الملح	recipe	وصفة	ingredients	مكونات
baking tray	صينية خبز	spices	توابل	flavors	نكهات/ أطعمة
secret	سر	souvenirs	هدايا تذكارية	souks	الأسواق

Extra vocabulary

preparation time	وقت الإعداد	cooking	طبخ	plain flour	دقيق صاف
method	طريقة	oven	فرن	low temperature	درجة حرارة منخفضة
bowl	وعاء	flat (adj.)	مسطح	surface	سطح
3D objects	أشكال ثلاثية الأبعاد	items	أغراض	paint	دهان
combination	خلطة	besides	بالإضافة إلى	dishes	أطباق
medicine	دواء	cloth	قماش	packaged	مغلفة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعــال منتظمة

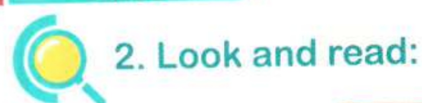
Present		Past	Present		Past
form	يُكَوِّن / يُشَكِّل	formed	roll	يلف	rolled

Expressions and Phrases

on a low temperature	على درجة حرارة منخفضة	work it into shapes	يُشَكِّل إلى أشكال
roll it flat	لفها بشكل مسطح	cut out shapes	يقطع إلى أشكال
until it's hard	حتى تصبح صلبة	beautifully packaged	مغلفة بطريقة جميلة

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Special combinations of spices are a secret ingredient in many recipes.
  خلطات خاصة من التوابل هى المكون السرى فى عديد من الوصفات.
* We can also use spices to color cloth and make medicine. يمكننا استخدام التوابل فى صبغ القماش وصنع الأدوية.
* Spices make great souvenirs for tourists visiting stores and souks.
  تعد التوابل هدايا تذكارية رائعة للسياح الذين يزورون المتاجر والأسواق.



2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Salt Dough Recipe وصفة عجينة الملح



1. Preparation time وقت التحضير

10 minutes + 3 hours for cooking ١٠ دقائق + ٣ ساعات من الطهى

2. Ingredients المكونات

1 cup of plain flour (about 250g)
½ a cup of salt (about 125g)
½ a cup of water (about 125ml)

كوب واحد من الدقيق الصافى (حوالى ٢٥٠ جم)
نصف كوب من الملح حوالى (١٢٥ جم)
نصف كوب من الماء (حوالى ١٢٥ ملم)

3. Method الطريقة

1. Heat the oven on a low temperature.
2. Mix the flour and salt in a large bowl. Add a little water, then a little more, and stir the mixture until it starts to form a ball.
3. Put the ball of dough on a flat surface and work it into the shape you want. You can roll it flat and cut out shapes, numbers, or letters, or use the dough to make 3D objects.
4. Put your finished items on a baking tray and bake in the oven for 3 hours until it is hard.
5. Leave the items to cool, then paint them.

١. سخن الفرن على درجة حرارة منخفضة.
٢. اخلط الدقيق والملح فى وعاء كبير . أضف القليل من الماء، ثم أكثر قليلًا، وحرك الخليط حتى يبدأ فى تشكيل كرة.
٣. ضع كرة العجين على سطح مستو وشكلها بالشكل الذى تريده. يمكنك لفها بشكل مسطح وتقطيعها إلى أشكال أو أرقام أو حروف أو استخدام العجين لصنع أشكال ثلاثية الأبعاد.
٤. ضع الأغراض النهائية على صينية الخبز واخبزها فى الفرن لمدة ٣ ساعات حتى تصبح صلبة.
٥. اترك الأغراض لتبرد ثم لونها.



When we write instructions for the steps in a process, we often number them. This shows the reader that they have to do the steps in order to complete the process correctly.

عندما نكتب تعليمات لخطوات فى عملية ما، عادة ما نقوم بترقيمها. وهذا يوضح للقراء أن عليهم القيام بالخطوات بالترتيب ليكملوا العملية بنجاح.

Check

1 How much time do you need to make a salt dough recipe?

....

2 How much salt do you need to make salt dough?

....

3 What should you do after baking the items?

....





3. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

What do we use spices for? فيما نستخدم التوابل؟



Egyptian flavors! النكهات المصرية!

Egypt is famous for its spices that are used in home cooking and restaurants all across the country. Special combinations of different spices are a secret ingredient in many recipes. But what else can we make with spices, besides delicious dishes? We can also use them to make perfume, and medicine, and to color cloth. They also make great souvenirs, and are beautifully packaged for tourists visiting spice stores and souks.

تشتهر مصر بتوابلها التى تستخدم فى الطبخ المنزلى والمطاعم فى جميع أنحاء البلد. تعتبر الخلطات الخاصة من التوابل المختلفة مكونًا سريًا فى العديد من الوصفات. ولكن ماذا أيضًا يمكننا أن نصنع بالتوابل بالإضافة إلى الأطباق اللذيذة؟ يمكننا أيضًا أن نستخدمها لصنع العطور والأدوية وتلوين القماش. كما أنها تمثل هدايا تذكارية رائعة، ويتم تعبئتها بشكل جميل للسياح الذين يزورون متاجر التوابل والأسواق.

Check

1. What is Egypt famous for?

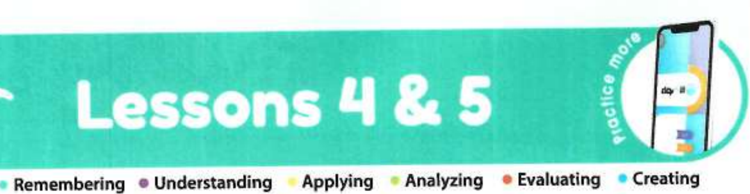
   ....

2. What else can we make with spices?

   ....

3. Where can tourists buy spices?

   ....



Practice

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Tourists buy .... when they visit Egypt. محافظة القاهرة - إدارة القاهرة الجديدة التعليمية 2024
a) houses b) souvenirs c) cars d) cats

2 She likes to add .... to her food. محافظة الجيزة - إدارة الهرم الجديدة التعليمية 2024
a) spices b) toothpaste c) perfume d) soap

3 .... the oven on low temperature.
a) Roll b) Stir c) Heat d) Mix

4 Stir the .... until it starts to form a ball.
a) tray b) method c) mixture d) bowl

5 You need to .... the flour, milk, oil, and eggs to make the cake.
a) heat b) mix c) put d) paint

6 The .... of the salt dough are flour, salt and water.
a) method b) ingredients c) cooking d) temperature

7 You can bake things in a/an ....
a) river b) oven c) souk d) store

8 Tourists can buy spices at spice stores or ....
a) cookers b) souvenirs c) souks d) squares

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

tray – cooking – temperature – flour – numbers

The salt dough recipe is my favorite recipe to make. It takes three hours for ....(1)............ . The ingredients are a cup of plain ....(2)............, 125g of salt and 125ml of water. To make it, first, heat the oven on a low ....(3)............ . Mix the ingredients in a bowl. Cut the mixture into shapes. Put the shapes in a baking ....(4)............ . And bake them until they are hard.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Egypt is famous for its spices that are used in home cooking and restaurants all across the country. Special combinations of different spices are a secret ingredient in many recipes. And we don't only use spices to cook food, we also use them in perfume, medicine, and to color cloth. Spices are sold in stores, on the streets, and in the souks. Fresh, colorful, and beautifully packaged spices are one of the favorite souvenirs that tourists buy when they visit Egypt.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) Egyptian restaurants
b) Egyptian stores
c) Egyptian spices
d) Egyptian streets

2 We can use spices in perfume, color cloth, and ....

a) streets b) medicine c) souks d) stores

3 The underlined word "souvenirs" means ....

a) presents b) herbs c) food d) stores

B Answer the following questions:

4 What is Egypt famous for? ....

5 Write two uses of the Egyptian spices. ....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 on – a – Heat – the – oven – temperature – low.

....

2 are – used – Spices – cooking – in – home.

....

3 buy – visit – Tourists – they – when – spices – Egypt.

....

4 its – famous – Egypt – for – spices – is.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

1 egypt is famous for its spices

....

2 what else can we make with spices

....

6 Write a paragraph of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 311

"Egyptian spices"

famous for – special combination – cooking

....

....

....

....

Unit 6 REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التى وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

popsicle sticks	عصى المصاصة	perfume oil	زيت عطرى
cotton rope	حبل قطنى	drops	قطرات
wax	شمع	wick	فتيل
candles	شموع	top	قمة
instructions	تعليمات	palm wax	شمع النخيل
soap crystals	بلورات الصابون	flower petals	بتلات الزهور
wooden spoon	ملعقة خشبية	soap container	حاوية الصابون
step	خطوة	cooker	موقد

Lesson (2)

barley	شعير	festivals	احتفالات
paintings	رسومات	herbs	أعشاب
occasion	مناسبة	garlic	ثوم
flood	فيضان	lentils	عدس
wheat	قمح	geese	إوز
beans	فول	fridge	ثلاجة
spices	توابل	depend on	يعتمد على
preserve	يحفظ	dry	يجفف

Lesson (3)

caretakers	القائمون على الاعتناء بالمكان	crown	تاج
scepter	صولجان	throne	عرش
astonished	مندهش	dust	تراب
palace	قصر	precious	ثمين
toothpaste	معجون أسنان	toothbrush	فرشاة شعر
hairbrush	فرشاة شعر	perfume	عطر
shampoo	شامبو	stick	عصا
incense	بخور/ عطر	powder	مسحوق
cardamom	الحبهان	cinnamon	قرفة

Lessons (4 & 5)

salt dough	عجينة الملح	recipe	وصفة
ingredients	مكونات	method	طريقة
secret	سر	souks	الأسواق
flavors	نكهات	plain flour	دقيق صافى
oven	فرن	surface	سطح
baking tray	صينية خبز	low temperature	درجة حرارة منخفضة
combination	خلطة	medicine	دواء
cloth	قماش	souvenirs	هدايا تذكارية

Language Focus

some/ any

Using some and any to talk about quantities (countable/ uncountable):

some
- There are some girls from Luxor in my class.
- Would you like some tea?
- Can you buy some bread, please?

any
- There isn't any sugar in the jar.
- Are there any white lions in Egypt?

How many ...?

How many + countable noun .... ?

- للرد على سؤال "How many" نستخدم:

two, three, | some | a few | many, a lot of

e.g. A: How many lemons do we need for a lemonade?
B: We need (10/ a few/ many) lemons.

How much ...?

How much + uncountable noun .... ?

- للرد على سؤال "How much" نستخدم:

a little | some | much, a lot of

e.g. A: How much wax do you need?
B: I need (a little/ much/ some) wax.





تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

يسخن	....	عصى مصاصة	....
يقلب	....	قطرات	....
تعليمات	....	شمع	....
زيت عطرى	....	يضغط	....
فتيل	....	يعصر	....
بتلات زهور	....	شموع	....

Lesson 2

شعير	....	احتفالات	....
أعشاب	....	رسومات	....
إوز	....	قمح	....
فيضان	....	يحفظ	....

Lesson 3

القائمون على الاعتناء بالمكان	....	عرش	....
صولجان (عصا الملك)	....	تراب	....
تاج	....	شامبو	....
صابونة	....	فرشاة شعر	....
قرفة	....	معجون أسنان	....
فرشاة أسنان	....	عطر	....
كريم	....	بخور	....
قرفة	....	الحبهان	....

Lessons 4 & 5

مكونات	....	عجينة الملح	....
وقت الإعداد	....	طريقة	....
توابل	....	نكهات	....
دواء	....	خلطة	....
قماش	....	هدايا تذكارية	....

WRITING TIME





لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write instructions for making candles:

- First, we need + (المكونات التى تحتاجها).
- We need + (الكمية التى نحتاجها من كل مكون).
- Then, + (الخطوة الثانية من عمل الشمع).
- Finally, + (آخر خطوة فى عمل الشمع).

Instructions for making candles

Here are the instructions for making candles: First, we need wax, wicks, and perfume oil. We need 450 grams of wax to make three candles. Then, heat the wax to melt it and stir it well. Squeeze about 40 drops of oil on hot wax. Next, put the wax into shaping glasses. Put some popsicle sticks to hold the wicks in the glasses. Finally, leave it cool before getting hard.

How to write about Ancient Egyptians personal care traditions:

Answer these questions:

- When were most personal care products first used?
- What was the most famous perfume in Ancient Egypt called?
- What did Ancient Egyptians use as toothbrushes?
- How did Ancient Egyptians keep their mouths fresh all day?

Personal care in Ancient Egypt

Most personal care products were first used in Ancient Egypt. Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes. The most popular perfume in Ancient Egypt was called *kapet*. They also used sticks with pieces of papyrus at the end as toothbrushes. Ancient Egyptians kept their mouths fresh all day by making mint candies.

How to write a recipe:

- Write the preparation time (using minutes/hours).
- Write the needed ingredients (using units of measurement like grams/ millimeters).
- Write the steps of the recipe using (inf.).

Salt dough recipe

It takes 10 minutes for the mixture and 3 hours for cooking to make the salt dough recipe. You need 1 cup of plain flour, 125g of salt and 125ml of water.
First, heat the oven on a low temperature. Mix the flour, salt, and the water in a bowl until they form a ball. Put it on a flat surface and cut it into shapes. Bake the shapes for three hours until they are hard. Leave the items to cool, then paint them.



STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التى وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Match the verbs to the pictures:

1 stir 2 squeeze 3 press 4 heat






2 Complete the dialogs with How much or How many:

1 Hani : .... milk do you want in your coffee, Grandma?
Grandma : Just a little milk, thanks Hani.

2 Fareeda : .... students are there in your English class, Dalia?
Dalia : There are about forty, I think.

3 Sherif : .... math problems did you do yesterday?
Karim : Just a few. They were difficult!

4 Rana : I'm going to the market now. .... tomatoes do we need?
Mom : Please get a kilo of tomatoes and some fruit.

5 Hana : .... honey do we have, Ayman?
Ayman : We have a lot. See the jar on the left.

3 Circle the correct answer:

1 Please hurry. We don't have a lot of / a few time.
2 Can I have a little / a few sugar in my coffee, please?
3 There isn't some / any bread. Can you buy some / a few?
4 There are a few/ a little lemons in the fridge, so we don't need any more.
5 How many / much candles does 450 grams of wax make?
6 How many / much cooking oil do I need to put in the pan?



UNIT 6





1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1. The Ancient Egyptians loved strong ....
   a) animals b) people c) crops d) perfumes
2. *Kapet* was .... because it had a lot of ingredients.
   a) cheap b) expensive c) weak d) bad
3. *Kapet* also had a few common .... and spices in it.
   a) plants b) herbs c) flowers d) fruits
4. Cheaper perfumes had ingredients that were .... with oil to make cream.
   a) heated b) stirred c) bakes d) mixed

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1. "................................" are plants with strong taste often used in cooking.
   a) Flowers b) Herbs c) Fruits d) Ducks
2. We need some .... to make candles. محافظة القاهرة - إدارة الشروق التعليمية 2024
   a) wool b) water c) wood d) wax
3. What is the .... of this dish? محافظة المنوفية - إدارة سرس الليان التعليمية 2024
   a) to b) recipe c) oil d) receive
4. .... the wax to melt it.
   a) Heat b) Press c) Squeeze d) Cool

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

spices – dried – a few – preserve – honey

محافظة دمياط - إدارة دمياط الجديدة التعليمية 2024

There were a lot of bees in Ancient Egypt and that means there was ....(1)...........! People used it with bread and cream to make cakes. Some families also knew how to use ....(2)........... and herbs to make their cooking taste better, and they also knew how to ....(3)........... food. They ....(4)........... fish or used salt to preserve it, and used jars to keep fruit and vegetables for the winter.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 5

Many of the products we use today for personal care were first used in Ancient Egypt! The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes. The most popular perfume was called *kapet*. Cheaper perfumes were made from flowers, herbs, and some types of minerals, then mixed with oil to make a cream. Or they pressed the dry ingredients into a cone shape to make incense. They also keep their mouths fresh all day by using mint candies. They mixed cinnamon, melon, pine seeds, and some nuts together with honey. Then, they cut the mixture into small square candies.

A **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1 The general idea of the text is about ....
a) personal care in the past b) Egyptian perfumes
c) mint d) some herbs

2 The most popular perfume in Ancient Egypt was called ....
a) melon b) incense c) *kapet* d) cinnamon

3 They cut the mixture into .... square candies.
a) small b) big c) long d) tall

B **Answer the following questions:**

4 What were the ingredients of the cheaper perfumes? ....

5 Why did the Ancient Egyptians use mint candies? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3)

1 much – How – does – have – she – juice?
....

2 has – He – milk – in his – a little – coffee.
....

3 a lot of – There are – lovely – lemons – Egypt – in. محافظة القاهرة - إدارة السلام التعليمية 2024
....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2)

1 There aren't .... (some) tigers in Egypt. محافظة المنيا - إدارة المنيا التعليمية 2024

2 Please, hurry. We don't have .... (many) time. محافظة القاهرة - إدارة شرق مدينة نصر التعليمية 2024

7 Punctuate the following: (1)

ancient Egyptians made mint candies
....

8 Write a paragraph of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

مجاب عنه صفحة 311

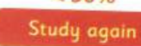
"Salt dough recipe"

plain flour – 3 hours for cooking

....
....
....
....



Assess your progress



< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Unit 6 AL-AZHAR CORNER

تحتوى هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأزهر.

1 Read and complete the dialogue:

instructions – salt – flour – have – making

Mom : I love .... things. Why don't we make something new?
Laila : Do you .... something in mind?
Mom : I have some plain .... We can make a salt dough.
Laila : A .... dough! What a great idea!
Mom : Here are the .... for making the dough.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. (Stir – Squeeze – Bake) about 40 drops of perfume oil.
2. She needs 450 grams of (paper – plastic – wax) to make three candles.
3. Ancient Egyptians used (spices – sticks – herbs) with papyrus as toothbrushes.
4. A combination of (minerals – candles – spices) is the secret ingredient in many recipes.
5. First, (eat – cut – heat) the oven on a low temperature.
6. How (many – much – often) eggs does she have for breakfast?
7. I think Mom needs (a few – many – a little) honey for the recipe.
8. How (often – many – much) salt do we have in the jar?
9. Nadia has (much – a little – a lot of) friends at school.
10. There is a (few – lot – little) perfume oil in the bottle.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. is – famous – Egypt – its – spices – for.
....
2. make – Why – don't – we – new – something?
....
3. 40 drops – Squeeze – oil – of – about.
....
4. time – do – we – How – much – need?
....
5. fridge – There – in – isn't – any – the – bread.
....



Final Revision and Exams

- Revision on Vocabulary
- Revision on Grammar
- Exercises on each 2 Units
- 12 Final Exams
- 3 Azhar Exams
- 2 امتحان دمج

Units 1&2  A) Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 1

apartment block	مبنى سكنى	harvest	يحصد	competition	مسابقة
roof	سطح	dates	بلح (تمر)	logo	شعار (علامة مميزة للدعاية)
gymnastics	ألعاب الجمباز	natural fertilizer	سماد طبيعى	community	مجتمع
organization	منظمة	chemicals	مواد كيمائية	volunteer	متطوع
mini	مصغر	neighborhood	حى (مكان)	forest	غابة
urban	حضرى	effects	تأثيرات	aid	مساعدة
nature	الطبيعة	lettuce	خس	organic	عضوى
foreign	أجنبى	data	بيانات	project	مشروع
species	فصائل / أنواع	the countryside	الريف	art works	أعمال فنية
view	منظر	theater performance	أداء مسرحى	hang out	يتجول / يتسكع
local residents	السكان المحليون	pass through	يمر عبر	miss	يفتقد
railway line	خط السكة الحديد	noisy	صاخب	selfish	أنانى
giant	عملاق	hole	حفرة	share	يشارك
village	قرية	leaves	أوراق الشجر	porridge	عصيدة (أكلة شعبية فى أسكتلندا)
Scotland	أسكتلندا	Scottish	أسكتلندى	tiny	صغير الحجم

Unit 2

shy	خجول	website	موقع إلكترونى	calm	هادئ
court	ملعب	borrow	يستعير	scared	خائف
polite	مؤدب	fantasy	خيال	messy	فوضوى
gym (gymnasium)	صالة ألعاب رياضية	planet	كوكب	organized	منظم
laboratory	معمل	fur	فرو	nervous	متوتر / عصبى
experiments	تجارب	alive	على قيد الحياة	independent	مستقل
intelligent	ذكى	physical education	التربية الرياضية	spaceship	سفينة فضاء
sharp	حاد	worried	قلق	fountain	نافورة
Earth	كوكب الأرض	claws	مخالب	textbooks	الكتب الدراسية
worksheets	ورق تدريبات	pet	يدلل / يلاطف	equipment	أدوات
hare	أنثى الأرنب البرى	benches	مقاعد	information technology	تكنولوجيا المعلومات





on Vocabulary (Units 1 & 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 They love working in the ………… garden. It is a big green space on the roof.
a) society b) community c) block d) street

2 To get organic food, we use natural ………… . القاهرة - إدارة الوايلى التعليمية 2024
a) tools b) gardens c) chemicals d) fertilizer

3 They are ………… . They take no money. الجيزة - إدارة الدقى التعليمية 2024
a) teachers b) doctors c) farmers d) volunteers

4 I like to eat vegetables and fruits which are organic with no ………… .
a) chemicals b) leaves c) roots d) dates

5 "…………" are the people who live in a neighborhood.
a) Kids b) Classmates c) Local residents d) Foreigners

6 There's someone here, I can hear his ………… . الجيزة - شمال الجيزة التعليمية 2024
a) voice b) clothes c) books d) face

7 "…………" means to go from one place to another.
a) Miss b) Pass through c) Relax d) Describe

8 There's a ………… near my house, but there aren't any trains using it now. المنوفية - إدارة الباجور التعليمية 2024
a) minaret b) souk c) palace d) railway line

9 Cats have ………… claws and teeth. Don't make them angry. الشرقية - ديرب نجم التعليمية 2024
a) soft b) dull c) sharp d) blunt

10 My sister is ………… . Her books are on the floor. الإسكندرية - إدارة وسط التعليمية 2024
a) calm b) shy c) messy d) nervous

11 He always says please and sorry. He is ………… . الجيزة - إدارة الدقى التعليمية 2024
a) nervous b) messy c) polite d) unfriendly

12 You shouldn't be …………, share your toys with your friends. الجيزة - شمال الجيزة التعليمية 2024
a) beautiful b) selfish c) kind d) nice

13 If a new student is …………, we should help him make new friends. المنوفية - إدارة الباجور التعليمية 2024
a) nervous b) clever c) polite d) kind

14 Hani is very ………… . He shows respect to everyone. القاهرة - إدارة الوايلى التعليمية 2024
a) polite b) messy c) lazy d) organized

15 My school has a water ………… . القاهرة - إدارة السلام التعليمية 2024
a) mountain b) fountain c) dry d) yard

16 All students love the ………… lessons because they can play football in the playground.
a) math b) English c) science d) physical education

17 Cats have soft ………… which is nice to touch. الجيزة - إدارة الحوامدية التعليمية 2024
a) claws b) fur c) teeth d) eyes

18 The .... is the place where we do experiments.

a) library b) playground c) laboratory d) hall

19 .... are animals which we can live with.

a) Pets b) Bats c) Beats d) Bites

20 Omar is .... and kind. We all love him.

a) bad b) terrible c) friendly d) ugly

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A) caretaker – adult – Clever – slow reader – messy

People are very different. ....(1)......... people are intelligent and good at work. Sometimes, children can't do lots of things, so they need an ....(2)......... to help them. A person who takes ages to finish a book is called a ....(3)......... and the person who looks after and cleans a building is called a ....(4)......... .

B) volunteers – new – organization – wildlife – foreign

Mini Forest is an ....(1)......... which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. These special green areas help people enjoy nature and help our ....(2)........., like plants. We never grow ....(3)......... plants in our projects. We rarely have ....(4)......... to help us in planting.

C) home – laboratories – Community – playground – grade

My school is near my house. It's big and clean. It has two ....(1)......... where we have science lessons. I play football and basketball in the ....(2)......... with my friends. I'm in ....(3)......... five. I love Mrs Nora who teaches me English. I have three English lessons a week. I go ....(4)......... at two o'clock, and have lunch with my family.

D) friendly – walk – people – fur – animals

Cats are my favorite animals. They are beautiful with soft ....(1)......... which is nice to touch. They are clean and calm animals which are usually ....(2)......... . They like ....(3)........., but they are independent. We don't need to take them for a ....(4)......... every day.





B) Revision on Grammar

Unit 1 The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

We use the present simple tense to talk about habits and routines.

نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط لنتحدث عن العادات والأنشطة اليومية المتكررة.

Affirmative Form: صيغة الأثبات:

He/ She/ It + (inf.) (الفعل فى المصدر) + s/ es/ ies ... .

معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (s):

live – lives

e.g. Omar lives in Cairo.

الأفعال المنتهية بـ (s/ x/ sh/ ch/ z) يضاف لها (es):

dress – dresses

e.g. Mai dresses in pink.

الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن + (y) يحذف الـ (y) ويضاف لها (ies):

cry – cries

e.g. The baby always cries.

I/ We/ They/ You + (inf.) (الفعل فى المصدر) ... .

e.g. - The students learn at the classroom.

- The birds fly in the sky.

Negative Form: صيغة النفى:

He/ She/ It + doesn't + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ... .

We/ They/ You + don't + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ... .

e.g. - Maged doesn't speak French.

- They don't study at night.

Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ(هل):

Question السؤال

Do	I/ you/ we/ they	(inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ... ?
Does	he/ she/ it	

Answer الإجابة

Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	do / does.
No,		don't / doesn't.

e.g. A: Do you like pizza?
B: Yes, I do.

e.g. A: Does Walaa have a pet?
B: No, she doesn't.

Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Wh- word كلمة الاستفهام	do	I/ you/ we/ they	+ (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ... ?
	does	he/ she/ it	

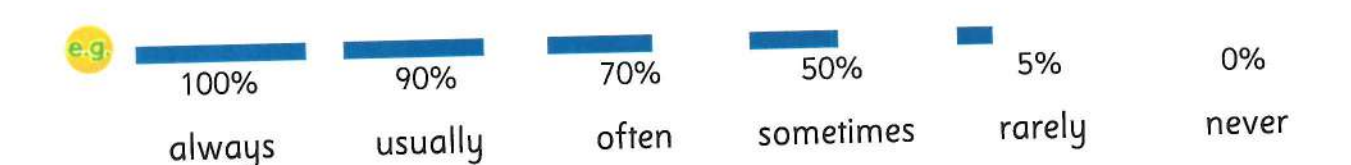
e.g. - A: Where do you come from?

- B: I come from London.

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

We use adverbs of frequency before a verb (but after the verb to be) to talk about how often an action happens.
نستخدم ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل (وبعد الفعل be) للتحدث عن عدد مرات حدوث الفعل.

e.g.



100%	90%	70%	50%	5%	0%
always	usually	often	sometimes	rarely	never

Asking about the frequency of an action using "How often":
للسؤال عن عدد مرات تكرار الحدث نستخدم (How often):

How often + do/ does + subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ...?

Answer: الإجابة:

Subject الفاعل + adverb of frequency + main verb.

Subject الفاعل + (am/ is/ are) + adverb of frequency.

e.g. A: How often do you visit your uncle?
B: I always visit my uncle on Fridays.

e.g. A: How often does she feel tired after work?
B: She is never tired after work.

We can use **time expressions** to talk about how often we repeat the action.
يمكننا استخدام التعبيرات الزمنية للحديث عن عدد مرات تكرار الحدث.

every day	once a week	twice a month	three times a year
كل يوم	مرة في الأسبوع	مرتين في الشهر	ثلاث مرات في العام

e.g. - I study English with my sister every day.
- Sara watches TV twice a week.





Relative pronouns ضمائر الوصل

We use relative pronouns "who, which, and where" to give more information about a particular singular or plural person, thing, or place.

نستخدم ضمائر الوصل لإعطاء مزيد من المعلومات حول شخص، شيء أو مكان معين مفرد أو جمع.

who

We use "who" to talk about people. نستخدم للتحدث عن الأشخاص.

e.g. The man who sells flowers is my uncle.

which

We use "which" to talk about things. نستخدم للتحدث عن الأشياء.

e.g. My uncle planted the tree which grows apples.

where

We use "where" to talk about places. نستخدم للتحدث عن الأماكن.

e.g. The beach where we spend the summer is really hot.

-ed adjectives

We use "-ed" adjectives to describe how a person feels.

نستخدم الصفات التى تنتهى بـ ed- لوصف كيف يشعر الشخص.

e.g. excited متحمس – interested مهتم – tired مُرهَق – surprised متفاجئ

-ing adjectives

We use "-ing" adjectives to describe people, places, or things that give us feelings.

نستخدم الصفات التى تنتهى بـ ing- لوصف الأشخاص، الأماكن،أو الأشياء التى تسبب لنا المشاعر.

e.g. exciting مثير – tiring مُتعِب – boring ممل – surprising مفاجئ



on Grammar (Units 1 & 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 A: How often does your sister watch TV? B: She watches TV .... a week.
a) one b) two c) first d) twice

2 They .... football in the club.
a) always play b) plays always c) always plays d) play always

3 A: .... Hala cook lunch every day? B: Yes, she does.
a) Do b) Is c) Does d) Are

4 A: How .... do you go to school? B: I go to school every day.
a) many b) much c) long d) often

5 Omar .... like playing video games.
a) isn't b) don't c) aren't d) doesn't

6 She .... to music every night.
a) listening b) listen c) listens d) listened

7 My sister never .... TV.
a) watch b) watches c) watching d) watched

8 The sun .... in the east.
a) rises b) rising c) rise d) will rise

9 My friend .... late for school.
a) always is b) never is c) are never d) is always

10 I .... to the club every week.
a) goes b) went c) go d) going

11 They don't .... their uncles on the weekend.
a) visited b) visiting c) visit d) visits

12 Salma doesn't .... tennis.
a) playing b) played c) plays d) play

13 He .... eats dates as a snack. He loves them!
a) doesn't b) never c) usually d) not

14 This book is .... I don't like it.
a) scared b) bored c) boring d) interesting

15 I was very .... when my team won the match.
a) interesting b) boring c) excited d) scary

16 Our party was .... last week.
a) amazed b) amazing c) excited d) interest

17 The flowers .... grow in our garden are beautiful.
a) who b) where c) when d) which

18 This is the building .... we do physical education.
a) who b) which c) where d) whose

19 My school is the place .... my uncle works.
a) who b) when c) which d) where

20 Hassan is the boy .... helped me yesterday. الجيزة - الدقي 2024
a) when b) which c) what d) who

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 .... (Do) your friend like studying English?

2 I don't .... (visiting) my grandparents on Fridays. القاهرة - إدارة المقطم 2024

3 I .... (always) make a cake. I don't like it. الجيزة - شمال الجيزة 2024

4 How .... (many) does she go to the library? الجيزة - 6 أكتوبر 2024

5 How often .... (do) your teacher give you homework? المنوفية - إدارة الباجور 2024

6 She .... (cook) food for her family every day. الاسكندرية - إدارة وسط 2024

7 She never .... (eat) unhealthy food. الجيزة - إدارة الدقي 2024

8 They .... (always are) ready for the exams.

9 She .... (meets always) up with her cousins on Fridays. الجيزة - الهرم 2024

10 My father .... (goes always) to work by car. الجيزة - إدارة الحوامدية 2024

11 I was so .... (frightening) when I saw the lion.

12 These are the shoes .... (who) I wear to play football. القاهرة الجديدة 2024

13 The park is a place .... (who) he flies his kite. الشرقية - ديرب نجم 2024

14 Is Magdy the boy .... (which) lives in your building? القاهرة - إدارة المقطم 2024

15 This is the place .... (which) students study science. المنوفية - إدارة الباجور 2024

16 An ostrich is a big bird .... (who) can't fly. الدقهلية - ميت غمر 2024

17 I was .... (surprising) to see Mr Sherif in the club. الجيزة - إدارة الدقي 2024

18 The film is .... (interested). الجيزة - شمال الجيزة 2024

19 Mr Adel is the teacher .... (which) helps me a lot. الجيزة - إدارة الحوامدية 2024

20 The book was really .... (interested). القاهرة - إدارة المقطم 2024

Units 3&4 — A) Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 3

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
go quad biking in the desert	يركب الدراجات الرباعية فى الصحراء	bear	دب	explore the souks	يستكشف الأسواق
helmet	خوذة	disappoint	يحبط	climb the Bab Zuweila minaret	يتسلق (يصعد الى)مئذنة باب زويلة
instructions	تعليمات	hill	تل	take photos	يلتقط صورا
dome	قبة	ride on a rollercoaster	يركب قطار الملاهى	tour guide	مرشد سياحى
vacation plans	خطط لقضاء العطلة	secret	سر	visit the Manial Palace Museum	يزور متحف قصر المنيل
fear	خوف	monument	أثر تاريخى	theme park	مدينة الملاهى
dust	غبار	heights	ارتفاعات	puddle	بركة مياه
freezer	المجمد (الفريزر)	deer	غزال	carnival	مهرجان ترفيهى
adventures	مغامرات	stream	نهر صغير	brave	شجاع
credit card	بطاقة ائتمان	waterfalls	شلالات	screens	شاشات
realistic	واقعى	destination	وجهة	square	ميدان
the Orient Train	قطار الشرق	monastery	دير	company	شركة
tickets	تذاكر	discount	خصم	ocean	محيط

Unit 4

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
celebrate	يحتفل	event	حدث	noodles	شعرية
confirm	يؤكد	decorate the birthday cake	يزين كعكة عيد الميلاد	string	خيط
blow out	ينفخ (يطفئ الشمع)	email address	عنوان البريد الإلكترونى	blow up the balloons	ينفخ البالونات
hard	بجد	present	هدية	formal	رسمى
let off the fireworks	يطلق الألعاب النارية	exams	امتحانات	flame	لهب
character	شخصية	hang up the streamers	يعلق الشرائط	indoors	فى الداخل (بالمنزل)
fire	حريق	figure out	يكتشف	make a playlist	يعد قائمة تشغيل الأغانى
documentary	فيلم وثائقى	Mother's Day	عيد الأم	prize	جائزة
send the invitations	يرسل الدعوات	history	تاريخ	local community	المجتمع المحلى
costume	زى تنكرى	candles	شموع	breath	نفس
attend	يحضر	scissors	مقص	guests	ضيوف
school hall	قاعة المدرسة	details	تفاصيل	adult	شخص بالغ
birthday cards	بطاقات عيد الميلاد	reply	يرد	celebration	احتفال





on Vocabulary (Units 3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 There are amazing .... to try like the rollercoaster.
a) groups b) rides c) flights d) tickets.

2 After a long time; we arrived at our ....
a) destination b) pollution c) population d) information

3 I like going to the .... to ride the rollercoaster.
a) beach b) desert c) theme park d) museum

4 Fatima .... to face her fear and climbed up the hill.
a) divided b) provided c) decided d) guided

5 You look tired. You need to ....
a) cycle b) play c) relax d) let

6 The ancient mosque has a very high ....
a) cinema b) minaret c) company d) mountain

7 Let's .... the Bab Zuweila minaret.
a) climb b) jump c) arrive d) plan

8 The .... ride is very scary and you get wet.
a) deserts b) mountains c) caves d) waterfalls

9 He is afraid .... heights.
a) to b) of c) on d) at

10 We need an adult to let off the ....
a) cakes b) balloons c) fireworks d) streamers

11 We use .... language when we speak or write to strangers.
a) informal b) bad c) formal d) dirty

12 People make mint tea for .... in their homes.
a) guests b) thieves c) animals d) birds

13 The word celebration means ....
a) party b) game c) invitation d) experience

14 To "blow ...." is to send air through your mouth.
a) out b) in c) of d) for

15 We can ask Ahmed to .... a playlist.
a) send b) make c) bang d) blow

16 We let off .... on my birthday. It was amazing.
a) fireworks b) toys c) streamers d) invitations

17 Are you .... forward to the party to see my friends?
a) cycling b) putting c) looking d) making

18 I am writing to .... you to our school's Mother's Day celebration.
a) invent b) discover c) invite d) describe

19 We are wearing .... in the party. القاهرة - عين شمس 2024

a) costumes b) celebration c) fireworks d) invitation

20 Hala is sending .... to her friends to attend the party. الدقهلية - ميت غمر 2024

a) inventions b) decorations c) fireworks d) invitations

21 .... are a long, thin piece of food made from flour, water, and eggs. القاهرة - عين شمس 2024

a) Peaches b) Noodles c) Fish d) Presents

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A) book – rode – shows – popcorn – tired الشرقية 2024

Amr and his sister Huda went to the carnival on Monday. They ....(1)......... on the rollercoaster. Amr ate ....(2)......... and a burger. Huda drank lemonade and ate an apple. They watched many exciting ....(3)......... . They were ....(4)......... when they went home.

B) monastery – camels – Red – biking – food الجيزة - إدارة الدقي التعليمية 2024

Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting and busy town in Egypt by the ....(1)......... Sea. Many tourists like to visit it because there are a lot of things they can do there. Tourist can quad ....(2)......... in the desert. They like visiting St. Catherine's ....(3)......... . They also like riding on ....(4)......... and relaxing at the beach.

C) football – cycling – relax – indoors – exercises الجيزة - إدارة الدقي التعليمية 2024

Ahmed is studying hard for his exams. He doesn't spend all his time ....(1)......... . He goes outside, and he ....(2)......... . He goes running in the morning. He goes ....(3)......... with his dad at the weekends. He also sees his friends a few times a week. He also visits his grandparents. Ahmed knows that it's important to ....(4)......... and have fun sometimes.

D) blew – decorated – amazing – invitations – dark السويس 2024

Last week was my sister's birthday party. It was in our garden. The party was ....(1)......... and my sister was very happy. We all helped my sister. My mother ....(2)......... the birthday cake. I sent the ....(3)......... . All her friends came and gave her presents. My brother ....(4)......... up the balloons. My father hung up the streamers.





Units 3&4 — B) Revision on Grammar



If/When (Zero Conditional) لو / عندما (الحالة الصفرية)

We use clauses with "if/when" plus present tense verbs, or a modal verb like "can" to talk about facts or things that are usually true.
نستخدم العبارات مع «if/when» مع المضارع أو الأفعال الناقصة مثل «can» للتحدث عن الحقائق أو الأشياء التى عادة ما تكون صحيحة.

Form: التكوين

If/When → present simple (جملة فى المضارع البسيط) , present simple/ can + (inf.) … . (جملة فى المضارع البسيط / فعل ناقص)

e.g. If it rains, the grass gets wet.

Questions: السؤال

Wh- word	do/ does/ can	subject الفاعل	(inf.) الفعل فى المصدر	if/ when	present simple … ? جملة فى المضارع البسيط

e.g. When do we get to Giza if we take the bus?

Prepositions of time حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت

We use prepositions of time at, on, and in, to say when something happens.
نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت (in - on - at) لتقول متى يحدث شىء ما.

at: used with times تستخدم مع الأوقات

- at midnight فى منتصف الليل - at ten o'clock فى الساعة العاشرة - at lunchtime فى وقت الغداء
- at midday فى منتصف اليوم

on: used with days and dates تستخدم مع الأيام والتواريخ

- on Monday فى يوم الإثنين - on holidays فى الإجازات - on April 13th فى الـ 13 من ابريل -
- on the weekend فى الإجازة الأسبوعية

in: used with times of the day, months, seasons, and years تستخدم مع أوقات اليوم الشهور والفصول والسنوات

- in April فى شهر إبريل - in the spring فى فصل الربيع - in 2022 فى عام 2022
- in the morning فى الصباح

The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

We use the present continuous tense to talk about actions in progress around or near the moment of speaking.

نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتحدث عن الأفعال الجارية أو الأفعال التى تحدث قريبًا أو أثناء تحدثنا فى الوقت الحالى.

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

I He/ She/ It We/ They/ You	am ('m) is ('s) are ('re)	+ (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + ing ... .

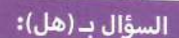
e.g. I am reading a newspaper. They're playing tennis.

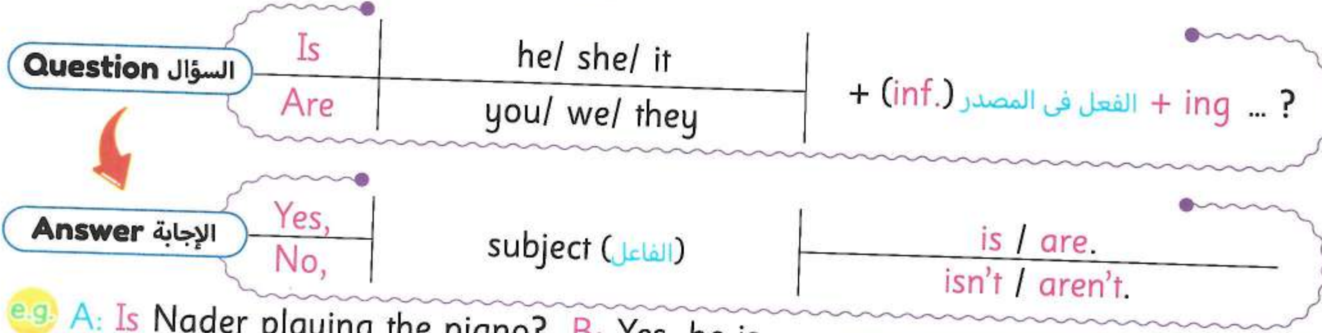
Negative Form: صيغة النفي:

I He/ She/ It We/ They/ You	am not ('m not) is not (isn't) are not (aren't)	+ (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + ing ... .

e.g. Mom isn't cooking dinner. The children aren't watching TV now.

Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ (هل):





Question السؤال	Is	he/ she/ it	+ (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + ing ... ?
	Are	you/ we/ they	
Answer الإجابة	Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	is / are.
	No,		isn't / aren't.

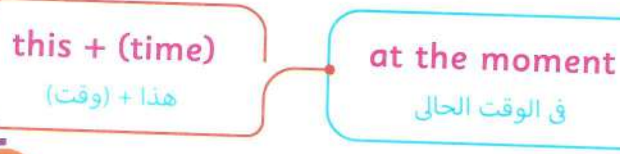
e.g. A: Is Nader playing the piano? B: Yes, he is.

Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Wh– word كلمة الاستفهام	is	he/ she/ it	+ (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + ing ... ?
	are	you/ we/ they	

e.g. A: What are you doing? B: I'm doing my homework.

Keywords: الكلمات الدالة:



- this + (time) هذا + (وقت)
- at the moment فى الوقت الحالى
- today اليوم
- now الآن



on Grammar (Units 3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 If you are hungry, you .... these sandwiches.
a) has b) can have c) had d) having

2 I .... a stomachache when I eat too much cake.
a) getting b) got c) get d) gets

3 When she .... cold, she can wear her jacket.
a) felt b) feels c) feeling d) feel

4 They can't go out if the weather .... hot.
a) is b) will be c) are d) were

5 Plants die if you .... water them.
a) doesn't b) isn't c) aren't d) don't

6 If you .... busy, we can talk later.
a) will be b) were c) are d) is

7 We have English .... 11 a.m.
a) on b) up c) in d) at

8 We always travel to Alexandria .... summer.
a) on b) of c) in d) on

9 My mother's birthday is .... May 13th.
a) on b) of c) in d) on

10 What are they .... now?
a) do b) does c) did d) doing

11 We .... playing football now. We are playing tennis.
a) are b) is c) was d) aren't

12 .... she collecting magnets at the moment?
a) Do b) Is c) Are d) Does

13 I .... listening to music now.
a) is b) are c) am d) was

14 She is .... a party this week.
a) organizes b) organize c) organizing d) organized

15 We are .... to make the birthday cake.
a) help b) helps c) helped d) helping

16 I .... in the football match today.
a) 'm not b) isn't c) aren't d) weren't

17 A: Are you traveling to Alexandria this week? B: Yes, we ....
a) aren't   b) is   c) am   d) are

18 The girls .... in the park now.
a) cycling   b) cycle   c) is cycling   d) are cycling

19 He .... playing games at the moment. الجيزة - 6 أكتوبر 2024
a) was   b) are   c) were   d) is

20 My mom .... the birthday cake now.
a) decorates   b) decorate   c) is decorating   d) are decorating

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 I stay home if I .... (was) ill.
2 If he .... (press) the button, the machine works. القاهرة - عين شمس 2024
3 When you .... (had) regular breaks, you remember more.
4 We don't go to school .... (at) summer. الجيزة - منشأة القناطر 2024
5 He likes to listen to music .... (in) midnight.
6 My father arrived .... (in) six o'clock yesterday. القاهرة - عين شمس 2024
7 I got many presents .... (at) my birthday. القاهرة - دار السلام 2024
8 Dad was born .... (at) November 1982. الجيزة - الدقي 2024
9 We went to Alexandria .... (on) train. القاهرة - القاهرة الجديدة 2024
10 He was born .... (at) March. القاهرة - عين شمس 2024
11 If you heat sugar, it .... (melted). الدقهلية - ميت غمر 2024
12 If you .... (doesn't) water plants, they die. الإسكندرية - إدارة وسط 2024
13 If we go by bus, it .... (be) quicker. الشرقية - ديرب نجم 20242
14 We .... (goes) to the theater to watch a play now. السويس 2024
15 She is studying for her exam .... (last) week. القاهرة - عين شمس 2024
16 She's .... (do) her homework now. إدارة شرق الزقازيق 2024
17 They're .... (play) with balloons now. الجيزة - إدارة الدقي 2024
18 Are they .... (watch) a funny movie? الجيزة - الدقي 2024
19 We .... (eat) our lunch at the moment. دمياط - إدارة الزرقا 2024
20 Nesma is .... (wear) a hat. الجيزة - أبو النمرس 2024



Units 5&6



A) Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 5

English	Arabic	English	Arabic	English	Arabic
go on a voyage	يذهب فى رحلة بحرية	culture	ثقافة	complicated	معقد
telescope	تليسكوب	ride a camel	يركب جملًا	discovery	اكتشاف
fascinated	منبهر	cabin	كابينة/ مقصورة	clay	طين
wasteland	أرض قاحلة (خالية)	port	ميناء	sail by ship	يبحر بالسفينة
archaeologists	علماء الآثار	dromedary	الجمل العربى	sailing boat	قارب شراعى
take a trip	يقوم برحلة قصيرة	tools	أدوات	legends	أساطير
skills	مهارات	go on a journey	يذهب فى رحلة طويلة	caravan	قافلة
incredible	لا يصدق	experiences	تجارب	sand dunes	كثبان رملية
sculptures	منحوتات	explorer	مستكشف	surprising	مفاجئ
mysterious	غامض	frightening	مخيف	diary	مفكرة (مذكرات)
civilization	حضارة	exhausted	مرهَق	waves	أمواج
sails	أشرعة	mystery	لغز	century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)
sway	يتمايل	peaceful	مسالم	felucca	قارب شراعى (فلوكة)

Unit 6

English	Arabic	English	Arabic	English	Arabic
popsicle sticks	عصى المصاصة	palm wax	شمع النخيل	perfume	عطر
soap container	حاوية الصابون	drops	قطرات	barley	شعير
toothpaste	معجون أسنان	wax	شمع	festivals	احتفالات
stick	عصا	wick	فتيل	herbs	أعشاب
incense	بخور/ عطر	toothbrush	فرشاة أسنان	perfume oil	زيت عطرى
preserve	يحفظ	powder	مسحوق	low temperature	درجة حرارة منخفضة
caretakers	القائمين على الاعتناء بالمكان	cardamom	الهيل	flower petals	بتلات الزهور
crown	تاج	cinnamon	قرفة	baking tray	صينية خبز
soap crystals	بلورات الصابون	scepter	صولجان (عصا الملك)	ingredients	مكونات
combination	خلطة	throne	عرش	rosemary	روزمارى (نوع من التوابل)
cotton rope	حبل قطنى	astonished	مندهش	personal care	عناية شخصية



on Vocabulary (Units 5 & 6)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We can explore the ………………… island. القاهرة - إدارة المقطم 2024
   a) mysterious b) nervous c) bad d) ugly
2. We went on a long ………………… by sea. We sailed by ship from Venice to Korcula.
   a) trip b) voyage c) carriage d) flight
3. "…………………" is the art made from stone or wood.
   a) Adventure b) Sculpture c) Explorer d) Inspiration
4. Marco Polo used his ………………… to see the island. الإسكندرية - إدارة منتزه ثان 2024
   a) microscope b) caravan c) telescope d) nightmare
5. A/An ………………… is a person who studies very old objects that they find under the ground.
   a) engineer b) archaeologist c) carpenter d) guide
6. ………………… is a type of earth that is sticky when wet. القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2024
   a) Clay b) Metal c) Wood d) Paper
7. A ………………… is a group of camels and people traveling together. المنوفية - إدارة الباجور 2024
   a) puddle b) throne c) tour guide d) caravan
8. A ………………… is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. الإسكندرية - إدارة وسط 2024
   a) bus b) car c) train d) felucca
9. Marco Polo wrote a ………………… about his experiences. الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزه أول التعليمية 2024
   a) diary b) story c) film d) poem
10. Captain Eslam had the ………………… to sail the felucca.
    a) sails b) roads c) oud d) skills
11. The king has a ………………… on his head. القاهرة - حدائق القبة 2024
    a) princess b) palace c) crown d) gloves
12. ………………… are the people who look after and clean a building. القاهرة - إدارة المقطم 2024
    a) Farmers b) Caretakers c) Carpenters d) Plumbers
13. She likes to add ………………… to her food. الجيزة - الهرم 2024
    a) spices b) toothpaste c) perfume d) soap
14. "…………………" are plants with strong taste often used in cooking. القاهرة - حدائق القبة 2024
    a) Herbs b) Clay c) Guests d) Noodles
15. ………………… are the cotton ropes inside the candles.
    a) Sticks b) Bottles c) Wicks d) Cartons
16. We need some popsicle ………………… to hold the wicks up in the glasses.
    a) stickers b) sticks c) steam d) star



17 If you .... lemons, you get lemon juice.

a) heat b) stir c) hold d) squeeze

18 The queens live in a/an .... الجيزة - الدقي 2024

a) palace b) apartment c) tent d) home

19 You should clean your teeth daily with a/an .... القاهرة الجديدة 2024

a) hairbrush b) ax c) spices d) toothbrush

20 Tourists buy .... when they visit Egypt. القاهرة الجديدة 2024

a) houses b) souvenirs c) cars d) cats

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A) dry – fascinated – dunes – wind – move

Marco Polo was twenty-one when he went into the Gobi Desert for the first time. He was ....(1)......... by the sand dunes, which moved with each step the camels made. Some of the ....(2)......... were sixty meters tall and twenty meters long. Their shapes were always changing. The ....(3)......... made them move and roll like huge yellow waves. In fact, the local people called the Gobi Desert "the ....(4)......... sea" in their language.

B) experience – wood – River – captain – sail

Ali had an amazing experience yesterday. He went on a felucca on the ....(1)......... Nile with his friend Tamer. A felucca is an Egyptian sailing boat which is made of ....(2).......... They got on the felucca with a captain called Saber. Saber had the skills to ....(3)......... the felucca. They went slowly down the river and enjoyed the view. It was a lovely ....(4).........for them. محافظة القاهرة - إدارة هليوبليس التعليمية 2024

C) spoon – bowl – lovely – cooker – add

We need oil, flower petals, and soap crystals to make soap. First, put the ingredients for your soap in a ....(1)......... . Heat the ingredients on a ....(2)......... . Next, stir the ingredients with a wooden ....(3)......... and take them off the cooker. When the ingredients are hard and cool, ...(4)......... them into a soap container.

D) spices – dried – a few – preserve – honey

There were a lot of bees in Ancient Egypt and that means there was ....(1)......... ! People used it with bread and cream to make cakes. Some families also knew how to use ....(2)......... and herbs to make their cooking taste better, and they also knew how to ....(3)......... food. They ....(4)......... fish or used salt to preserve it, and used jars to keep fruit and vegetables for the winter. مصر الجديدة 2024



Units 5&6 — B) Revision on Grammar



The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

We use the past simple to talk about finished actions, or situations, in the past.
نستخدم الماضى البسيط للتحدث عن الأفعال أو المواقف المنتهية فى الماضى.

1. Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة

- معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (ed): talk - talked
- الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e) يضاف لها (d): move → moved
- الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن + (y)، يحذف الـ (y) ويضاف إليها الـ (ied). carry → carried
- الأفعال المنتهية بحرف متحرك + حرف ساكن يضاف لها (ed) مع مضاعفة الحرف الساكن. clap → clapped

2. Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

e.g. go → went make → made

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل ... .

e.g. Hana cooked a tasty dinner yesterday.

Negative Form: صيغة النفي:

Subject + didn't + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ... .

e.g. I didn't travel to France last year.

Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ "هل":

Question السؤال A: Did + subject + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ... ?

Answer الإجابة

B: Yes,	subject	did.
B: No,	subject	didn't.

e.g. A: Did Mai have her breakfast?
B: Yes, she did.
B: No, she didn't.

Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

A: Wh- word	did	subject	(inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ...?

B: Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل ... .

e.g. A: What did you do yesterday? B: I swam in the sea.



Keywords: الكلمات الدالة:

yesterday أمس - last الماضى - ago منذ - in the past بالماضى

Verb to "be" (am/ is/ are) in the past simple فعل "يكون" فى زمن الماضى البسيط

Verb to "be" changes according to the subject in the past simple.
يتغير فعل "يكون" باختلاف الفاعل فى زمن الماضى البسيط.

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

I/ He/ She/ It + was ...

We/ They/ You + were ...

e.g. I was at my grandpa's house yesterday.

e.g. The kids were at the beach last weekend.

Negative Form: صيغة النفى:

I/ He/ She/ It + was not (wasn't) ...

We/ They/ You + were not (weren't) ...

e.g. He was not at home last Saturday.

e.g. We were not cold yesterday.

Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ "هل":

Question السؤال

Was I/ he/ she/ it ...?
Were we/ they/ you ...?

Answer الإجابة

Yes, subject (فاعل) was/ were.
No, subject (فاعل) wasn't/ weren't.

e.g. A: Was she at the park last Sunday?
B: Yes, she was.

e.g. A: Were you tired this morning?
B: No, I wasn't.

Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Wh- word كلمة الاستفهام	was	I / he / she / it	...?
	were	we / they / you	

e.g. A: Where was he yesterday?

B: He was at school.



1. Countable and Uncountable nouns

Countable and uncountable nouns
الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

Uncountable nouns:
- هى الأسماء التى (لا تعد)، ليس لها جمع وتعامل معاملة المفرد.
- الأسماء التى لا تعد لا تسبق بأداة نكرة (a/an) .

e.g. sugar - water

Countable nouns:
- هى الأسماء التى (تعد) ولها مفرد وجمع.
- يسبق المفرد منها أداة النكرة "a" إذا بدأ بصوت ساكن و"an" إذا بدأ بصوت متحرك.

e.g. a mango / mangoes
an egg / eggs

We use some and any to talk about quantities (countable/uncountable):
استخدام some و any للحديث عن الكميات (المعدودة/ غير المعدودة):

some
- جملة مثبتة → There are some boys in the classroom.
- عرض → Would you like some coffee?
- طلب → Could I have some salt, please?

any
- جملة منفية → There isn't any jam in the fridge.
- سؤال → Do you have any children?

2. How many ...? كم العدد...؟

How many + countable noun اسم يعد + ... ?

e.g. We use "How many ...?" to ask about quantities of countable things.
نستخدم "كم العدد...؟" للسؤال عن كميات الأشياء المعدودة.

- للرد على سؤال "How many" نستخدم:

many, a lot of للتعبير عن عدد كبير	a few للتعبير عن عدد قليل	some للتعبير عن عدد تقريبي	two, three, رقم

e.g. A: How many pens and pencils do you have?
B: I have a lot of pens. I have a few pencils.

3. How much ...? كم الكمية...؟

e.g. We use "How much ...?" to ask about quantities of uncountable things.
نستخدم "كم الكمية ...؟" للسؤال عن كميات الأشياء التى لا يمكن عدها.

How much + uncountable noun اسم لا يعد + ...?

- للرد على سؤال "How much" نستخدم:

much, a lot of للتعبير عن كمية كبيرة	some للتعبير عن كمية تقريبية	a little للتعبير عن كمية قليلة

e.g. A: How much sugar do you need?
B: I need (a little / much) sugar.





on Grammar (Units 5 & 6)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 What .... you do at home yesterday?
a) do b) does c) did d) doing

2 Where did you .... your bag?
a) found b) finding c) finds d) find

3 A: .... she cook lunch yesterday? B: Yes, she did.
a) Does b) Is c) Was d) Did

4 When I was young, I .... to Paris.
a) travel b) traveled c) traveling d) travels

5 .... you at school yesterday?
a) Did b) Do c) Were d) Was

6 How .... your last trip?
a) is b) are c) was d) will

7 She .... an amazing experience yesterday.
a) have b) has c) having d) had

8 They .... ready for the competition last week.
a) wasn't b) weren't c) isn't d) aren't

9 Hany didn't .... on the palace tour with the guide.
a) go b) going c) gone d) went

10 Sara .... watch the movie yesterday.
a) don't b) doesn't c) isn't d) didn't

11 How .... cotton ropes does she need to make five candles?
a) many b) much c) often d) far

12 How .... people do you live with?
a) many b) much c) often d) long

13 .... there any sugar in your tea?
a) Are b) Were c) Is d) Have

14 There .... some books in your bag.
a) are b) isn't c) wasn't d) doesn't

15 Laila didn't bring .... popsicle sticks.
a) an b) any c) a little d) some

Practice

16 We need .... oil.
a) many b) a few c) a d) a little

17 How .... wax do you need?
a) much b) many c) often d) old

18 How .... bottles of water did you have?
a) often b) long c) much d) many

19 She has .... garden in her house.
a) an b) some c) any d) a

20 There isn't .... oil left in the bottle.
a) some b) any c) few d) many

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 Did you .... (watched) the match yesterday? القاهرة - حدائق القبة 2024

2 A: .... (Were) Ahmed at the club yesterday? B: Yes, he was.

3 A: .... (Were) Ahmed go to the club yesterday? B: Yes, he did.

4 No, I .... (did) find my book. القاهرة إدارة الزيتون 2024

5 Jana and Yara .... (make) pizza for us last night. الجيزة الوراق 2024

6 She .... (be) sick yesterday.

7 He .... (don't) at the club yesterday. السويس 2024

8 We .... (having) a good meal in that restaurant last week.

9 Where .... (did) you yesterday?

10 She .... (play) football last Friday. الجيزة أبو النمرس 2024

11 .... (Who) much sugar do you want?

12 There .... (is) any water in the fridge.

13 How .... (many) milk do you have every day?

14 There is .... (a few) salt in the recipe.

15 There are .... (any) students in your class.

16 How .... (much) lemons do we need for the lemonade? إدارة مصر الجديدة 2024

17 There aren't .... (some) oranges on the table. الجيزة الهرم 2024

18 How .... (much) apples do we need for the apple pie? إدارة شرق الزقازيق 2024

19 There .... (is) any bread, please, buy some. الدقهلية إدارة بلقاس 2024

20 I have .... (some) apple.



Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past	Present		Past
plant	يزرع	planted	use	يستخدم	used	produce	ينتج	produced
harvest	يحصد	harvested	clean	ينظف	cleaned	mention	يذكر	mentioned
join	ينضم	joined	collect	يجمع	collected	click	ينقر	clicked
offer	يعرض	offered	relax	يستريح	relaxed	miss	يفوت	missed
create	يخلق	created	pass	يمر/ يمرر	passed	share	يتشارك	shared
laugh	يضحك	laughed	cover	يغطي	covered	help	يساعد	helped
ask	يسأل	asked	need	يحتاج	needed	stay	يبقى	stayed
contact	يتواصل	contacted	borrow	يستعير	borrowed	move	يتحرك	moved
shout	يصرخ	shouted	explore	يستكشف	explored	climb	يتسلق	climbed
visit	يزور	visited	try	يجرب	tried	travel	يسافر	traveled
love	يحب	loved	arrive	يصل	arrived	watch	يشاهد	watched
decide	يقرر	decided	last	يدوم	lasted	book	يحجز	booked
suggest	يقترح	suggested	press	يضغط	pressed	heat	يسخن	heated
melt	يذوب	melted	block	يحجب	blocked	study	يذاكر	studied
die	يموت	died	face	يواجه	faced	disappoint	يحبط	disappointed
reach	يصل	reached	smile	يبتسم	smiled	breathe	يتنفس	breathed
lift	يرفع	lifted	sparkle	يلمع	sparkled	stop	يتوقف	stopped
decorate	يزين	decorated	finish	ينهي	finished	tie	يربط	tied
cycle	يقود دراجة	cycled	organize	ينظم	organized	celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated
include	يشمل	included	sail	يبحر	sailed	imagine	يتخيل	imagined
agree	يوافق	agreed	believe	يعتقد	believed	change	يتغير	changed
roll	يلتف	rolled	sway	يتمايل	swayed	seem	يبدو	seemed
squeeze	يعصر	squeezed	stir	يقلب	stirred	depend	يعتمد	depended
cook	يطهي	cooked	preserve	يحفظ	preserved	dry	يجفف	dried
notice	يلاحظ	noticed	lean	يميل	leaned	knock	يطرق	knocked
hurry	يسرع	hurried	explain	يشرح	explained	damage	يدمر	damaged
pick	يلتقط	picked	mix	يخلط	mixed	rub	يفرك	rubbed

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
grow	يزرع	grew	sell	يبيع	sold
mean	يقصد	meant	think	يعتقد	thought
become	يصبح	became	understand	يفهم	understood
build	يبنى	built	fall	يسقط	fell
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up	hear	يسمع	heard
sit	يجلس	sat	feel	يشعر	felt
stand	يقف	stood	meet	يقابل	met
know	يعرف	knew	lie	يرقد	lay
come	يأتى	came	speak	يتكلم	spoke
tell	يخبر	told	put	يضع	put
go	يذهب	went	ride	يركب	rode
take	يأخذ	took	say	يقول	said
run	يجرى	ran	drink	يشرب	drank
see	يرى	saw	hang up	يعلق	hung up
blow up	ينفخ	blew up	send	يرسل	sent
write	يكتب	wrote	let off	يطلق	let off
choose	يختار	chose	spend	يقضى	spent
burn	يحرق	burnt	find	يجد	found
fly	يطير	flew	get to	يصل إلى	got to
has/ have	يملك	had	leave	يغادر	left
hold	يمسك	held	eat	يأكل	ate
cut	يقطع	cut	wear	يرتدى	wore



خاص بجميع نصوص الاستماع لكل الامتحانات

Exam 1 محافظة القاهرة - إدارة الوايلى التعليمية 30





Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (6)

1 I visited Sharm El-Sheikh with my ....
a) friends b) family c) teachers d) school

2 Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting and busy ....
a) city b) country c) village d) area

3 You can .... in the sea there.
a) read b) sleep c) swim d) relax

4 You can go quad .... in the desert.
a) watching b) sending c) driving d) biking

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (4)

1 Hani is very .... He shows respect to everyone.
a) polite b) messy c) lazy d) organized

2 The mosque has a very high ....
a) market b) mountain c) minaret d) museum

3 There are a lot of .... in the desert.
a) oceans b) sand dunes c) rivers d) seas

4 To get organic food, we use natural ....
a) tools b) gardens c) chemicals d) fertilizers

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4)

friendly – walk – independent – fur – pet

Cats are my favorite animals. They are beautiful with soft ....(1).... which is nice to touch. They are clean and calm animals which are usually ....(2).... . They like people but they are ....(3).... . We don't need to take them for a ....(4).... every day.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (5)

Last week, I had an amazing experience. I went on a felucca on the River Nile. A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood. A tall man called Ali was the captain of the boat. A felucca is difficult to sail, but Ali was very strong and had the skills to sail it. The trip was amazing. We went slowly down the river in the warm sunshine. The boat has two white sails which moved gently in the wind. It was so quiet and peaceful – a lovely way to travel.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) a strong man
b) an amazing experience
c) the River Nile
d) the warm weather

2 The felucca is made of ....

a) metal
b) wool
c) wood
d) leather

3 The opposite of the underlined word "quiet" is ....

a) noisy
b) traditional
c) lovely
d) difficult

B Answer the following questions:

4 What is a felucca? ....

5 How was the trip? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

3

1 never – They – late – are – school – for.

....

2 Nadine – and – My friend – is – kind – friendly.

....

3 go – the – Let's – to – park – theme.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

2

1 Noura always .... (eat) healthy food.

2 Ahmed .... (go) on a vacation last month.

7 Punctuate the following:

1

we need some perfume oil to make candles

....

8 Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"My birthday party"

blow up balloons – make a playlist

....

....

....





Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

1 In the west court, there is a water ....
a) computer b) fountain c) teacher d) student

2 The IT building is the building where you can find our .... classrooms.
a) TV b) radio c) computer d) mobile

3 Mr Mahdi is the .... who helps in the garden.
a) doctor b) engineer c) nurse d) teacher

4 Children can also grow .... with Mr Mahdi.
a) plants b) trees c) benches d) flowers

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

1 At school, we must have our .... with us.
a) text books b) magazines c) stories d) cell phones

2 A crocodile swims in a ....
a) mountain b) sky c) lake d) cave

3 Can you .... up the balloons?
a) cut b) blow c) send d) write

4 Our apartment is on the sixteenth ....
a) flour b) flower c) ground d) floor

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

selfish – around – birds – happy – village

In a village, there is a giant who has a wonderful garden. In his garden, there are tall trees, beautiful flowers and soft, green grass. There are colorful ....(1).... singing in the trees and bees on the plants. Every afternoon on their way home from school, the local children come to play in the giant's garden. The lovely garden always makes the children ....(2)...., but the ....(3).... giant doesn't want to share his garden, so one day he builds a big wall ....(4).... it.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

Mahmoud had a hard week. When he left school, it was raining heavily. His clothes got wet, and his hair was wet, too. He couldn't hide all the way home. When he arrived home, he felt cold. His mother gave him aspirin and hot drinks and advised him to stay in bed. As his mother was a doctor, she told him that taking medicine once would be good for him. He listened to his mother and followed her advice. He got better within two days.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 "Aspirin" is a kind of ....

a) drink b) food c) juice d) medicine

2 Mahmoud's mother was a/an ....

a) doctor b) teacher c) nurse d) engineer

3 Mahmoud was ill for two ....

a) weeks b) hours c) days d) years

B Answer the following questions:

4 What was the weather like? ....

5 What did Mahmoud's mother advise him to do? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3)

1 school – at – I – friends – have – a lot of.

....

2 our – excited – I'm – vacation – about.

....

3 a lot of – My – vegetables – garden – produces.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2)

1 Let's .... (visited) the museum.

2 Look! He .... (play) tennis.

7 Punctuate the following: (1)

"how are you?" She asked

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"Food in Ancient Egypt"

vegetables and fruits – spices and herbs

....

....

....







Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (6)

1 Belal and Amr are ....
a) friends b) nurses c) vets d) teachers

2 They're going quad biking in the ....
a) forest b) desert c) river d) hall

3 The theme park is in ....
a) Cairo b) Tanta c) Giza d) Alexandria

4 They want to ride on a ....
a) donkey b) bike c) horse d) rollercoaster

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (4)

1 A .... is a group of camels and people traveling together.
a) palace b) selfish c) valley d) caravan

2 We use .... to cut paper.
a) pens b) streamers c) scissors d) candles

3 I can do .... in the laboratory.
a) sports b) experiments c) food d) washing

4 The railway line is a road for ....
a) trains b) cars c) boats d) buses

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4)

park – hang – balloons – friends – cake

I celebrate my birthday every year. My mother makes me a ......(1)...... . I invite my ......(2)...... to attend the party. My brother helps me ......(3)...... up the streamers. My sister blows up some ......(4)...... . We all have fun.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (5)

I am Mohamed. I live with my family. On holidays, I help my family at our community garden. It is on the roof of our apartment block. We grow our food and it is organic, which means we never use chemicals. We grow vegetables like tomatoes and lettuce. We also plant fruit like lemons and dates. It is a good idea to grow your own food.



A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about a ....

a) club b) school c) sport d) community garden

2 The underlined word "grow" means ....

a) plant b) swim c) play d) read

3 They grow tomatoes, lemons, and ....

a) potatoes b) lettuce c) onions d) cucumbers

B Answer the following questions:

4 What does Mohamed do on holidays? ....

5 Where is the community garden? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 3

1 make – She – a playlist – going to – is.

....

2 do – need – you – How – much – wax?

....

3 study – when – are – you – hungry – Don't.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 2

1 We never go to school .... (at) Friday.

2 Would you like .... (any) cake?

7 Punctuate the following: 1

he is excited about the vacation

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"Cats"

eat – independent

....





1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



1 The text is about ....
   a) birds   b) cats   c) fish   d) mice

2 Cats have .... fur.
   a) soft   b) hard   c) sharp   d) ugly

3 Cats make you ....
   a) angry   b) happy   c) hungry   d) thirsty

4 Cats are ....
   a) worried   b) nervous   c) dangerous   d) friendly


Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



1 The elephant is the .... land animal.
   a) smallest   b) thinnest   c) biggest   d) shortest

2 There's someone here, I can hear his ....
   a) voice   b) clothes   c) books   d) face

3 We usually .... tomatoes, peppers, onions, and lettuce.
   a) plant   b) make   c) play   d) read

4 Peter put the .... on the king's head.
   a) throne   b) crown   c) palace   d) statue

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:



enjoy – apartment – out – areas – railway

I'm Sara, I moved to New York with my family. Our new ......(1)...... is on the tenth floor. There are lots of green ......(2)...... here. My favorite green space is the High Line. It was a ......(3)...... line. People here decided to make it into a big, long park that everyone could hang ......(4)...... with friends.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

My name is Yasmine. I help new students get to know the school and their classrooms. I take them around, and I stay with them at break. I helped a new student yesterday. Her name is Amira. She was nervous and shy. I shared my book with her. Next Friday, we will go to Giza together and visit the Pyramids there. I love helping my friends.



A **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1 The general idea of the text is about ....
a) helping new students
b) teachers at school
c) doing experiment
d) playing football

2 Yasmine is ....
a) strong
b) frightened
c) messy
d) helpful

3 Amira was shy and ....
a) happy
b) nervous
c) organized
d) strong

B **Answer the following questions:**

4 What did Yasmine share with Amira? ....

5 Where will they go next Friday? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3)

1 visit – Luxor – We – will – summer – next.

....

2 you – do – How often – football – play?

....

3 is – famous – Egypt – its – Pyramids – for.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2)

1 He .... (go) shopping every month.

2 The book was really .... (interested).

7 Punctuate the following: (1)

amani lives in Tanta

....

8 Write a diary of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"A place you like to visit"

Why do you like it? – Where is it?

....

....

....







Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

1 Akram is .... years old.
a) 10 b) 20 c) 14 d) 12

2 He lives with his ....
a) friends b) family c) neighbors d) doctors

3 They grow vegetables like ....
a) dates b) lettuce c) mangoes d) apples

4 The word "grow" has the same meaning as ....
a) draw b) cut c) plant d) need

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

1 He isn't very calm. He's very ....
a) polite b) clever c) nervous d) organized

2 The community garden helps to clean the ....
a) air b) room c) village d) school

3 Marco Polo was an Italian ....
a) baker b) explorer c) teacher d) farmer

4 My mother .... up the balloons.
a) put b) did c) celebrated d) blew

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

make – oil – candle – wax – great

Leila's mother wanted to do something new. She had a ....(1).... idea. She wanted to ....(2).... candles. She asked her daughter to help her. Leila read the instructions and she prepared the ingredients for her mother; 500 grams of wax, 45 drops of perfume ....(3).... for three candles and one glass, and one wick for each ....(4).... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

Welcome to our school, a place which we are proud of and we are happy to show it to you. There are three buildings in our school, there are 20 classrooms, and there are two new laboratories where we study science. Inside these laboratories, we can find all the equipment which classes need to do experiments. Also, there is a large open area where we spend time outside. There is a large playground where we can play football, tennis, basketball, or run, or do exercises. We have in our school



a beautiful garden where there are benches to sit on under the trees. We can also grow some plants in the garden.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 We are very .... of our school.
a) shy b) sad c) meet d) proud

2 There are two .... at our school.
a) laboratories b) benches c) classes d) students

3 The benches are .... the trees.
a) on b) under c) next to d) behind

B Answer the following questions:

4 How many buildings are there in the school? ....

5 What are the activities that you can do in your school? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3)

1 last – didn't – the – win – We – week – match.
....

2 weather – What – the – Cairo – is – like – in?
....

3 mom – cake – My – sister – a nice – for – made – my.
....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2)

1 Where .... (be) they spending their vacation?

2 This flower smells .... (love).

7 Punctuate the following: (1)

don't forget to invite your friend noha.
....

8 Write a blog post of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"An amazing trip to Sharm El-Sheikh"

enjoy swimming – quad biking

....
....
....
....
....





Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1 Marco Polo was from ....
a) Spain b) England c) China d) Italy

2 Marco Polo was ....
a) an explorer b) a farmer c) a teacher d) a doctor

3 Marco Polo went to China ....
a) by train b) by ship c) on a camel d) on a horse

4 Marco Polo wrote a .... about his travels.
a) novel b) diary c) blog d) story

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 Farmers .... their crops on farms.
a) ride b) harvest c) swim d) melt

2 Rana is a .... girl. She does not like to talk to people.
a) shy b) kind c) friendly d) clever

3 Pots are made of ....
a) paper b) water c) clay d) milk

4 Put some .... on the toothbrush to brush your teeth.
a) ice cream b) perfume c) candles d) toothpaste

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

local – community – volunteers – chemicals – roof

I live on the tenth floor of an apartment block, so we have a nice view of the Nile. In our ......(1)......, there are a lot of projects to have parks and green places. We have a ......(2)...... garden on the building and a mini forest where we grow plants and trees. My friends and I are ......(3)...... who help people grow trees and plants every Friday. We are excited to make our ......(4)...... community a clean and nice place.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 5

My name is Hany. I am twelve years old. I am a pupil in primary six. I go to Al-Zahraa Primary School. It is not far from my house, so I walk and it takes only five minutes to get there. We study a lot of subjects at school. My favorite subject is science because I learn new things about air, water, animals, and metals. Mrs Azza is my science teacher. She is very <u>kind</u> and helpful. She helps me and my

friends to do experiments in the science laboratory. We like her lesson very much. Also, I like my school library, so I go there at break to read stories and books.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Hany goes to school ....
a) by bus b) on foot c) by tuk-tuk d) by train

2 Hany's favorite subject is ....
a) math b) Arabic c) English d) science

3 The underlined word "kind" means ....
a) bad b) boring c) friendly d) unkind

B Answer the following questions:

4 What does Hany do at break? ....

5 Why do you think Hany and his friends like Mrs Azza? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3)

1 never – games – You – video – with me – play.

....

2 pets – are – fur – beautiful – Cats – with soft.

....

3 else – what – Great, – we – do – can?

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2)

1 My father .... (watch) the match now.

2 It is a very .... (bored) film.

7 Punctuate the following: (1)

dina walks to school every day

....

8 Write an e-mail to your friend Kamal of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"Mother's Day Celebration in my school"

Your name is Omar and your e-mail address is (omar@gmail.com). Your friend's e-mail address is (kamal@gmail.com).

invite – special day

....

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

1 Cats make the best ....
a) birds b) bees c) pets d) plants

2 Cats are nice to ....
a) eat b) feed c) touch d) buy

3 It's true that cats have sharp ....
a) ears b) eyes c) nose d) claws

4 Cats are .... for your well-being.
a) quick b) good c) bad d) unhealthy

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

1 All the students are .... of our school.
a) kind b) lazy c) proud d) crazy

2 The road for trains is called a ....
a) stop b) station c) railway line d) center

3 We use .... language when we speak to strangers.
a) informal b) formal c) bad d) tough

4 The .... of the mosque is 20 meters high.
a) museum b) hall c) minaret d) wall

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

language – candles – birthday – families – presents

What do we do for a birthday celebration in Egypt? We usually make ....(1).... cakes for our children. We put ....(2).... on them to show their age. We have parties with our ....(3).... and friends. The children usually receive ....(4).... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

In a village, in the countryside, there lives a giant who has a wonderful garden. Every afternoon, the local children come to play in the giant's garden. The lovely garden always makes the children happy but the selfish giant doesn't want to share his garden so one day, he builds a big wall around it. The days pass and the garden is always empty and silent. Slowly, the green grass turns brown. The leaves fall from the trees. The snow covers the garden and all the little birds and bees fly away.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The giant lives in a ....

a) city b) town c) village d) hot

2 The lovely garden always makes the children ....

a) busy b) bored c) happy d) sad

3 The giant is ....

a) kind b) friendly c) smart d) selfish

B Answer the following questions:

4 Why do children like the giant's garden? ....

5 What is the garden like now? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3)

1 go – you – Where – did – on – vacation?

....

2 didn't – ship – The – leave – port – the.

....

3 I – with – to – Hurghada – my family – went.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2)

1 There aren't .... (some) tigers in Egypt.

2 They .... (buy) a new house a year ago.

7 Punctuate the following: (1)

can you tell me the recipe to make salt dough

....

8 Write an e-mail to your friend Emad of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"How to keep our environment"

Your name is Alaa and your e-mail address is (allaa35@gmail.com). Your friend's e-mail address is (emadzaher@gmail.com).

grow – volunteers

....

....

....

....

....





Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1 Mrs. Asmaa is a teacher of ....
a) Arabic b) science c) math d) English

2 She has .... children.
a) one b) two c) three d) four

3 She went on a vacation last ....
a) summer b) winter c) spring d) fall

4 She went to .... and visited the Pyramids.
a) Cairo b) Alexandria c) Giza d) Zagazig

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 Put the ingredients for your soap in the ....
a) ball b) bowl c) car d) book

2 I went on a .... on the River Nile.
a) bike b) felucca c) plane d) bus

3 My brother is twenty years old. He is a/an ....
a) baby b) old c) adult d) child

4 We watch shows in the ....
a) bakery b) theater c) restaurant d) bank

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

parties – cakes – honey – candles – presents

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. What do we do in Egypt? We usually make birthday ....(1).... for our children. We put ....(2).... on them to show their age. We often have ....(3).... with a lot of family and friends. The children get ....(4)...., too.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 5

Yesterday, I went to Alexandria with my family. We went there by train. We looked out of the window. The best thing in Alexandria is swimming in the sea early. My family liked to swim in the sea. We met my father's friend, Mr Nabil and his family. We played on the beach. In the afternoon, we went to the Alexandria Library to read some books. In the evening, we had a nice meal in the restaurant. We had fish. The food was very delicious.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The underlined word "there" refers to ....
a) Cairo b) Aswan c) Giza d) Alexandria

2 They had .... in the evening.
a) dinner b) breakfast c) lunch d) snacks

3 They went to a .... to have their meal.
a) library b) school c) restaurant d) bank

B Answer the following questions:

4 What did they do in the afternoon? ....

5 Summarize the passage in two sentences. ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3)

1 always – Reda – ready – is – exams – for.
....

2 melts – it – ice, – heat – you – If.
....

3 Fridays – do – What – you – do – on?
....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2)

1 This is the street .... (which) we live.

2 Nabil .... (drink) milk every morning.

7 Punctuate the following: (1)

they are playing football now
....

8 Write a diary of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"A visit to the Pyramids"

friends – tourists

....
....
....





Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

1 Adel visits his grandparents in ....
a) October b) June c) May d) July

2 Adel goes .... with his grandpa.
a) swimming b) running c) fishing d) walking

3 Adel plays football with his .... in the evenings.
a) friends b) father c) brothers d) parents

4 Adel sometimes helps his .... in the kitchen.
a) father b) sister c) friends d) grandma

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

1 I live in a/an .... in the city with my family.
a) tent b) apartment block c) cave d) factory

2 Sara is always ...., she is worried about talking to a lot of people.
a) shy b) friendly c) clever d) messy

3 Do you like eating ....?
a) volcanoes b) villages c) vegetables d) vans

4 I couldn't .... up balloons when I was young.
a) let b) give c) send d) blow

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

independent – claws – fur – scared – walk

Cats are my favorite pets. They have soft ....(1)......... which is nice to touch. They are beautiful and calm animals. They are usually friendly. Cats like people but they are ....(2)......... . Cats have sharp ....(3)......... and teeth, but they only use them when they are ....(4)......... . Cats are good for your well-being.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

Ancient Egyptians took care of their bodies and ate very well. Ancient Egyptians cooked with vegetables like onions, garlic, lentils, and beans. They also used wheat and barley to make bread, and they ate a lot of this every day. They also ate a little meat, usually at festivals. They ate a few fish and birds, like ducks, geese, and chickens. They used a few dates or figs to make sweet fruit drinks too. They used honey with bread and cream to make cakes.



A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Ancient Egyptians took care of their bodies and .... very well.
   a) ate   b) played   c) cooked   d) drank

2 They used .... and barley to make bread.
   a) figs   b) dates   c) wheat   d) milk

3 They used .... with cream to make cakes.
   a) garlic   b) honey   c) barely   d) figs

B Answer the following questions:

4 How much meat did Ancient Egyptians eat? ....

5 What did they use figs and dates for? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

(3)

1 neighbors – Our – and – are – friendly – helpful.

....

2 your – What's – pet – favorite?

....

3 isn't – Marwa – to – coming – tomorrow – party – the.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

(2)

1 They .... (is) coming from school now.

2 I don't .... (visiting) my friends on Fridays.

7 Punctuate the following:

(1)

how many people are coming

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

(5)

"My school"

classrooms – playground

....

....

....





Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

1 We are having a .... party for my little sister Nour.
a) wedding b) Mother's Day c) birthday d) carnival

2 My mom and my aunt are .... the cake.
a) eating b) decorating c) baking d) preparing

3 Soha is sending email .... to our friends.
a) invitations b) cards c) letters d) parents

4 I'm making the .... on my phone.
a) music b) songs c) films d) playlist

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

1 I live in a/an .... of eleven floors.
a) roof b) apartment block c) house d) villa

2 The king has a .... on his head.
a) crown b) hat c) star d) scepter

3 They need an adult to let off the ....
a) playlist b) balloons c) fireworks d) streamers

4 We don't use .... when we grow organic food.
a) water b) chemicals c) sunlight d) seeds

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

boring – fish – beautiful – museum – souks

Ahmed will spend his summer vacation with his friends in Port Said. It is a very ......(1)...... place. They want to visit the ......(2)...... where they can see historical objects. Then they will explore the modern ......(3)...... where they can have lunch. Some of them will have ......(4)...... and crabs. The others will have pizza. Finally, they will go to the theme park and ride on a rollercoaster.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

Anne is my friend. She is from England. She is fascinated by traveling. She comes to visit Egypt every year. She usually comes to Egypt because the weather is really fantastic. She stays in a big hotel in Cairo. She visits some wonderful places, such as the Egyptian Museum in Cairo and the zoo in Giza. She enjoys watching the animals there. She also goes to Alexandria to see its big library. Finally, she visits the temples at Luxor and takes photographs of our great monuments. She always says that Egypt is a great country and a wonderful place for tourists to visit.

A **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1 Anne is from ....

a) England　b) Giza　c) Alexandria　d) Cairo

2 Anne stays in a .... when she comes to Egypt.

a) museum　b) apartment　c) hotel　d) tent

3 Anne visits the .... at Luxor.

a) Pyramids　b) restaurants　c) temples　d) schools

B **Answer the following questions:**

4 Why does Anne go to Alexandria? ....

5 Summarize the text in two sentences. ....

Writing

5 **Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:** 3

1 do – laboratories – in – We – experiments – the.

....

2 some – traditional – Students – sing – will – songs.

....

3 is – The Great – high – Pyramid – 147 – meters.

....

6 **Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:** 2

1 If you heat sugar, it .... (melt).

2 How .... (much) lemons do we need for the lemonade?

7 **Punctuate the following:** 1

she didn't travel to cairo.

....

8 **Write a blog post of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:** 5

"The community garden"

- Where is the community garden?
- What do you grow there?

....

....

....

....

....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

1 Ola has a pet ....
a) cat b) dog c) fox d) camel

2 Cats are .... and calm animals.
a) nervous b) noisy c) clean d) bad

3 Cats have soft ....
a) teeth b) fur c) claws d) paws

4 When I pet my cat, it makes me feel ....
a) happy b) angry c) shy d) sad

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

1 I live in a/an .... on the sixth floor.
a) apartment b) villa c) tent d) boat

2 A .... person is nice and kind to others.
a) nervous b) messy c) friendly d) scared

3 We went quad .... in the desert yesterday.
a) running b) biking c) climbing d) reading

4 Marco Polo was an Italian ....
a) doctor b) artist c) teacher d) explorer

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

market – volunteers – roof – trees – vegetables

The community garden is a big green space. It is on the ......(1)...... of an apartment block. The people who work there are all ......(2)...... . They are from the neighborhood. They grow ......(3)...... to eat . Sometimes, they sell them in the ......(4)......, too.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

Ancient Egyptians used personal care products. Many of the products we use today were first used in Ancient Egypt. Ancient Egyptians loved to use strong perfumes. The most popular and expensive perfume was called "Kapet".Cheaper perfumes were made from flowers and herbs. The Ancient Egyptians used toothpaste to clean their teeth. They used a toothbrush made of a stick with a small piece of papyrus tied to it at one end. Ancient Egyptians also liked to keep their mouths fresh all day. They made mint candies.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about .... in Ancient Egypt.

a) festivals b) perfumes c) boats d) plants

2 The underlined word "expensive" means ....

a) difficult b) precious c) common d) cheap

3 Cheaper perfumes were made from ....

a) flour b) wood c) flowers d) sand

B Answer the following questions:

4 What did they use to make toothbrushes? ....

5 Why did Ancient Egyptians make mint candy? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

3

1 Amira - very - nice - is - helpful - and.

....

2 birthday - is - Mom - cake - decorating - the.

....

3 the - cycling - I - on - go - weekend.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

2

1 They .... (play often) tennis.

2 If we .... (feeling) sick, we go to the doctor.

7 Punctuate the following:

1

the Ancient egyptians loved perfumes.

....

8 Write a text message of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"Spending my free time"

go running - meet my friends

....

....

....







Listening



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 We read and borrow books from the ....
a) library b) school c) shop d) bank

2 We go to the library .... a week.
a) once b) twice c) 3 times d) 4 times

3 The .... helps us to read and borrow the books.
a) doctor b) vet c) teacher d) nurse

4 The library is a .... and calm place to read.
a) ugly b) quiet c) unusual d) dangerous



Reading



2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 We prefer .... food with no chemicals.
a) organic b) dirty c) polluted d) bad

2 Hani is .... up some balloons.
a) giving b) blowing c) decoration d) sending

3 Cats are my best ....
a) fruit b) pets c) plants d) vegetables

4 Omar is a good boy. He is really ....
a) messy b) organized c) noisy d) careless



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

herbs – ingredients – cinnamon – popular – messy

Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes. There was a very ....(1)........ perfume called Kapet. It was very expensive, too. It was expensive because it had a lot of ....(2)........, and they were difficult to find. There were also a few common ....(3)........ in it, like rosemary and mint, and spices like cardamom and ....(4)........ .



4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Cats are my favorite animals and I think they make the best pets. They are beautiful with soft hair which is nice to touch. They are clean and calm animals. They are usually friendly. They like people, but they are independent, so you don't need to take them for a walk every day. They have sharp claws and teeth, but they use them only when they are scared. Cats are good for your well-being.



A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 They have .... fur. You can touch it.

a) hard b) thick c) soft d) steel

2 The underlined word "them" refers to ....

a) cats b) dogs c) horses d) mice

3 Cats are .... for your well-being.

a) good b) bad c) strong d) weak

B Answer the following questions:

4 Why don't you need to take cats for a walk every day? ....

5 When do cats use their sharp claws? ....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3)

1 from – every – forest – data – We – collect.

....

2 really – interested – Egypt – I'm – in – Ancient.

....

3 celebrate – can – How – they – birthdays?

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2)

1 What are you .... (do) now?

2 How .... (much) apples do you eat?

7 Punctuate the following: (1)

where do you live, Ali

....

8 Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"A visit to Cairo"

What places did you visit? – How did you enjoy?

....

....

....





A. Language Functions



Read and complete the dialogue: (10)

cotton – start – candles – need – instructions

Ahmed : What are you doing, Samir?
Samir : I'm making ....(1)............ .
Ahmed : I can help. What are the ....(2)............?
Samir : First, we ....(3)............ wax and wicks.
Ahmed : What is the wick?
Samir : It's the little ....(4)............ rope inside the candle.
Ahmed : Let's ....(5)............ .



B. Vocabulary and Structures

2 Read and circle the odd one out: (10)

1. streamers – candle – bed – present
2. tall – selfish – string – giant
3. cut – museum – minaret – souk
4. run – organize – sleep – sick
5. jacket – purple – shirt – dress

3 Choose the correct answer:



1. I live in a/an (cave – tent – apartment block – factory) in the city with my family.
2. Adel had an amazing (experience – experiment – civilization – culture) in the felucca trip.
3. (Drink – Squeeze – Bake – Eat) in about 40 drops of perfume oil.
4. You need a/an (credit card – ticket – theater – cake) to go on the waterfall ride.
5. No one comes to wash the (candy – dust – water – air) off the painting.
6. Last Tuesday, they (was – are – were – did) in Aswan. They visited many places.
7. He (never – rarely – don't – always) comes to school early. He doesn't come late.
8. My friend (don't – isn't - didn't – doesn't) meet me for dinner yesterday evening.
9. How (often - many – much – often) eggs does she have for breakfast?
10. Adel was born (in – on – at – of) 2003.



C. Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10)

I am always fascinated by Egyptian food, especially the different spices used. Special combinations of different spices are a secret ingredient in many recipes. I find it interesting that spices have other uses besides cooking. We also use them in perfume, medicine, and to color cloth. It's no surprise that tourists buy fresh and beautifully packaged spices as souvenirs when they are in Egypt. Ancient Egyptians used spices thousands of years ago.

A Answer the following questions:

1 What are the uses of spices? ....

2 What do tourists buy as souvenirs? ....

3 When did Ancient Egyptians use spices? ....

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4 The writer likes the Egyptian ....
a) pyramids b) food c) medicine d) clothes

5 Special combinations of different .... are a secret ingredient in many recipes.
a) souks b) cloth c) spices d) perfumes

(D) Writing

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (10)

1 a wonderful – has – The – garden – giant.
....

2 want to – Do – house – my – come to – you?
....

3 the dentist – you – go – do – How often – to?
....

4 Egyptians – loved – Ancient – strong – perfumes.
....

5 inside – house – Hare – her – a noise – hears.
....

6 Write an e-mail to your friend Shady of about FIVE sentences using the following guiding elements: (10)

"Birthday parties"

Your name is Hazem and your e-mail address is (hazem@gmail.com). Your friend's e-mail address is (shady@gmail.com).

cake – present – invitations – balloons – sing

....
....
....
....
....





(A) Language Functions

1 Read and complete the dialogue:

10

drive – meet – information – tour – show

Sara : Dad, I found some ....(1).......... about quad biking in the desert.
Dad : Wow! ....(2).......... me.
Sara : The ....(3).......... guide will meet us at the hotel.
Dad : What time will he ....(4).......... us?
Sara : He'll meet us at 9 am and he'll ....(5).......... us into the desert.

(B) Vocabulary and Structures

2 Read and circle the odd one out:



1 borrow – take – polite – stay
2 laboratory – honey – school – theater
3 white – which – who – where
4 children – noodles – peaches – chicken
5 selfish – news – famous – giant

3 Choose the correct answer:

10

1 Hani is very (polite – messy – lazy – organized). He shows respect to everyone.
2 The king and the queen wear (shoes – scepters – thrones – crowns) on their heads.
3 We visit Cairo every year to (do – send – ride – explore) the souks.
4 The mosque has a very high (minaret – mountain – market – cup).
5 I can do (sports – experiments – washing – experience) in the laboratory.
6 If it gets hotter, ice (melt – melted – melts – melting).
7 When (did – does – is – do) your dad come home last night?
8 What (was – were – are – is) Nada and her friends doing yesterday?
9 I (sometimes – usually – never – always) watch TV before I sleep. It's unhealthy.
10 We (doesn't – don't – aren't – isn't) water the plants in the morning.

(C) Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:



Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. These green spaces help people enjoy nature and wildlife. They never grow



foreign plants in their projects. Also, they work with local communities to look after the forests. They collect data regularly to understand the effects of these green spaces on the people, wildlife, and climate of the area. I would be excited to be a volunteer at Mini Forest and help our earth get better!

A Answer the following questions:

1 What is Mini Forest? ....

2 How do green spaces help? ....

3 Why do they work with local communities? ....

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4 .... plants trees in the middle of our cities.

a) City b) Mini Forest c) Climate d) Wildlife

5 They never use .... plants in their projects.

a) strange b) foreign c) unusual d) native

(D) Writing

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: 10

1 coming – people – How – are – many?

....

2 family – went – I – to – with – my – Hurghada.

....

3 she – Is – birthday – the – decorating – cake?

....

4 If – go – train, – quicker – is – it – we – by.

....

5 does – homework – Dina – her – weekend – on – the.

....

6 Write a text of Five sentences using the following guiding elements: 10

"Making candles"

wax – heat – wick – popsicle – perfume oil

....

....

....





(A) Language Functions

1 Read and complete the dialogue: 10

ingredients – herbs – called – expensive – perfumes

Omar : Do you know that the Ancient Egyptians loved strong ....(1).......... ?
Maro : Yes. The most popular perfume was ....(2).......... *Kapt.*
Omar : I read that it was ....(3).......... . Why?
Maro : Because it had a lot of ....(4).......... . Some of which were difficult to find.
Omar : It also had some ....(5).......... like mint.

(B) Vocabulary and Structures

2 Read and circle the odd one out: 10

1 pepper – honey – lettuce – onions
2 shampoo – soap – toothpaste – cup
3 large – bowl – ancient – little
4 heat – stir – sleep – squeeze
5 met – want – went – stuck

3 Choose the correct answer:



1 Mini Forest (city – school – organization – area) needs more people to join and help.
2 We give cake to all the (meals – guests – presents – noodles) at the party.
3 Pots are made of (paper – water – clay – milk).
4 Can you (cut – blow – send – ride) up the balloons?
5 To get organic food, we use natural (tools – chemicals – fertilizers – gardens).
6 They (don't – doesn't – didn't – weren't) travel by sea. They took the train.
7 (Is – Are – Does – Did) your friend walking to school now?
8 I (doesn't – never – always – rarely) speak English during my English lessons.
9 How often do you (sleep – sleeping – sleeps – slept) early?
10 The elephant is the (big – bigger – biggest – thin) land animal.

(C) Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 10

Today, I had an amazing experience. I went on a felucca on the River Nile! A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood. A tall man called Kareem was the



captain of the boat. A felucca is difficult to sail, but Kareem was very strong and had the skills to sail it. The trip was amazing. We went slowly down the river in the warm sunshine. The boat had two white sails which moved gently in the wind. It was so quiet and peaceful way to travel.

A Answer the following questions:

1 What is the felucca? ....

2 Who is the captain of the boat? ....

3 How was the trip? ....

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4 The felucca is made of ....

a) metal b) wool c) wood d) leather

5 Kareem was very ....

a) strong b) funny c) boring d) noisy

(D) Writing

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (10)

1 never – Ali – late – is – for – school.

....

2 often – does – Sara – How – you – visit?

....

3 Marco Polo – explorer – was – Italian – an.

....

4 proud – of – our – We – are – school.

....

5 in – apartment – lives – an – He – block.

....

6 Write a text of Five sentences using the following guiding elements: (10)

"My pet"

independent – clean – fur – scared – claws

....

....

....

امتحانات خاصة بطلاب الدمج



Exam 1

40

(A) Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

1 A/An .... is a tall building that contains flats.
a) garden b) apartment block c) roof d) farm

2 .... food is good for your health.
a) Organic b) Chemical c) Local d) Unhealthy

3 Omar is .... He's nice to others and helpful.
a) kind b) nervous c) shy d) clever

4 Scientists can travel to other planets in a ....
a) spaceship b) ship c) boat d) felucca

5 Elephants are afraid of ....
a) cats b) mice c) sheep d) rabbits

6 If I forget my book at home, I can .... my friend's book.
a) sure b) share c) eat d) help

7 Ola is visiting Paris .... the winter.
a) on b) in c) at d) by

8 A\An .... is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat.
a) bus b) car c) train d) felucca

9 Omar .... interested in the game when I asked him to play.
a) isn't b) don't c) wasn't d) didn't

10 Nada needs .... sugar to finish the cake.
a) many b) a few c) much d) two

2 Choose the odd word:

5

1 says – plays – goes – read
2 onions – lentils – honey – beans
3 peaceful – beautifully – gently – slowly
4 candle – flame – flour – fire
5 no – always – sometimes – often

(B) Reading

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

8

I'm Ali. I love my school very much. My school is next to my house. I go to school on foot. I go to school by myself. I go to school at seven o'clock. I study English,



Arabic, math, science, and art. My favorite subject is English. I want to be a doctor when I grow up. My school is clean and nice. I go home at two o'clock.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The text is a/an ....

a) passage b) email c) letter d) form (أستمارة)

2 Ali is a/an ....

a) doctor b) teacher c) student d) chef

3 Ali goes to school ....

a) by bus b) by car c) by bike d) on foot

4 Ali's favorite subject is ....

a) math b) English c) science d) art

(C) Writing

4 Choose the correct form of the following sentences from a, b, or c: (6)

1 look – plants – We – after – need to – our.

a) We need to after look our plants.
b) We to after look need our plants.
c) We need to look after our plants.

2 went – the – last – Hala – cinema – to – week.

a) Hala went to the cinema last week.
b) Hala went to last the cinema week.
c) Hala went the cinema to last week.

5 Reorder the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d: (8)

a) She went to hospital. 1- ( )
b) The doctor gave her medicine there. 2- ( )
c) My sister was sick. 3- ( )
d) She is doing better today. 4- ( )

6 Choose the correct punctuated sentence from a, b or c: (3)

egypt is in africa

a) Egypt is in africa.
b) egypt is in Africa
c) Egypt is in Africa.





(A) Vocabulary and Structures

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 10

1 At the community garden, people .... about twenty kilos of vegetables a year.
a) buy b) harvest c) eat d) work

2 We .... play football in the street. It's dangerous.
a) always b) usually c) never d) sometimes

3 We do science .... at the laboratories.
a) tablets b) experiments c) games d) sports

4 Ahmed was the boy .... helped me with my homework.
a) when b) where c) which d) who

5 We can ride on a roller coaster in the ....
a) palace b) museum c) theme park d) desert

6 I go to school early .... the morning.
a) in b) on c) at d) of

7 I sent the .... for my party.
a) balloons b) streamers c) invitations d) fireworks

8 .... you studying for your exams now?
a) Are b) Is c) Was d) Were

9 I went on a .... with my family in the sea.
a) train b) voyage c) trip d) camel

10 Reem .... Croatia with her family a few years ago.
a) visit b) visits c) visiting d) visited

2 Choose the odd word: 5

1 delicious – large – bowl – ancient
2 played – look – watched – helped
3 afternoon – morning – evening – blowing
4 run – giant – hungry – scared
5 fruit – garden – tomato – pepper

(B) Reading

3 Read the text and answer the questions: 8

The zoo is the best place to visit at the weekend. It's a safe place where many kinds of animals and birds live. The people who work there take care of the animals and the birds; they give them food and drink. One visit to the zoo makes you love wildlife. Children love going to the zoo because it's a place to play and have fun. It's also a place where people can see some kinds of animals that they can't see at any other place.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The zoo is a .... place to visit.

a) safe b) slow c) scared d) noisy

2 Many kinds of .... live in the zoo.

a) children b) doctors c) animals d) tourists

3 .... love going to the zoo to play and have fun.

a) Animals b) Birds c) Children d) Teachers

4 The underlined word "they" refers to ....

a) animals b) people c) birds d) children

(C) Writing

4 Choose the correct form of the following sentences from a, b, or c: (6)

1 books – have – Do – your – all – you?

a) Do all your have you books?

b) your have Do all books your?

c) Do you have all your books?

2 little – oil – These – bottles – lemon – are – of.

a) These are little bottles of lemon oil.

b) bottles lemon are These of oil little.

c) bottles oil little are of These lemon.

5 Reorder the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d: (8)

a) Just then, he sees Wolf. Wolf has a drink from the lake. 1- (   )

b) "I can't drink from the same lake as Wolf. Wolf wants to eat me!" 2- (   )

c) Little Deer runs through the forest. 3- (   )

d) He comes to a beautiful, blue lake and decides to stop for a drink of water. 4- (   )

6 Choose the correct punctuated sentence from a, b, or c: (3)

ancient egyptians ate a lot of vegetables

a) ancient Egyptians ate a lot of Vegetables.

b) ancient Egyptians ate a Lot of Vegetables

c) Ancient Egyptians ate a lot of vegetables.



Tapescripts

يحتوى هذا الجزء على إجابات نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالكتاب.

UNIT 1

Practice on Lesson 1

My name is Ola. I like to help my father with our roof garden. We have a garden on our roof. We grow vegetables like onions, tomatoes, and peppers. We also grow fruits like lemons and dates. We use natural fertilizer, so our food is fresh and organic.

Practice on Lesson 3

There was a selfish giant who didn't want to share his big garden with the children. He built a wall around his garden. Spring arrived, but in the giant's garden, it was still winter. When the children came back, the leaves on the trees were green again. The giant understood that when you're not selfish, good things happen.

Test Yourself on Unit 1

My name is Lara. I always wake up at six o'clock. I usually arrive at school before eight o'clock. I sometimes eat a sandwich at nine o'clock. I always go home at three o'clock. I rarely watch TV after school. I usually do my homework at five o'clock. I am always in bed before nine o'clock.

UNIT 2

Practice on Lesson 1

Mazen moved to a new school last year. He was very nervous and shy because he didn't know anyone. He met his new friend Malek. Malek took Mazen around and showed him where the classrooms were. Mazen also met Ali, who was very clever. Ali helped Mazen with the math homework.

Practice on Lesson 3

I love reading stories. My favorite story is "Hare gets scared". Hare is hungry and goes to her home to eat her carrots. Hare finds something moving in her house. She is scared, so she goes to ask for Monkey and Elephant's help. At the end, they find Mouse inside the house.

Test Yourself on Unit 2

I'm Ola. I have a pet cat. I think cats make the best pets. They are clean and calm animals. They have soft fur which is nice to touch. They are independent animals. You don't need to take them for a walk every day. When I pet my cat, it makes me feel happy.

UNIT 3

Practice on Lesson 1

Reem and Rana are friends. They are planning for their next vacation in Cairo. There are many things to do and see there. Reem thinks they should visit the Manial Palace Museum on Monday, where they can take photos for their school project. Rana wants to go quad biking in the desert on Tuesday. They can go there by bus.

Practice on Lesson 3

Little Deer runs through the forest. He comes to a beautiful, blue lake and decides to stop for a drink of water. Just then, he sees Wolf. Wolf has a drink from the lake. Little Deer is afraid, but he faces his fear. He goes to the lake and has a drink. Water is delicious! Little Deer is happy and proud.



Test Yourself on Unit 3

My name is Amira. I like playing tennis. I practice on Fridays and Sundays. I always play well when I keep practicing every week. I have a match, and I hope I can win. If I practice hard, I can win the match. The match is on February 3rd. I'm very excited. My friends and my family are coming to watch the match.

UNIT 4

Practice on Lesson 1

I'm Mai. We are having a birthday party today for our little sister Rana. My brother Mazen is blowing up the balloons. My father is hanging up the streamers. My sister Eman is sending email invitations to our friends. My aunt Fatma is decorating the birthday cake. I am making the playlist on my phone.

Practice on Lesson 3

People around the world usually celebrate birthdays with birthday cakes and candles on them, but in China, people like to eat long noodles or peaches on their birthdays because they think these can give them a long life. People in China are older because they become one on the day they are born.

Test Yourself on Unit 4

Today, we are having a nice party. It's for my mother's birthday. I'm hanging up the streamers for the party. I cut the string with scissors. My brother is blowing up some balloons. They are bright and colorful. My sister is making a nice cake. My dad is buying her a beautiful present.

UNIT 5

Practice on Lesson 1

Rania has an interesting travel diary. She is reading it to remember her family's vacation in Croatia last year. They visited the Marco Polo Museum. The museum is on an island. It's really an interesting place, and it's all about the travels of Marco Polo.

Practice on Lesson 3

I read a nice story yesterday. It was a page from a diary in the 18th century. The writer was traveling on a ship. He had a relaxing sleep in his cabin. The next morning, he had breakfast with others, and then the ship left the port for a mysterious island.

Test Yourself on Unit 5

Yesterday, I had an amazing experience. I went on a felucca on the River Nile! A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood. A tall man called Kareem was the captain of the boat. He was strong and had the skills to sail the felucca. I had such a wonderful experience!

UNIT 6

Practice on Lesson 1

Mom and Laila are making some candles. First, they need about 450 grams of wax to make three candles. They need about forty drops of perfume oil. Laila has lemon oil. It smells lovely. They need three wicks and three glasses. They also need three popsicle sticks to hold the wicks.

Practice on Lesson 3

Peter lives in a big palace where his parents are the caretakers. The palace is old, and no one lives there now. A lot of the rooms are closed and mysterious, but Peter likes to explore them. They are full of interesting and precious things: old paintings, statues, carpets, and furniture.

Test Yourself on Unit 6

The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes. The most popular perfume was called *kapet*. It was expensive because it had a lot of ingredients. But it also had a few common herbs and spices in it. Cheaper perfumes were made from flowers, herbs, and some types of minerals, then mixed with oil to make a cream.



نصوص استماع الامتحانات النهائية

Exam 1

Last summer, I visited Sharm El-Sheikh with my family. Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting and busy city. There are a lot of things to do there. You can swim in the sea. You can also go quad biking in the desert.

Exam 2

We have 3 buildings in our school. In the west court, there is a water fountain. The IT building is the building where you can find our computer classrooms. Mr Mahdi is the teacher who helps in the garden. Children can also grow trees with Mr Mahdi.

Exam 3

Belal and Amr are friends. They are at the same school. They like to do things together. They're going quad biking in the desert. They usually go to a theme park in Cairo. They want to ride on a rollercoaster. It will be a lot of fun.

Exam 4

Cats are my favorite animals and I think they make the best pets. A lot of people like keeping cats. They have soft fur. They can make you happy. They are independent and friendly animals, so you don't need to take them for a walk every day.

Exam 5

My name is Akram. I'm 20 years old. I live in Cairo with my family. My family are farmers. We have a big farm. We grow a lot of vegetables like tomatoes, peppers, and lettuce. We also plant some fruits like apples, oranges and pineapples.

Exam 6

Marco Polo was an Italian explorer and one of the first people from the West to visit China. He rode a camel all the way to China! He went there in the 13th century and wrote a diary about his experiences; it is called The Travels of Marco Polo. It was a very difficult journey.

Exam 7

Cats are my favorite animals and I think they make the best pets. They are nice to touch. It is true that cats have sharp claws and teeth, but they only use them when they are scared. People also say that when you pet a cat, it makes you happy, so they are good for your well-being, too.

Exam 8

Mrs. Asmaa is a teacher of math. She is very good at teaching it. She helps me a lot. She works at a big school. She likes being a teacher. She has three children. She went on a vacation last summer. She went to Giza and visited the Pyramids.

Exam 9

Adel likes his family because they are very kind. He visits his grandparents every year in May. He does a lot of amazing things there. He goes fishing with his grandpa. Adel plays football with his father in the evenings. He sometimes helps his grandma in the kitchen.

Exam 10

We are having a birthday party for my little sister Nour. My mom and my aunt are decorating the cake. Soha is sending email invitations to our friends. I'm making the playlist on my phone. My brother is blowing up some balloons. A lot of people are coming.

Exam 11

My name is Ola. I have a pet cat. Cats are clean and calm animals. They have soft fur which is nice to touch. When I pet my cat, it makes me feel happy. They like people but they are independent, so you don't need to take them for a walk every day.

Exam 12

Our favorite hobby is reading. We have a big library at our school. We read and borrow books from the library. We go to the library twice a week. The teacher helps us to read and borrow the books. The library is a quiet and calm place to read.

Writing Answers

يحتوى هذا الجزء على إجابات أسئلة الكتابة (براجراف) الخاصة بجميع الوحدات.

UNIT 1

[Unit 1 – Lesson 2]

"Mini forest"

Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. These special green areas help people enjoy nature and help our wildlife – like plants, animals and other living things. At Mini Forest, we always work hard to find the best urban locations for our forests, where people and wildlife need nature most.

[Unit 1 – Lessons 4&5]

From : sarah@gmail.com
To : sally@gmail.com
Subject : My new life in Scotland

Dear Sally,

How are you and your family? I'm so happy to send you this email. I'm finally in Scotland with my family. It's really interesting! Our apartment is in the city center. It's on the third floor and there is a park on the other side of the street, so we have a great view over the trees. There's always something to see there. See you soon.

Lots of love,

Sarah

[Unit 1 – Test Yourself]

"Our community garden"

I always help my aunt on Friday afternoons at the community garden. The community garden is a big green space on the roof of the apartment block. People who work there are all volunteers. People grow vegetables to eat and sometimes sell them in the market. They only use natural fertilizer, so their food is fresh and organic.

UNIT 2

[Unit 2 – Lesson 2]

"My school"

I go to a big school near my house. We have two laboratories at our school. We do our experiments inside the science laboratories. We use computers and the internet in the new IT building. We play basketball and handball at the gymnasium. We also have a new playground and playing field.

[Unit 2 – Lessons 4&5]

"My favorite pet"

I love animals. Cats are my favorite pets. They are beautiful with soft fur which is nice to touch. They are clean and calm animals which are usually friendly. They like people but they are independent, so you don't need to take them for a walk every day. People also say that when you pet a cat, it makes you happy.



[Unit 2 – Test yourself]

"My first day at school"

I'm Malek. I'm 12 years old now. I remember my first day at school. I was worried. I felt nervous and shy. My teacher helped me. He was very kind. He teaches me English. I made some friends. Students in my class were very friendly. I love my school, teachers and friends.

[Unit 2 – Al-Azhar Corner]

"Cats are the best pets"

I like cats. They're my favorite animals. I think they make the best pets. They are beautiful with soft fur. They are clean and calm. They're also independent. Cats have sharp claws and teeth, but they only use them when they are scared.

UNIT 3

[Unit 3 – Lesson 2]

"Tips for studying"

Here are some tips for studying. Study for about 30 minutes but no longer. If you try to study for hours without a break, you can't concentrate. When you have regular breaks, you remember more. It's also better to study at the same time each day. People's brains work better if they have a regular routine.

[Unit 3 – Lessons 4&5]

"An amazing trip to Sharm El-Sheikh"

I went to Sharm El-Sheikh with my family last summer. It's in Sinai by the Red Sea. We stayed at a hotel there. The weather was cool and the sea was clear. We enjoyed swimming and diving in the Red Sea. We relaxed on the beach. We enjoyed going quad biking in the desert.

Unit 3 – Test yourself

"An amazing holiday destination"

Luxor is an interesting town in south Egypt. It costs LE 500 per night, per person in a double room to visit Luxor. There are lots of things to do there. You can explore the city souks, go on boat trips on the Nile, or get in an air balloon.

UNIT 4

[Unit 4 – Lesson 2]

From : amr@gmail.com

To : nader@gmail.com

Subject : My exams

Dear Nader,

How are things? I'm so happy to send you this email. I have many things to do this week. I'm studying hard for my exams at the moment. But don't worry, I'm not spending all my time indoors! I know it's important to get outside and do some exercise. It's good to relax and have fun sometimes, and we try not to talk about how our revision is going! Tell me about what you are doing this week. See you soon.

Lots of love,

Amr



[Unit 4 – Lessons 4&5]

From : nesma@gmail.com

To : amr@gmail.com

Subject : The Book Day Party

Dear Mr Amr,

I am writing to invite you to The Book Day Party this year. We are organizing a special day for the event on Tuesday April 30 (details below). As well as students and teachers, we are inviting people from the local community who often help our school. We very much hope you can attend.

Date: Tuesday April 30

Time: 4:00 pm – 7:00 pm

Location: School Hall

RSVP in writing to the email address above.

Please reply by April 28 to confirm if you can attend the party.

Yours sincerely,

Nesma

[Unit 4 – Test Yourself]

"My birthday party"

Today is my birthday. Mom is decorating the birthday cake. My brother and I are hanging up the streamers. My cousin Adel is blowing up the balloons. Dad is sending the invitations. He is making a playlist for the party, too. A lot of people are coming today. It's going to be fun.

UNIT 5

[Unit 5 – Lesson 2]

"Nok Civilization"

Almost 100 years ago, local people in the small village of Nok in Nigeria, a country in West Africa, found some unusual objects under the ground. They also found stone farming tools that belong to an advanced culture from the past. They called this culture the "Nok" civilization after the village where the objects were found.

Unit 5 – Lessons 4&5]

"My trip to Al-Fayoum"

I had an amazing experience last week. I went on a trip with my friends to Al Fayoum. We went by car. It was a long way, but we enjoyed going there. We went on a boat trip on Qarun Lake. We were fascinated by the waterfall. We went on a boat trip. It was amazing. We had a delicious lunch on a felucca. It was a wonderful day.

[Unit 5 – Test yourself]

"Marco Polo"

Marco Polo was a famous traveler. He was born in 1254 in Venice. Marco Polo is Italian. His most famous journey was to China. When he reached China, he recorded much information about different animals and plants. He wrote his famous diaries that described his journey.





[Unit 6 – Lesson 2]

"Ancient Egyptians ate well"

Paintings from Ancient Egyptians show that people at this time took care of their bodies and ate very well! Most people in Ancient Egypt ate a little meat, usually at festivals. There were a lot of bees in Ancient Egypt, and that means there was honey! Ancient Egyptians used honey with bread and cream to make cakes.

[Unit 6 – Lessons 4&5]

"Egyptian spices"

Egypt is famous for its spices that are used in home cooking and restaurants all across the country. Special combinations of different spices are a secret ingredient in many recipes. And we don't only use spices to cook food, we also use them in perfume, medicine, and to color cloth.

[Unit 6 – Test yourself]

"Salt dough recipe"

You need 1 cup of plain flour, 125g of salt and 125ml of water. First, heat the oven on a low temperature. Mix the ingredients in a bowl until they form a ball. Cut it into shapes. It takes 3 hours for cooking until they are hard. Leave the items to cool, then paint them.